

Contents

A-Z

Owner's Handbook



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



NAVIGATION, ENTERTAINMENT, COMMUNICATION. OWNER'S HANDBOOK.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The more familiar you are with the systems of your BMW, the more you can master their operation. We would therefore like to offer you the following advice:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. Also use the integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important notes on how to operate your navigation, entertainment, communications systems, enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical advantages of these systems.

If applicable, you will find updates after the editorial deadline in the appendix of the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Supplementary information is provided in the other documents or on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.



The Owner's Handbook is available as an app in many countries. You will find further information on the Internet at:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

© 2017 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without written
permission from BMW AG, Munich.
English X/17, 11 17 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

For quick access to a particular topic or item, please consult the detailed alphabetical index, see page 120.

The topics of navigation, entertainment and communication can be called up using the following Owner's Handbooks: Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle, Online Owner's Handbook, BMW Driver's Guide app.

Navigation

- 8 Overview
- 9 Destination input
- 14 Trip
- 17 Map
- 24 Settings
- 27 Split screen
- 29 Traffic information
- 32 Navigation data
- 33 Frequently Asked Questions

Entertainment

- 36 General
- 38 Sound
- 41 Radio
- 45 Audio
- 55 Video
- 58 Television, TV
- 62 Audio remote control in the rear
- 63 Rear entertainment

Communication

- 74 Telephone
- 106 Services and applications

Reference

- 120 Everything from A to Z



Navigation

Various examples of how the navigation system
reliably guides you to your destination are shown
here.

Overview

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle by means of satellites and guide you reliably to any specified destination.

Navigation data is saved in the vehicle and can be updated with a USB data storage medium.

Calling up navigation system

1.  Press the button on the Controller.
2. "Navigation"

Safety notes

WARNING

Operating integrated informations systems and communication devices during the journey may distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Only operate the systems or devices if permissible in the traffic situation. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.◀



WARNING

The current road and traffic situation may differ from the instructions given by the navigation system, for example due to changes in road routing or roadworks. There is a danger of accidents. Always obey the traffic regulations and road signs.◀

Destination input

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Entering the destination using an address

General

If only the town/city has been entered, route guidance to the town/city centre is started.

Selecting country

1. "Navigation"
2.  "Address input"
3. "Country?"
4. Select the country from the list.

Entering an address

1. "City/town or postcode?"
2. Enter letters or numbers.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right to select the town/city or postal code from the list.
4. "Street?"
5. Enter the street in the same way as for the town/city.
6. "House number/road junction?"
7. Switch to the list of house numbers and junctions.
8. Select the house number or junction.

Alternative: entering a street and junction

1. "Street?"
2. Enter the street in the same way as for the town/city.
3. "House number/road junction?"
4. Switch to list of intersections.
5. If applicable, "Road junctions"
6. Select required intersection.

In the Professional navigation system: searching for a street

General

The desired road/street is not in the town/city that you have entered because it is part of another city district.

Selecting a street

1. "Navigation"
2.  "Address input"
3. Select "Street?" or the displayed street.
4. Select letters, if applicable.
5. Move to the list of street names.
6. Select the street.

Starting route guidance

"Start route guidance" or to add a stopover, see page 14.

Last destinations

General

The last destinations driven to are saved automatically.

Calling up a destination from last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2.  "Recent destinations"
3. Select destination.

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2.  "Recent destinations"
3. Highlight a destination.
4.  Press the button.
5. "Delete destination" or "Delete all recent destinations"

Quick search

Principle

Depending on the equipment version, Points of Interest and addresses can be searched online or in the navigation data saved in the vehicle by entering a sequence of letters.

All entries containing this sequence of letters are shown.

General

You can search for a town/city and street at the same time. To do this, enter a sequence of letters for the town name, then a space, and then a sequence of letters for the street name.

Calling up quick search

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter new destination"
3.  "Quick search"
4. Enter at least three letters or characters.
5.  Select symbol as appropriate.

The results are shown as a list.

Vehicles with charge point: Display of charging stations, see page 12.

6. Tilt the Controller to the right.
7. Select the desired destination.

Destination input by voice control

General

- ▷ For the handbook for the voice control system, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.
- ▷ When entering destinations using spoken commands, it is possible to switch between voice control and iDrive.
- ▷ To have possible voice commands read aloud:  "Voice commands" or  "Help".

Voice commands

- ▷ Complete addresses can be spoken in a single command or countries, towns/cities, roads and junctions can be spoken as whole words. To do so, the language of the system must be set to the language of the destination country.
- ▷ Addresses can be spelled if the language of the system and the language of the destination country are different.
- ▷ Pronounce letters fluently and avoid excessive intonation and pauses.
- ▷ The options for input depend on the specific navigation data and the country and language settings.

Entering an address in a command

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2.  "Enter destination"
3. Wait for the prompt from the voice control system.

4. Say the address aloud in the sequence suggested.
5. Continue input as specified by the voice control system.

If required, say each part of the address separately, for example town/city.

Home address

General

The home address must be created.

Accepting your home address as a destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter new destination"
3. "Home address"

Defining the home address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter new destination"
3. "Set home address"
4. Enter the address and possibly the name and other details.

Changing the home address

The home address is saved in contacts and can be changed there. Editing contacts, see page 78.

Points of Interest

General

Points of Interest are special locations that can be useful during a journey. Points of Interest, for example restaurants, hotels, service stations or charging stations, can be accepted as a destination. Even with the most up-to-date navigation data, information on individual Points of Interest may have changed, for example, service stations may not be in operation.

Searching for Points of Interest

Calling up Point of Interest search

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter new destination"
3. "Points of interest"
4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Online search": search for Points of Interest on the Internet.
 - ▷ "Keyword search" or "Category search": search for Points of Interest in navigation data saved in the vehicle.
 - ▷ Search using preferred Point of Interest categories.

Search online

1. "Online search"
2. Enter keyword.

Suggestions are displayed.
3. Select suggestion.

The list of Points of Interest is displayed.
4. "Search location"

The search location can be adapted if necessary.
5. Select a point of interest.

Details are displayed.
6. Select address.
7. If applicable, "Start route guidance"

Keyword search

1. "Keyword search"
2. Enter search term.
3. OK Select the symbol.

The Points of Interest are searched for at the current location.
4. The list of Points of Interest is displayed.
5. The Points of Interest are sorted by distance.

Vehicles with charge point: Display of charging stations, see page 12.

4. "Change location and sorting": the search can be adapted if necessary.
 - ▷ "Location": change search location.
 - ▷ "Sort by": change sorting.
5. Select a point of interest.
Details are displayed.
6. Select address.
7. If applicable, "Start route guidance"

Category search

1. "Category search"
2. Select "All categories" or a desired Point of Interest category.
The Points of Interest are searched for at the current location.
3. The list of Points of Interest is displayed.

The Points of Interest are sorted by distance.

Vehicles with charge point: Display of charging stations, see page 12.

4. "Change location and filter criteria": to adapt the search criteria if necessary:
 - ▷ "Location": change search location.
 - ▷ "Sort by": change sorting.
 - ▷ Select category details if necessary.
 - ▷ "Keyword": restrict list by a keyword search.
5. "Show results"
6. Select a point of interest.
Details are displayed.
7. Select address.
8. If applicable, "Start route guidance"

Preferred point of interest categories

Point of interest categories that have been searched for most frequently are displayed.

Select a preferred Points of Interest category to search at the location for Points of Interest of the desired category.

Displaying Points of Interest in the map

Principle

The categories of the Points of Interest can be shown as symbols on the map.

Selecting categories

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Map elements"
4. "Points of interest"
5. Select the desired setting.

The display can be switched on and off in the function bar of the map view, see page 22.

In vehicles with charge point: display of charging stations

General

Depending on the equipment, the map view shows different symbols for charging stations:

- ▷ AC charging stations.
- ▷ DC charging stations, where AC charging may also be possible.
- ▷ ChargeNow charging stations, can be used with the ChargeNow card or possibly the ChargeNow app.

Availability display of the charging stations

Depending on the equipment, country version and available online data, a coloured symbol indicates whether the charging station is in use.

Colour	Meaning
Green	Charging station free.
Yellow	Several charging stations available, some occupied.
Red	Charging station is occupied.

Even with the most up-to-date online data, information on charging station use may have changed.

Selecting destination from contacts

1. "Navigation"
 2. "Enter new destination"
 3.  "Contacts"
- Contacts with addresses are displayed if these addresses have been checked as destinations. Checking address as destination, see page 78.
4. Select a contact.
 5. Select address.
 6. "Start route guidance"

Entering destination using GPS coordinates

Principle

Destinations can be entered directly using GPS coordinates.

General

The coordinates can be entered in degrees, minutes and seconds or as a decimal value.

Calling up

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter new destination"

3.  "GPS coordinates"
4. "Format"
 - ▷ "Degrees Minutes Seconds"
 - ▷ "Decimal"
5. "Longitude" or "Latitude"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired coordinates and compass direction are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
8. If necessary, enter values for minutes and seconds, and compass direction.
9. "Accept destination"

Destination entry using the Concierge Service

General

The Concierge Service provides information about hotels and restaurants, for example. Addresses can also be sent directly to the navigation system.

Calling up the Concierge Service

1. "Navigation"
 2. "Enter new destination"
 3.  "Concierge Services"
- A voice connection to the Concierge Service is established.

Trip

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

To plan a trip, more than one stopover can be entered.

New trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
4. "Route guidance"
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the individual destination.
7. Enter an intermediate destination.
8. "Start route guidance"

Stopovers

General

An individual destination must be set prior to entering a stopover.

For one trip, a maximum of 30 stopovers can be entered.

Enter an intermediate destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Add intermediate destination"
3. Select the mode of destination entry.
4. Enter an intermediate destination.

Alternatively, the stopover can be entered via the map:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route guidance"
4. "Add intermediate destination"
5. Select the mode of destination entry.
6. Enter intermediate destination.

The stopover is added to the destinations list and is highlighted.

Editing stopovers

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route guidance"
4. Select the stopover.
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Skip destination": to bypass the current stopover.
 - ▷ "Start route guidance": to start route guidance to the stopover.
 - ▷ "Change order": to move the stopover in the list.
 - ▷ "Delete destination": to delete the stopover.

In the Professional navigation system: saved trips

General

Up to 30 trips can be saved in the trip list. If necessary, delete existing trips so that new trips can be saved.

Saving

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route guidance"
4. "Save journey"
5. Enter name.
6. **OK** Select the symbol.

Selecting

1. "Navigation"
2. "Journeys"
3. "My journeys"
4. Select trip.
5. "Edit journey" or "Start route guidance"

Deleting

1. "Navigation"
2. "Journeys"
3. "My journeys"
4. Highlight the desired trip if necessary.
- Press the button.
5. "Delete all journeys" or "Delete journey"

In the Professional navigation system: last trip

General

The last journey driven is automatically saved and can be called up again.

Calling up

1. "Navigation"
2. "Journeys"
3. "Last journey created"
4. Select another stopover if necessary.
5. "Edit journey" or "Start route guidance"

In the Professional navigation system: importing trips

General

Trips can be imported via a USB medium. The maximum number of trips that can be saved on the USB data storage medium and in the navigation system together is 30, otherwise import is not possible.

Trips can also be imported using Connected-Drive.

Importing trips via a USB data storage medium

1. Connect USB data storage medium to a USB interface in the front.
2. "Navigation"
3. "Journeys"
4. "Import journey (USB)"

With Professional Navigation System: BMW Routes

General

BMW Routes can be imported using ConnectedDrive and transferred into the route guidance.

Starting route

1. "Navigation"
2. "Journeys"

The number of newly added BMW Routes is shown.

3.  "BMW Routes"
4. Select desired BMW Route.
5. "Accept journey"

Ending route guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  "Route guidance"
4. "Stop route guidance"

Map

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Calling up the map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

 The map can also be directly called up with the button on the Controller.

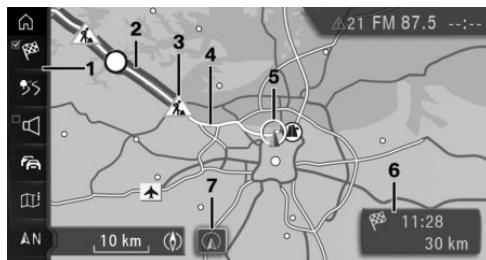
Overview

General

The map can be operated using iDrive.

For an explanation of the principle, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Map view



- 1 Function bar
- 2 Route stage with traffic obstruction
- 3 Road sign for traffic obstruction
- 4 Planned route
- 5 Location
- 6 Status field
- 7 With touchscreen equipment: display location

Function bar

Symbol	Function
 	Start/stop route guidance.
   	To change current route.
 	To switch spoken instructions on/off.
	Traffic information.
	Status of traffic information.
	Diversion exists.
	To display additional information on map.
	To select map view.
	Interactive map.

To switch to the toolbar, tilt the Controller to the left.

Status field

The following information is displayed:

- ▷ Symbol for active route guidance.
- ▷ Arrival time and distance to destination.
- ▷ Possible time delay due to traffic obstructions.

Lines on the map

Roads and streets are displayed in various colours and lines in accordance with their classification.

- ▷ Dashed lines: railway and ferry connections.
- ▷ Thin lines: national borders.

Traffic obstructions

If traffic information of a radio station or a traffic warning service is received, traffic obstructions may be shown on the map.

Route guidance

Starting

1. "Navigation"
2. Enter a destination, see page [9](#).
3.  "Start route guidance"

Once the route has been started, a message is displayed with the most important set route criteria.

Ending

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  Select the symbol.
5. "Stop route guidance"

Saving current destination as contact

Principle

After a destination has been input, it can be saved in the contacts.

Saving

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  "Route guidance"
4. Select destination.
-  Press the button.
6. "Save as contact" or "Add to contact"
7. If applicable, select an existing contact.
8. Enter the name and any further details.
9. "Save contact in the vehicle"

Changing the route

Route criteria

General

You can influence the route that is calculated by selecting various criteria. The suggested route can differ from your personal experience. With Professional Navigation System: for BMW routes the route criteria cannot be changed.

Default settings for route criteria

The route criteria can be set individually. The settings are saved as default and are automatically used for new route guidance procedures.

Default settings for route, see page [24](#).

With active route guidance: changing route criteria in the map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.

4.     "Route"
5. Select the desired setting.
6. Select general route criteria if necessary:
"General route settings"

Alternative Routes

Principle

When route guidance is active, alternative routes are suggested if possible.

Displaying alternative routes

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.     "Route"

An overview of the current route and the proposed alternative routes is shown. In addition, details such as travel time and route length and for the alternative routes, any data on consumption compared with the current route are shown.

The routes are illustrated in colour in the split screen.

5. Select an alternative route to add it to route guidance.

In the Professional navigation system: online alternative routes

General

Online alternative routes are transmitted to the vehicle online.

Information about traffic obstructions and traffic forecasts can be taken into account here.

 Symbol identifies online alternative routes.

If Dynamic Route Guidance is activated as well as online alternative routes, available online alternative routes are automatically adopted into the route guidance.

Activating/deactivating online alternative routes

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Route settings"
4. "Online routes"

Course of the route

Principle

During route guidance, more detailed information can be displayed about the current route and the route itself can be adapted.

General

Depending on the equipment version, various views of the course of the route are available during route guidance:

- ▷ List of route sections, see page 19.
- ▷ Map view, see page 17.
- ▷ Route guidance information on the map, see page 22.
- ▷ Arrow view in split screen, see page 27.
- ▷ Arrow view in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Depending on equipment, arrow view in Head-Up Display.

List of route sections

Principle

With active route guidance, a list of the route sections can be displayed.

General

The distance to be travelled is displayed per route section. If required, refuelling or charging recommendations are also displayed.

Displays

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

3. Tilt the Controller to the left.

4.     "Route"

5. "Route summary"

6. Highlight a route section.

The section of the route is also shown in the split screen.

Bypassing a section of the route

Principle

A new route can be calculated for a route section.

Setting a detour

1. "Navigation"

2. "Map"

3. Tilt the Controller to the left.

4.     "Route"

5.  "Change route"

6. "Diversion:"

7. Turn the Controller until the distance at which you want to return to the original route is shown.

8. Press the Controller.

Cancelling a detour

1. "Navigation"

2. "Map"

3. Tilt the Controller to the left.

4.     "Route"

5.  "Change route"

6. "Delete diversion"

Refuelling recommendation

Principle

The remaining range is calculated and, as needed, service stations along the way are displayed.

General

Even with the most up-to-date navigation data, information on individual service stations may have changed, for example service stations may not be in operation.

Refuelling recommendations are shown in the route list, see page 19.

Calling up

1. "Navigation"

2. "Map"

3. Tilt the Controller to the left.

4.     "Route"

5. "Route summary"

6.  "Refuel"

A list of service stations is displayed.

7. Highlight the service station.

The position of the service station is shown in the split screen.

8. Select the service station.

9.  Select the symbol.

10. "Start route guidance"

Changing the route

Principle

If route guidance is active, the route displayed on the map can be manually adjusted. For this purpose, use a marking point on the route, the 'route magnet', to drag the route in the desired direction.

Setting route magnet

1. "Navigation"

2. "Map"

3. Tilt the Controller to the left.

4.     "Route"

5.  "Change route"

6. "Add route magnet"

7. As with the interactive map, drag the route magnet with the Controller onto the desired location
 - ▷ To change the scale: turn the Controller.
 - ▷ To move the map: tilt the Controller in the corresponding direction.
 - ▷ To move the map diagonally: tilt the Controller in the corresponding direction and turn the Controller.
8. Press the Controller.
9. "Accept magnet"

Editing route magnet

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Route"
5.  "Change route"
6. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Modify route magnet": to change the amended route again.
 - ▷ "Remove route magnet": the original route is restored.

With Professional Navigation System: simulating route guidance

Principle

With a stationary vehicle and active route guidance, the journey along the route can be simulated.

Calling up

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route"
4. "Aerial view"

The route is shown on the map.

Functions and settings

Tilt the Controller to the left to call up further functions and settings.

Symbol	Function
▷	"Start aerial view"
	"Stop"
⌚	"Speed:"
➡➡	"Next route section"
⬅⬅	"Previous route section"
📍	"Jump to destination"
📍	"Jump to position"
☒	"Points of interest"

Spoken instructions

Switching on/off

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Spoken instructions"

Repeating

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Press the Controller.
4. "Repeat spoken instruction"

Using the button:



Press the button twice.

Volume control

Turn the volume knob during the spoken instruction until the desired volume is obtained.

Saving to Favourites buttons

The enable/disable spoken instructions function can be saved to a Favourites button for quick access.

To display additional information on map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Additional information"
4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Points of interest": symbols for Points of Interest are shown.
 - ▷ "Traffic flow": lines are displayed for the traffic flow.
For information on traffic flow in the map view, see page 30.
 - ▷ "Traffic events": symbols for traffic information are shown.
 - ▷ "Weather": display weather symbols on the map using Connected-Drive.
 - ▷ With navigation system Professional:
 "Parking information": coloured lines indicate the probability of free parking spaces along a road. The more visible the lines, the greater the probability of finding a parking space. The list of towns/cities in which parking information is available can be displayed. Showing list of towns/cities, see page 25.
 - ▷ With navigation system Professional:
 "Satellite images": depending on availability and resolution, satellite images are shown as the background in several scales.

Map view

Principle

The map view can be displayed in different perspectives, for example pointing towards north or pointing in the direction of travel.

General

The scale of the map can be enlarged or reduced.

Further map settings, see page 25.

To select map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Map views"
4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "North-oriented"
 - ▷ "In direction of travel"
 - ▷ "Perspective"
 - ▷ "Auto zoom": if route guidance is active, the map is automatically enlarged when approaching a manoeuvre.
 - ▷ "Auto zoom with info": if route guidance is active, the map is automatically enlarged when approaching a manoeuvre. Route guidance information is additionally shown on the map.
 - ▷ "Manual zoom": to manually enlarge or reduce scale of the map.
 - ▷ "Route overview": to display the route between the location and destination.

Route guidance information

Principle

With active route guidance, route guidance information can be displayed in the map view at the corresponding manoeuvring points on the current route.

General

On multi-lane roads, lane information shows the recommended lanes if necessary.

With navigation system Professional:

Route guidance information can also be displayed using arrow view in split screen, see page 27.

Display



Functions in the map view

General

Different information can be called up and settings made for any point on the map.

The map can be operated using iDrive in this case.

Operation using Controller

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4. ⌂ "Interactive map"
5. Select the destination with the cross-hairs.
 - ▷ To change the scale: turn the Controller.
 - ▷ To move the map: tilt the Controller in the corresponding direction.
 - ▷ To move the map diagonally: tilt the Controller in the corresponding direction and turn the Controller.

6. Press the Controller.

7. Select the desired setting.

Functions

Various functions are available, depending on the selected point on the map:

- ▷ ⏪ "Repeat spoken instruction"
- With active route guidance.
- ▷ ⚡ "Start route guidance": to start route guidance.
- ▷ ⚡+ "Add as intermediate dest.": to add a destination.
- ▷ ⓘ "Show details": any details on the destination can be shown.
- ▷ ⓘ "Show details": if the cross-hairs remain over a position with several Points of Interest, these are shown as a list.
- ▷ ⌂ "Leave interactive map": when operating Controller: exit interactive map.
- ▷ If your vehicle is equipped with a touch-screen:
 - ⌚ "Back to current location": switch to normal map view.
 - ▷ ⓘ "Show destination": map section around the destination is displayed.
 - ▷ ⓘ+ "Save position": save current position as contact.
 - ▷ ⌂ ⓘ ⌂ "Change map view": switch map view.

Settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The navigation settings can be configured individually. The settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

Route

Principle

The route criteria can be set individually. The settings are saved as default and are automatically used for new route guidance procedures.

Default criterion

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Route settings"
4. "Default criterion"
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Fast": time-optimised route resulting from a combination of a route as short as feasible and fast roads.
 - ▷ "ECO PRO": or "Efficient": fuel-optimised route resulting from a combination of a route requiring the lowest possible fuel consumption and fast roads.

Arrival time and consumption are based on driving in ECO PRO drive mode or adopting a conservative driving style.

- ▷ "Short": distance-optimised route resulting from a combination of a route as short as feasible and fast roads.

Further criteria

Adjusting

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Route settings"
4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ Settings for Dynamic Route Guidance:
 - ▷ "Automatic": traffic information is taken into account in route guidance. The current route is changed automatically if necessary.
 - Depending on equipment, online alternative routes are also accepted automatically.
 - ▷ "With confirmation": a message is displayed first if appropriate diversion routes are available.
 - ▷ With navigation system Professional: "Online routes": accept online alternative routes.
 - ▷ With navigation system Professional: "Learn route": if the driver deviates from the proposed route several times in an identical manner, this deviation will be taken into account in future route planning.
 - ▷ "Avoid motorways": motorways are avoided as far as possible.
 - ▷ "Avoid toll roads": routes with tolls are avoided as far as possible.

- ▷ "Avoid tax vignette roads": routes with long-term tolls are avoided as far as possible.
- ▷ "Avoid ferries/motorail trains": ferries are avoided as far as possible.

In the Professional navigation system: avoid areas

Principle

Areas that should be bypassed, can be defined as areas to avoid.

Defining an area to avoid

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Route settings"
4. "Areas to avoid"
5. "Set new area to avoid"
6. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
7. "Accept area"

Deleting an area to avoid

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Route settings"
4. "Areas to avoid"
5. Highlight desired avoid area if necessary.
-  Press the button.
7. Delete the desired or all the avoid areas.

In the Professional navigation system: parking information

Principle

In the map view, coloured lines indicate the probability of free parking spaces along a road.

The list of towns/cities in which parking information is available can be displayed.

Show list of towns/cities

1. "Navigation"
 2. "Settings"
 3. "Available on-street parking info"
- A list of towns/cities is displayed.

Map

Principle

The map view can be individually adjusted, for example the map colour and map mode can be set. In addition, it is possible to define which Points of Interests are displayed on the map.

Setting the map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. Select the desired setting.

Home address

Principle

The home address can be defined or changed.

Setting the home address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Set home address" or "Change home address"

Navigation data

Principle

Information for positioning and on the version of the navigation data can be called up.

Adjusting

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Position and version"
4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Enter position": in situations without GPS reception or, for example, immediately after travelling on a ferry, the vehicle position can be manually set on the map.
 - ▷ "Version information": information on the current map version.
 - ▷ With navigation system Professional:
"Help to improve the navigation map": data such as speed or position is saved anonymised in the vehicle and transferred to the manufacturer to improve the digital map.

Resetting settings

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3.  Press the button.
4. "Reset all settings"

Split screen

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

For the split screen, various views can be set independently of the main screen.

Adjusting

1. Tilt the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.
3. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Map": set the map view.
 - ▷ "Map view": select the map view.
 - ▷ "Traffic flow": display the traffic flow.
 - ▷ "Traffic events": display traffic events.
 - ▷ "Route overview": display the route overview.
 - ▷ "Arrow view": an arrow display is shown during active route guidance. A compass is displayed if no route guidance is active.
 - ▷ "Position": to display the current position.

- ▷ "3D exit roads": selected sections of route, for example motorway intersections, are shown in perspective.

Arrow view

Principle

With active route guidance, route guidance information is to be displayed as a list in the split screen.

General

It is possible to specify which additional information is displayed in the arrow view.

On multi-lane roads, lane information shows the recommended lanes if necessary.

With navigation system Professional:

Adjusting

1. Tilt the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.
3. "Arrow view"
 - 4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Traffic information": to display traffic flow and traffic incidents.
 - ▷ "Additional information": to display additional information, for example tunnels.

Display

The following information is displayed during route guidance:



- 1 Turn-off prompt
- 2 Traffic flow and traffic incidents
- 3 Upcoming road
- 4 Distance to manoeuvre
- 5 Lane information
- 6 Current road

Depending on the national specification, the display may differ from that illustrated.

Traffic information

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Traffic information from radio stations which broadcast the Traffic Message Channel TMC, a traffic warning service, is shown in the map view and considered when calculating the route. Information on traffic obstructions and hazards is continuously updated.

Traffic information is displayed on the map by symbols.

For particular dangers, for example objects on the road, a message is displayed.

Some hazard messages are also displayed as a Check Control message in instrument cluster.

Display in the function bar of map view

Symbol	Function
	Yellow symbol: The traffic information concerns the calculated route and the expected delay is less than 20 minutes.
	Red symbol: The expected delay is more than 20 minutes or the route is closed or there is a hazard message for the route.
	Grey symbol: No traffic information is available or the expected delay is less than 5 minutes.
	A suitable diversion is available with the traffic information.

Real-Time Traffic Information RTTI

In some countries, RTTI is transmitted via services which can be booked in addition. RTTI is then used and displayed instead of the traffic information from the radio stations.

With RTTI, traffic obstructions are localised more comprehensively and precisely. In addition, the traffic situation off the motorways, for example, on side streets and urban roads, is extensively recorded and shown. Diversion recommendations can be calculated more precisely on the basis of this information. This lowers the risk of coming across another traffic obstruction on diversions. Several recommended diversions or further information may be provided.

For journeys in countries where real-time traffic information is not available, the system continues to use traffic information from radio stations.

The function bar of the map view, see page 17, shows whether traffic information from the Traffic Message Channel TMC or RTTI is being used.

Switching on/off

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Receive traffic information"

Displaying list of traffic information

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  "Traffic information"

When route guidance is active, the traffic information affecting the calculated route is shown first, with red symbols. Then the traffic information not affecting the route is shown with grey symbols. The various items of traffic information are sorted by distance from the vehicle's current position.

4. Select the item of traffic information.
 - ▷ "Previous message": browse to the previous traffic information.
 - ▷ "Next message": browse to the next traffic information.

Displaying recommended diversion

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

3.  "Traffic information"
 4. "Diversion": a recommended diversion is displayed.
- The following functions are available:
- ▷ "Current route": keep current route.
 - ▷ "New route in": accept diversion.

Traffic information in the map

Setting the map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3.  "Additional information"
 - ▷  "Traffic events": symbols for traffic incidents are displayed.
 - ▷  "Traffic flow": lines are displayed for the traffic flow.

Symbols in the map view

Symbols for traffic incidents are displayed depending on the map scale and location of the traffic obstruction.

For information on traffic flow in the map view

The length and effect of a traffic obstruction are indicated on the map by coloured lines, depending on the scale.

- ▷ Black: closure.
- ▷ Red: traffic jam.
- ▷ Orange: queuing traffic.
- ▷ Yellow: heavy traffic.
- ▷ Green: free-flowing traffic.
- ▷ Grey: general traffic information, for example road works.

The information displayed depends on the specific traffic information service.

Dynamic Route Guidance

Principle

With Dynamic Route Guidance, the traffic information is taken into account in the calculation of the route.

Adjusting

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Route settings"
4. "Dynamic guidance"
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "With confirmation": a message is displayed first asking whether the route should go round the traffic obstruction.
 - ▷ "Automatic": the route is automatically changed if a traffic obstruction is encountered.

Navigation data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

Information for positioning and on the version of the navigation data can be called up.

Adjusting

1. "Navigation"
2. "Settings"
3. "Position and version"
4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Enter position": in situations without GPS reception or, for example, immediately after travelling on a ferry, the vehicle position can be manually set on the map.
 - ▷ "Version information": information on the current map version.
 - ▷ With navigation system Professional: "Help to improve the navigation map": data such as speed or position is saved anonymised in the vehicle and transferred to the manufacturer to improve the digital map.

Map update

General

Navigation data is saved in the vehicle and can be updated via a USB medium.

Current navigation data is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or from the ConnectedDrive store.

Depending on the volume of data, updating the navigation data can take several hours. You can check the status of the update process.

Update the navigation data during the journey, to save the vehicle battery.

Updating

1. Connect a USB medium with the new navigation data to a USB interface in the front.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
3. After updating, remove the USB medium.

Checking status

-  Press the button.
1. "Saving navigation data in the vehicle... (USB)"

Automatic map update

General

Depending on the equipment installed and the national specification, navigation data for the home region is transferred to the vehicle online four times a year, where it is automatically installed and updated.

Frequently Asked Questions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Why are spoken instructions no longer given immediately before junctions during route guidance?

- ▷ You have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

Frequently Asked Questions

Why can the current position not be displayed?

- ▷ The position is in an area not covered by the data, is in a poor reception area or the system is currently calculating the position.
Reception will normally be possible in the open.

Why is a destination with no street details not transferred to the route guidance system?

- ▷ No city centre can be determined for the town/city entered.
Enter any street in the town/city selected and start route guidance.

Why is a destination not transferred to the route guidance system?

- ▷ The data for the destination is not available in the navigation data. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.

Why can letters not be selected for destination input?

- ▷ The data for the destination is not available in the navigation data. Choose a destination as close as possible to the original one.



Entertainment

This chapter ensures your enjoyment when receiving radio and television stations or when playing CDs, DVDs and tracks from the music hard disc.

General

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Controls

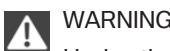
Buttons and functions

Button	Function
	Press: to switch the sound output on/off. Turn: to adjust the volume.
	To change the entertainment source.
	Press once: to change the station/track. Press and hold: to fast forward/rewind the track.
	Favourites buttons.
	ConnectedDrive. Depending on the equipment, Favourites button 8 is replaced by this button.
	To activate/deactivate traffic information.

Button	Function
	For Australia/New Zealand: To change waveband.
	To eject CD/DVD.

Sound output

Safety note



WARNING

Having the sound set to a high volume can damage your hearing. There is a danger of injury. Do not set a high volume.◀

Volume and sound output



- ▷ Turn the knob to set the volume.
- ▷ Press the knob to switch off the sound output. Pressing again restores the previous volume.

Playback of audio recordings is stopped when muting is active.

Entertainment sources

General

Possible entertainment sources:

- ▷ Radio, see page 41.
- ▷ Audio CD, see page 46.
- ▷ Video DVD, see page 55.
- ▷ Music hard disc, see page 47.
- ▷ USB audio, see page 51.
- ▷ USB video, see page 55.

- ▷ Bluetooth audio, see page 51.
- ▷ Television, TV, see page 58.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring, see page 57.
- ▷ Apple CarPlay, see page 113.

Changing entertainment source

On the radio:

1.  Press the button.

A list of all currently available entertainment sources is displayed.

2.  Press the button again to select an entertainment source.

Via iDrive:

1. "Media/Radio"

A list of all possible entertainment sources is displayed.

2. Select desired entertainment source.

Via the button on the Controller:

1.  Press the button.

The entertainment source last selected is played.

2.  Press the button again.

A list of all currently available entertainment sources is displayed.

3. Select desired entertainment source.

Adjusting the selection list for the entertainment sources

It is possible to select which entertainment sources are displayed in the selection list.

1. "Media/Radio"

A list of all possible entertainment sources is displayed.

2. "Personalise menu"

3. Select the desired setting.

Sound

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Settings are saved in the currently used driver profile.

Treble, bass, balance, fader

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Sound" or "Bowers & Wilkins sound"
3. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Treble": treble adjustment.
 - ▷ "Bass": bass adjustment.
 - ▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution.
 - ▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution.
4. Adjusting: turn the Controller.
5. Saving: press the Controller.

Multichannel reproduction, surround

When surround is activated, multichannel reproduction is simulated when playing a soundtrack in stereo.

1. "Media/Radio"

2. "Sound"

3. "Surround" or "Logic 7 Surround"

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trademarks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

Equaliser

Depending on the equipment, this function may not be available.

Settings for individual sound frequency ranges.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Sound" or "Bowers & Wilkins sound"
3. "Equaliser"

The current bass and treble settings, see page 38, are shown on the left and right edges of the equalizer screen. These values can also be set in the equalizer. The treble and bass sound settings affect the settings of the sound frequency ranges of the equalizer.

To select and adjust the treble and base settings or an audio frequency range.

1. Turn the Controller to select the audio frequency range to be set.
2. Press the Controller.
3. Turn the Controller to set the audio frequency.
4. Press Controller to save the setting.

Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System

For an optimum listening experience inside the vehicle, depending on the type of music, different sound profiles can be chosen.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Bowers & Wilkins sound"
3. "Sound profiles"
4. Select the desired setting.

Bang & Olufsen High End Surround Sound System

For an optimum listening experience inside the vehicle, depending on the type of music, different sound profiles can be chosen.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Sound"
3. "Bang & Olufsen"
4. Select the desired setting.

An additional speaker is provided in the centre of the instrument panel. When the sound output is switched on, the loudspeaker moves out automatically and is illuminated according to the illumination setting.

When the sound output is switched off, the loudspeaker moves back in.

Volume compensation

To compensate for the increasing driving noise at higher speeds, it is possible to set an automatic volume increase.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Sound" or "Bowers & Wilkins sound"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired setting:

▷ "Navigation": ratio between the volume of spoken instructions and entertainment volume.

▷ "Speed volume": ratio between entertainment volume and speed.

With Harman/Kardon Surround Sound System: audibility is improved by adapting the sound settings.

With Harman/Kardon Surround Sound System or M4 CS: audibility is improved by adapting the sound settings.

With Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System or with Bang & Olufsen High End Surround System: volume is automatically adjusted according to the driving noise audible in the interior.

"Speed volume": omitted in this case.

▷ "PDC": ratio of the Park Distance Control PDC acoustic signal volume to the entertainment volume.

The basic setting ensures that the acoustic signal will be heard at any volume.

▷ "Gong": ratio of the acoustic signal volume, for example for seat belt reminder, to the entertainment volume.

The basic setting ensures that the acoustic signal will be heard at any volume.

▷ "Telephone": sensitivity of the microphone during a telephone call.

The adjustment is performed during the telephone call and is saved for the mobile telephone being used.

▷ "Loudspeakers": loudspeaker volume during a telephone call.

Playback of audio recordings is stopped when muting is active.

The adjustment is performed during the telephone call and is saved for the mobile telephone being used.

5. Adjusting: turn the Controller.
6. Saving: press the Controller.

The volume setting for the Traffic Programme, see page 44, is made during an announcement.

Resetting the sound settings

The sound settings are reset to factory settings.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Sound"
3. "Reset"

Radio

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Settings are saved in the currently used driver profile.

AM/FM stations

General

It is possible that AM stations might not be received, depending on the equipment and country variant.

Radio Data System RDS

Principle

RDS broadcasts additional information on the FM waveband, for example the station name.

If a station has a number of frequencies, an automatic switch to the frequency with the best reception quality is made when required.

It is recommended that you switch on RDS.

Switching on/off

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "FM"

3.  Press the button.
4. "RDS"

Selecting a station

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"

The station last played is played and the station list is shown.

3. Select the desired station.

Changing stations

On the radio:

-  Press the left or right button.

The previous or next station from the station list is played.

Saving stations

General

A symbol at the highlighted station indicates whether the station has already been saved.

Symbol	Meaning
	Station has not been saved.
	Station has already been saved.

Saving the station being played

1. "Media/Radio"
 2. "FM" or "AM"
 3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
 4.  "Save station"
- The memory list is displayed.
5. Select the desired memory location.

Saving a station that is not being played

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Highlight the desired station.
4. Press and hold the Controller until the memory list is displayed.
5. Select the desired memory location.

The stations can also be saved to the Favourites buttons, see the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Manual station selection

Station selection via frequency.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4. "Manual search"
5. To select the frequency: turn the Controller.
6. To save the frequency: press the Controller.

Renaming a station

When saving a station with an RDS signal, the RDS information transferred during saving is adopted as the station name. This name can be changed.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Select the desired station.
4.  Press the button.
5. "Rename as:"
If necessary, wait until the name of the desired station is displayed.
6. Press the Controller to save this name.

Displaying additional station information

If a radio station broadcasts Radio Text or Radio Text Plus data, this information, for example the track or artist of the piece of music, can be shown. The availability, content and sequence depend on the radio station.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Select the desired station.
4.  Press the button.
5. "Station information"

Digital radio DAB/DMB

Principle

Digital stations can broadcast several shows simultaneously on one frequency. The collection of stations for a particular frequency is called an ensemble. Some stations feature additional programmes. Sports stations, for example, may broadcast various sports events at the same time.

Depending on what the station provides, additional information or even images transmitted by the station can be shown.

Selecting a station

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "DAB" or "DAB/DMB"
 - ▷ DAB: the station last played is played and the station list is shown.
 - ▷ DMB: the current video is shown.
3. Select station.
DAB: information on the station and program currently playing is shown. The availability, content and sequence depend on the radio station.

Changing stations

On the radio:



Press the left or right button.

The previous or next station from the station list is played.

Saving stations

General

A symbol at the highlighted station indicates whether the station has already been saved.

Symbol	Meaning
☆	Station has not been saved.
☆^	Station has already been saved.

Saving the station being played

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "DAB" or "DAB/DMB"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4. ☆^ "Save station"
The memory list is displayed.
5. Select the desired memory location.

Saving a station that is not being played

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "DAB" or "DAB/DMB"
3. Highlight the desired station.
4. Press and hold the Controller until the memory list is displayed.
5. Select the desired memory location.

The stations can also be saved to the Favourites buttons, see the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Additional information

If a radio station broadcasts RadioText or RadioText Plus, this information can be displayed. Such information would be, for example the

track or performer of a piece of music, or the telephone number or e-mail address of the radio station. The availability, content and sequence depend on the radio station.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "DAB" or "DAB/DMB"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Press the button.
5. "Station information"

Automatic station following

General

If reception is poor, a search is run for the same station in another ensemble. If the station can be received better in another ensemble, an automatic switch is made.

If station tracking is activated, the station is additionally searched for in the analogue frequency band. If it is not available in another ensemble, the station's analogue frequency is switched to instead. This changeover is only possible if the corresponding station's signal is available in adequate quality and the IDs of the stations match.

Switching on automatic station following

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "DAB" or "DAB/DMB"
3. Press the button.
4. "DAB station following"

Electronic programme guide

Several stations broadcast an electronic programme guide for their programme.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "DAB" or "DAB/DMB"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4. "DAB programme"

All available programme guides are displayed.

For each programme, the programme currently being broadcast and the next programme are displayed.

Select the desired entry to show the details on a programme.

Enlarging image

If a radio station transmits images, these are shown. The image display can be shown enlarged.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "DAB" or "DAB/DMB"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Enlarge image"



Press the button.

Interrupting

Press one of the following buttons on the radio during the traffic announcement:



- ▷ "Cancel traffic information"

Saved stations

General

40 stations can be saved.

Selecting a station

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Saved stations"
3. Select the desired station.



Turn the knob during a traffic announcement until the desired volume is obtained.

Note the following regarding volume setting:

- ▷ The set volume is not saved.
- ▷ At the start of each journey, the volume of the traffic announcements is adapted to the volume of the entertainment source playback.
- ▷ The volume cannot be reduced further beyond the point at which the traffic announcement is still plainly audible.

Deleting a station

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Saved stations"
3. Highlight the station to be deleted.
4.  Press the button.
5. "Delete entry"

Traffic information

Activating/deactivating

On the radio:

Audio

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Music tracks, audiobooks and podcasts can be played. The sound is output via the vehicle loudspeakers.

The settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

The following audio sources can be used, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Symbol	Meaning
	AUX-IN port.
	Audio CD.
	Music hard disc.
	USB device.
	Music interface for smartphones.
	Bluetooth audio.
	Online Entertainment

AUX-IN port

Principle

A mobile audio device, for example an MP3 player, can be connected via the AUX-IN port.

General

Recommendation: medium sound and volume settings on the mobile audio device. The sound might depend on the quality of the audio files.

Connecting a mobile audio device



Connect the headphones or line-out connection of the mobile audio device to the AUX-IN port.

Ensure that the plug is inserted into the AUX-IN port as far as it will go.

Playback

1. Connect the mobile audio device.
2. Switch on the mobile audio device.
3. Select a track on the mobile audio device.
4. "Media/Radio"
5. "AUX"

Adjusting volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the mobile audio device. If this volume differs significantly from other audio sources, it makes sense to adjust the volumes.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "AUX"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4. "Volume"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired volume is set.
6. Press the Controller.

Audio CD

General

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology based on a number of registered US patents and intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media with the corresponding protection – unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision – may only be shown privately. It is prohibited to copy this technology.

DTS Digital Surround

 Manufactured under licence of US patent numbers: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other patents issued and applied for in the USA and worldwide. DTS and the logo are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS Inc. © DTS, Inc. All rights reserved.

Safety notes

CD/DVD player

WARNING

The CD/DVD players are Class 1 laser products. Lasers can damage the retina of the eye. There is a danger of injury. Do not use the CD/DVD player if the cover is damaged.◀

CDs and DVDs

NOTE

If incompatible CD sizes are used, the CD can jam and be impossible to eject. Adhesive labels that have been affixed subsequently may peel off during playback. There is a danger of damage to property.

- ▶ Do not use CDs with adhesive labels that have been affixed subsequently.

- ▶ Only use round CDs with a standard diameter of 12 cm, approximately 5 in and do not play back CDs with an adapter, for example single CDs.
- ▶ Do not use combined CD/DVDs, for example DVD Plus.◀

Formats that can be played

- ▶ CD-R
- ▶ CD-RW
- ▶ CD-DA

Inserting CD

Insert the CD in the CD slot with the label side uppermost.

Playback begins automatically.

Removing CD

1.  Press the button on the radio.
The CD is ejected slightly.
2. Remove the CD.

Selecting a CD

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "CD"

Further descriptions for playback, see page 52.

Displaying album information

A database with album information is saved in the vehicle. Depending on the information entered in this database for the played audio CD, the album name, artist, track name and album cover will be displayed.

Updating album information

To update this database, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Gracenote technology

 Gracenote. Music recognition technology and related data is provided by Gracenote. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery.

For more information, please visit
www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to now Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to now Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

1. "Media/Radio"

2. "CD"



3. Press the button.

4. "Album information"

The information saved for the album is displayed. If an album is not clearly recognised, all matching entries are displayed.

5. Select the appropriate entry if necessary:

- ▷ If information is displayed that does not match the played album, the information can be hidden. In this case, updating the database may also provide a solution.

"Reset album information"

The album information is no longer displayed.

- ▷ With ConnectedDrive Services, it is possible to perform an online update of the database.

"Search for album info online"

The located information is entered in the vehicle database and displayed.

Malfunctions

The CD/DVD player and changer are optimised for operation in the vehicle. In some instances, the CD/DVD players and changers may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than devices for stationary use.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played back, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Atmospheric humidity

The CD/DVD or the focussing lens may have condensation due to high humidity and playback may temporarily not be possible.

Self-burned CDs/DVDs

- ▷ With self-burned CDs/DVDs, possible causes of malfunction include inconsistent data-creation or burning process, and poor quality or old blank CD/DVDs.
- ▷ Only write on the upper side of CDs/DVDs using a special marker pen.

Using CDs/DVDs correctly

- ▷ Avoid leaving fingerprints and protect against dust, scratches and moisture.
- ▷ Store CDs/DVDs in a case.
- ▷ Do not expose CDs/DVDs to temperatures above 50 °C/122 °F, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often copy-protected by the manufacturer. Copy protection could result in CDs/DVDs being impossible to play, or only being playable with restrictions.

Music hard disc

General

Tracks from CDs and USB media can be saved on the music hard disc in the vehicle and played from there.

- ▷ CD: the tracks are converted into a compressed audio format and saved in a directory with the album name. If there is no information on the album, see page 46, the directory and all tracks receive an auto-generated name.
- ▷ USB device with compressed audio files: all playable audio files of the USB medium are saved in a directory with the name of the USB device. Tracks and directories can be renamed and deleted subsequently. Manage the music hard disc, see page 49.

Tracks with Digital Rights Management, DRM, copy protection, are saved, but cannot be played.

Back up the music hard disc regularly, see page 50, otherwise the saved music could be lost in the event of a fault in the hard disc.

Saving from CD

1. Insert the audio CD, see page 46, in the CD player.
2. "Media/Radio"
3. "CD"
4. Tilt the Controller to the left.
5.  "Save CD"

The CD is saved on the music hard disc.

During saving, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not remove the CD during saving.
- ▷ The system switches to the music hard disc. Tracks that have already been transferred can be played.
- ▷ No tracks on the CD can be played.
- ▷ It is possible to change over to other audio sources.

Cancelling saving from CD

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "CD"

3. Tilt the Controller to the left.

4.  "Cancel saving"

The saving process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Resuming saving from CD

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "CD"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Continue saving"

Saving from a USB device

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface, see page 51.
 2. "Media/Radio"
 3. "USB"
- Or:
4. Tilt the Controller to the left.
 5.  "Import music"

The audio data is saved on the music hard disc.

During saving, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not remove the USB device during saving.
- ▷ The tracks on the USB device can still be played.
- ▷ It is possible to change over to other audio sources.

Cancelling saving from a USB device

1. "Media/Radio"
 2. "USB"
- Or:
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
 4.  "Cancel saving"

The saving process is interrupted.

Resuming saving from a USB device

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "USB"
- Or:
Select the name of the USB device.
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Import music"

Selecting the music hard disc

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Music collection"

Further descriptions for playback, see page 52.

Managing the music hard disc

Renaming folders or tracks

If a folder with the name of an album is renamed, the album name in the track information for the individual tracks does not change.

If a track is renamed, file name changes but not the track name saved in the track information.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Music collection"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Media search"
5. "Browse folder"
- Folders and tracks in the highest directory level are displayed.
6. Mark desired folder or track, search sub-folders if necessary.
-  Press the button.
- "Rename folder" or "Rename track"
The current name is shown.
- Adjust name as desired.
- OK** Select the symbol.

Deleting folders or tracks

A folder cannot be deleted if a track contained in it is currently being played.

A track cannot be deleted if it is currently being played.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Music collection"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Media search"
5. "Browse folder"
- Folders and tracks in the highest directory level are displayed.
6. Mark desired folder or track, search sub-folders if necessary.
-  Press the button.
- "Delete folder" or "Delete track"

Displaying album information

A database with album information is saved in the vehicle. Depending on the information entered in this database for the selected album, the album name, artist, track name and album cover will be displayed.

Updating album information

To update this database, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Gracenote technology

 Music recognition technology and related data is provided by Gracenote. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery.

For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to now Gracenote.

Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to now Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773,

#6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

- ▷ ☺ Symbol for saved audio CDs.
 - ▷ The update takes place for each individual album.
 - ▷ Album information can also be updated if the album has been imported from another vehicle.
1. "Media/Radio"
 2. "Music collection"
 3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
 4. 🔎 "Media search"
 5. "Browse folder"

Folders and tracks in the highest directory level are displayed.

6. Mark desired folder, search sub-folders if necessary.

 Press the button.

7. "Album information"

The information saved for the album is displayed. If an album is not clearly recognised, all matching entries are displayed.

9. Select the appropriate entry if necessary:
 - ▷ If information is displayed that does not match the played album, the information can be hidden. In this case, updating the database may also provide a solution.

"Reset album information"

The album information is no longer displayed.

- ▷ With ConnectedDrive Services, it is possible to perform an online update of the database.

"Search for album info online"

The located information is entered in the vehicle database and displayed.

Displaying free capacity

To display the free capacity on the music hard disc.

1. "Media/Radio"
 2. "Music collection"
-  Press the button.
3. "Manage music collection"
 4. "Available memory"

Deleting selected tracks

Selected tracks can be deleted.

1. "Media/Radio"
 2. "Music collection"
-  Press the button.
3. "Manage music collection"
 4. "Delete selected tracks"

The music search is displayed. Proceed according to the description for search criteria, see page 53.

A list of tracks to be deleted is created according to the search criteria.

6. Select a track.

Deleting all tracks

1. "Media/Radio"
 2. "Music collection"
-  Press the button.
3. "Manage music collection"
 4. "Delete all music tracks"
 6. "OK"

Backing up the music hard disc

Back up the music hard disc to a USB device regularly, otherwise the saved music could be lost in the event of a fault on the hard disc.

When backing up, ensure that the USB device has adequate free capacity.

Depending on the file size and number of tracks, backing up the music hard disc may take a long time. This is why it is best to perform the backup during a longer journey. If there is no time to complete the back-up, do not unplug the USB device. The back-up will resume on your next journey.

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface, see page [51](#).
2. "Media/Radio"
3. "Music collection"
4.  Press the button.
5. "Manage music collection"
6. "Save music collection to USB"

Restoring the music hard disc

When restoring the music hard disc from a USB device, the music hard disc available in the vehicle is overwritten. It is best to perform the backup during a longer journey. If the saving procedure is cancelled, do not unplug the USB device. Saving will resume on your next journey.

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface, see page [51](#).
2. "Media/Radio"
3. "Music collection"
4.  Press the button.
5. "Manage music collection"
6. "Restore music collection from USB device"

USB device

Formats that can be played

MP3, MP4, M4A, M4B, AAC, WMA.

Apple iPod/iPhone

The Apple iPod/iPhone music search and music playback functions are supported.

Audio players and storage media with USB port

Information on all tracks, for example artist, genre or track, as well as the playlists are transferred to the vehicle. This might take some time, depending on the USB device, file size and number of tracks.

During transfer, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

The information for approximately 40,000 tracks can be saved in the vehicle, but no more than 16,000 tracks per USB device.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management DRM cannot be played.

Selecting USB device

Information regarding the USB interface, see the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface.
2. "Media/Radio"
3. "USB"

Or:

Select the name of the USB device.

Further descriptions for playback, see page [52](#).

Bluetooth audio

General

- ▷ Playback of music files via Bluetooth from external devices, for example audio devices or mobile telephones.
- ▷ The sound is output via the vehicle loudspeakers.

- ▷ The volume of the sound output depends on the device. If applicable, change volume settings on the device.
- ▷ Up to four external devices can be connected to the vehicle.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The Bluetooth device is connected with the vehicle. Bluetooth connections, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.
- ▷ Bluetooth audio playback has been activated.

Selecting Bluetooth device

1. "Media/Radio"
2. Select the required Bluetooth device from the list.

Further descriptions for playback, see page 52.

If the Bluetooth device is not listed in the device list, Bluetooth audio playback may have not been activated. Proceed as follows to activate Bluetooth audio playback:

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Manage mobile devices"
3. Select the required Bluetooth device.
4. "Bluetooth audio"

Online Entertainment

Principle

Online music services can be accessed via the Internet. It is necessary to have a valid membership with the selected music service.

The music offered there can be played and saved in the vehicle. Saved tracks can also be played back when there is no Internet connection.

The Owner's Handbook for Online Entertainment is available on the Internet at

www.bmw.com, under ConnectedDrive Services.

Selecting Online Entertainment

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Online Entertainment"

Playback

General

Once an audio source has been selected, information about playback appears on the Control Display.

The Control Display shows the available information about the current track and the playlist. The content and scope of the playlist depends on the selected audio source and the search criteria used.

- ▷ On an audio CD, all tracks on the CD are displayed.
- ▷ The selected playlist is displayed in the case of USB and Bluetooth devices as well as for the music hard disc. This can be the result of a search or a previously saved playlist.

Tilting the Controller to the left displays further functions. The extent of applications available depends on the selected audio source.

With Bluetooth devices, the extent of applications that can be operated using iDrive may be restricted depending on the supported Bluetooth version. If necessary, the missing functions can be operated directly on the device.

Selecting track

Select the desired track from the playlist.

All tracks in the playlist are played, starting from the selected track.

Changing the track

On the radio:

-  Press the left or right button.

The previous or next track from the playlist is played.

Fast forward/rewind

On the radio:

-  Press and hold the left or right button.

Search criteria

General

The possible search criteria depend on the selected audio source.

Searching for track information

The following search criteria relate to the data saved in the track information.

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2.  "Media search"

3. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Search"

All tracks are displayed which have track information containing the entered search term. The more characters are entered, the more tightly the result is restricted.

Tilt the Controller to the right to display the list of results.

- ▷ "Genres"

A list of all available genres is displayed.

Once a genre has been selected, all matching artists are displayed.

- ▷ "Artists"

A list of all available artists is displayed.

Once an artist has been selected, all matching albums and tracks are displayed.

- ▷ "Albums"

A list of all available albums is displayed.

Once an album has been selected, all matching tracks are displayed.

- ▷ "Tracks"

A list of all available tracks is displayed.

4. If necessary, select an album.
5. Select the track you want to start to play back.

Search for artists and tracks can also be directly selected.

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2.  "Artists" or  "Tracks"

Tracks which do not contain the selected search criterion are grouped as "unknown".

Searching for playlists

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2.  "Media search"

3. "Playlists"

A list of all available playlists is displayed.

4. Select playlist.

5. Select the track you want to start to play back.

Information about playback appears on the Control Display. The playlist corresponds to the track list resulting from the search.

Searching for other media

Depending on the USB device and the equipment, audio books and podcasts can be searched for separately.

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2.  "Media search"

3. Select the desired setting:

- ▷ "Podcasts"

A list of all available podcasts is displayed.

- ▷ "Audio books"

A list of all available audio books is displayed.

4. Select the track you want to start to play back.

Information about playback appears on the Control Display. The playlist corresponds to the track list resulting from the search.

Searching in the folder structure

It is possible to search the music hard disc and USB devices via the directory structure.

The names of the folders and tracks correspond to the folder and file names. The folder and file names may differ from the names in the track information.

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2. "Media search"

3. "Browse folder"

4. Change to a subfolder if necessary.

Select the track you want to start to play back.

Information about playback appears on the Control Display. The playlist corresponds to the track list resulting from the search.

Browsing through the albums

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2. "Browse albums"

The available albums are shown graphically.

3. Turn the Controller to browse through the albums.

4. Select the desired album.

All tracks on the selected album are displayed.

5. Select the track you want to start to play back.

6. Tilt the Controller to the left. The Control Display shows information about playback. The playlist corresponds to the track list of the album.

Searching for similar tracks

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2. "More like this (local)"

A list of similar tracks is displayed.

3. Select the track you want to start to play back.

Information about playback appears on the Control Display. The playlist corresponds to the track list resulting from the search.

Shuffle

The current playlist or all tracks on the selected audio source are played in random order.

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2. "Shuffle"

Creating a Favourites list

The current track can be allocated to a special playlist, the Favourites list. If the current track is already in the Favourites list, it can be deleted from it. The Favourites list is displayed first when searching for playlists, see page 53.

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2. "Add to favourites" or "Delete from favourites"

Video

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Video files and, depending on the equipment, video DVDs can be played. The sound is output via the vehicle loudspeakers.

The settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

The video screen on the front Control Display will be switched off when exceeding a speed dependent on country.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following video sources are possible.

Symbol	Meaning
	Video DVD.
	USB device.
	Screen Mirroring.

USB devices

General

Depending on the USB device, video playback via the USB connection may not be possible.

Formats that can be played

MP4, M4V, AVI, WMV, XVID, H.264.

Selecting USB device

Connect the USB device to the USB interface using a suitable adapter cable.

Information regarding the USB interface, see the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "USB"

Or:

Select the name of the connected USB device.

Searching for video films

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.
2. "Media search"
3. "Videos"

A list of all available video films is displayed.

4. Select the track you want to start the playback with.

Information about playback appears on the Control Display. The playlist corresponds to the film list resulting from the search.

Video DVD

Country codes

Only DVDs with the regional code selected when the vehicle was ordered can be played. See also information on the DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada.
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa.

Code	Region
3	South-East Asia.
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand.
5	North-West Asia, North Africa.
6	China.
0	All regions.

Inserting a DVD

Insert the DVD in the DVD slot with the label side uppermost.

Playback begins automatically.

Removing a DVD

1.  Press the button on the radio.
The DVD is ejected slightly.
2. Remove the DVD.

Selecting a DVD

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Playback begins automatically.

Video menu

To open the Video menu:

-  Press button during playback.

Symbol	Function
	Call up the DVD menu. Many DVDs have their own menu. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.
	Press the button to exit the DVD menu.
	To start playback.

Symbol	Function
	Pause. Playback is interrupted.
	Previous chapter.
	Rewind. The speed is increased with every additional press of the Controller.
	To stop, start playback.
	Next chapter.
	Fast forward. The speed is increased with every additional press of the Controller.
	To stop, start playback.
	Stop. Playback is stopped.
	Setting the language. The languages available depend on the DVD.
	To set the subtitles. The available subtitles depend on the DVD.
	Back. To return to the higher menu. This function is not supported by all media.
	More functions.

The video menu is shown automatically after some time.

DVD settings

Depending on the DVD, some settings are only possible via the DVD menu, see also information on your DVD.

Selecting the camera angle

The availability of an alternative camera angle depends on the DVD and the current track on the DVD.

1.  Press button during playback.
2. ⚙ "More functions"
3. "Viewing angle"
4. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness, contrast, colour

1.  Press button during playback.
2. ⚙ "More functions"
3.  "Display settings"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed, then press the Controller.

Setting the zoom

To show an enlarged TV image.

1.  Press button during playback.
2. ⚙ "More functions"
3.  "Display settings"
4. "Zoom mode"

Selecting track

1.  Press button during playback.
2. ⚙ "More functions"
3. "Select track"
4. Select the desired track.

Selecting a chapter

1.  Press button during playback.
2. ⚙ "More functions"
3. "Select chapter"
4. Select the desired chapter.

Screen Mirroring

The smartphone screen is shown on the Control Display over a WiFi connection. Sound is played back via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

This function must be supported by the smartphone.

The smartphone is used for operation.

For connecting the smartphone with the vehicle, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Television, TV

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

For your own safety, the TV picture is only displayed in the front compartment if the vehicle is travelling at speeds up to approximately 3 km/h, 2 mph. In some country versions, it is only shown with the parking brake applied or with the selector lever in selector lever position P.

The settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

The TV picture is displayed in the rear even while driving.

Selecting a channel

In certain circumstances, the list of channels that can be received might not be updated automatically. If necessary, update the list with station search, see page 58.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
The last selected channel is displayed.
3. Turn the Controller to display the channel list.

All receivable TV channels and radio stations are shown in a list. The radio stations are shown at the end of the list.

4. Select the desired channel.

Symbol	Meaning
	TV channel.
	TV radio station.

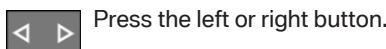
Station search

The station search takes up to 2 minutes depending on the number of channels offered. If not all offered channels are listed, it might be necessary to reset the TV region, see page 60.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
3.  Press the button.
4. "Station scan"
5. To cancel the search:
"Cancel!"

Changing the channel

On the radio:



The previous or next channel from the channel list is displayed.

Saving the channel

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"

A symbol next to the highlighted channel indicates whether the channel has already been saved.

Symbol	Meaning
☆+	Channel has not been saved.
☆	Channel has already been saved.

Memory locations 1 - 25 are available.

To save the channel shown:

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2. ☆+ "Save station"

The memory list is displayed.

3. Select the desired memory location.

To save a different channel to the one being shown:

1. Select the desired channel.

2. Press and hold the Controller until the memory list is displayed.

3. Select the desired memory location.

The stations can also be saved to the Favourites buttons.

Electronic programme guide

Many stations provide an electronic programme guide.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4. "TV guide"

The stations' current and next programmes are displayed.

Depending on the information that a station transmits, the entire daily schedule of the station may be shown.

Select station names to display the daily schedule.

If some characters are not correctly displayed, it may be necessary to reset the TV region, see page 60.

Showing programme information

Depending on the information a station transmits, more detailed information on a programme can be shown.

Select programme to show the more detailed information.

The corresponding station can be selected.

Saved channels

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Saved stations"
3. Select the desired channel.

Deleting channels

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Saved stations"
3. Highlight the channel to be deleted.
4. Press the button.
5. "Delete entry"

Adjusting TV

Setting the brightness, contrast, colour, zoom

1. Tilt the Controller to the left during playback.
2. "Display settings"
3. Select the desired setting.
4. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed, then press the Controller.

Selecting a TV region

The TV region is not the same in every country. Adjust the TV region for optimum TV reception.

For more information: www.bmw.com/tvregion.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
3.  Press the button.
4. "TV region"
5. Select the region.

Select the soundtrack

The range of soundtracks available depends on the TV programme and time of day.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Audio"
5. Select the soundtrack.

Showing subtitles

The subtitles display depends on what the relevant station provides.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Subtitles"
5. Select subtitles.

Teletext

Calling up teletext

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Teletext"

Selecting a page

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Teletext"
5. Tilt the Controller to the left.
6. **123** "Select page"
7. Turn the Controller until the desired page number is displayed.

If the contents are too long to be shown on a single page the display is scrolled automatically.

Changing pages

On the radio:

-   Press the left or right button.

The previous or next page is displayed.

Via iDrive:

- ▷ Turn the Controller in the desired direction.
- ◁ To move to the previous page.
- ▷ To move to the next page.

Zoom

The top or bottom half of the page can be enlarged.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Teletext"
5. Tilt the Controller to the left.
6.  "Zoom"

Automatic scrolling

A page may consist of several sub-pages which are automatically scrolled through.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "TV"

3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4.  "Teletext"
5. Tilt the Controller to the left.
6. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ Preventing scrolling  "Hold page"
 - ▷ Allowing scrolling  "Hold page"

Audio remote control in the rear

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

Operation is in the same way as the corresponding buttons on the radio.

Controls

Button	Function
	Turn the wheel: to adjust the volume. Press the middle button: to switch the sound output on/off.
	To change the entertainment source.
	Press the left or right button: to switch stations, tracks or chapters. Press and hold the left or right button: to fast forward/rewind.

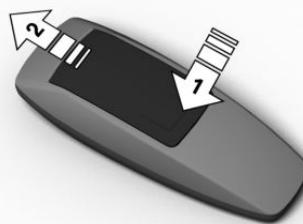
The send time of the remote control is limited in accordance with legal regulations. Pressing or turning the relevant button again allows a function to be executed again.

Changing the batteries



NOTE

If batteries are used in the remote control, damage can occur due to the contained substances. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not use rechargeable batteries.◀



1. Remove the cover. To do so, press the cover, arrow 1, and push forwards, arrow 2.
2. Insert batteries of the same type.
3. Close the cover.



Dispose of old batteries at a Service

Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Rear entertainment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

Rear entertainment enables vehicle occupants in the rear to access entertainment sources irrespective of the driver's selection. There are two display screens in the rear for this purpose, as well as various media connections and a CD/DVD/Blu-ray player.

Rear entertainment also allows access to many iDrive functions.

General

Sound is output either via headphones or the vehicle loudspeakers.

Different entertainment sources can be selected via the screens.

Some entertainment sources can be controlled from the front and rear at the same time. The appropriate setting can be selected in the rear-seat control feature, see page 68, for these situations.

Entertainment sources that can be selected in the front and rear:

- ▷ Radio stations.

Only one radio station can be listened to in the vehicle.

- ▷ Music hard disc.

Various tracks from the music hard disc can be listened to.

- ▷ TV channels.

Only one TV station can be received in the vehicle.

Entertainment sources that can only be selected in front:

- ▷ USB port in the front.

- ▷ Front CD/DVD player.

DVD only with vehicle stationary.

Entertainment sources that can only be selected in the rear:

- ▷ AUX-IN port in the rear.

- ▷ USB port in the rear.

- ▷ HDMI port in the rear.

- ▷ CD/DVD/Blu-ray drive in the rear.

Screens

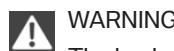
General

Fold in the display screens before adjusting the backrests of the front seats.

Fold in the screens before using the through-loading system.

To clean the screens, follow the care instructions, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Safety note



WARNING

The back of the screen can get very hot during operation. There is a danger of injury. Do not grip the back of the screen.◀

Adjusting



Pull on the lower edge or press against the lower edge to adjust the inclination.

Switching the display screen in the rear on/off

 Press the button on the lower edge of the screen.

The corresponding display screen is switched on/off.

If control of the rear entertainment has been deactivated in the rear-seat control feature, see page 68, it is not possible to switch the system on from the rear.

CD/DVD/Blu-ray player in the rear



- 1** CD/DVD/Blu-ray slot
- 2** CD/DVD/Blu-ray ejection
- 3** Headphone connection, right
- 4** HDMI/MHL connection
- 5** AUX-IN port

6 USB port

7 Headphone connection, left

Remote control

Controls

Button	Function
	Operating principle same as front Controller.
	Turning the wheel: highlights a menu item.
	Pressing the middle button: confirms the selection.
	Press the arrow buttons (corresponds to tilting the Controller): switches between screens, operates the DVD/Blu-Ray menu.
	Calls up the main menu.
	Calls up the previous screen.
	Calls up the Options menu.
	Press the left or right button: switches stations, tracks or chapters.
	Press and hold the left or right button: to fast forward/rewind.
	Press the left or right button: adjusts the volume.
	Push the switch to the left or right: toggles between the screens.

The send time of the remote control is limited in accordance with legal regulations. Pressing

or turning the respective button again allows a function to be executed again.

Connecting remote control

Two remote controls can be connected.

The first remote control must be connected via iDrive at the front.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Headphones/Remote control"

A list of connected devices is displayed.

4.  Press and hold the button on the remote control for approximately 5 seconds.

Simultaneously press and hold the middle button on the remote control for approximately 5 seconds.

2 LEDs on the remote control flash for approximately 10 seconds. Perform next step while LEDs are flashing.

5. "Connect new device"

The remote control is shown on the list of connected devices.

Symbol	Meaning
	Remote control.
	Battery charge state.

Renaming remote control

The name with which the remote control is displayed can be changed.

1. "My Vehicle"
 2. "iDrive settings"
 3. "Headphones/Remote control"
- A list of connected devices is displayed.
4. Select the remote control.
 5. "Rename"
 6. Enter desired name.

Deleting the connection for a remote control

The connection with the vehicle may be deleted.

1. "My Vehicle"
 2. "iDrive settings"
 3. "Headphones/Remote control"
- A list of connected devices is displayed.
4. Select the remote control.
 5. "Remove device"

Selecting a page

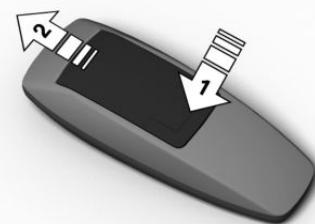
A remote control can be connected to the left or right side of the rear entertainment. The side can be changed at any time.

-  Push switch to the left or right.

Changing the batteries

NOTE

If batteries are used in the remote control, damage can occur due to the contained substances. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not use rechargeable batteries.◀



1. Remove the cover. To do so, press the cover, arrow 1, and push forwards, arrow 2.
2. Insert batteries of the same type.
3. Close the cover.

 Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist

workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

BMW Touch Command

General

Rear entertainment can either be operated via the remote control or via BMW Touch Command.

For further information, see BMW Touch Command in the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Operation via BMW Touch Command

BMW Touch Command can be connected to the left or right screen in the rear.

1. Switch on BMW Touch Command.
2. Swipe to the left or right in the BMW application main menu to display the entertainment menu.
3. "Media/Radio"
4. Touch L to operate the left screen in the rear.

Touch R to operate the right screen in the rear.

Expanding/collapsing the menu bar



- ▷ Touch the tab at the top centre of the screen.
The menu bar expands.
- ▷ Touch the tab at the bottom centre of the screen.
The menu bar collapses.

Operation and softkeys

On the Touch Command	Function
Drag up or down.	Highlight the menu item. Scroll.
Swipe to the left or right. < > Touch the symbol on the left or right side of the screen.	Switch between screens. Scroll backwards and forwards.
Touch the screen.	Confirm selection.
MENU Tap the symbol.	Calls up the main menu.
BACK Tap the symbol.	Calls up the previous screen.
OPTION Tap the symbol.	Calls up the Options menu.
▷ Tap the symbol.	Adjusts the volume. Set the sound output via headphones or vehicle loudspeakers.
L/R Tap the symbol.	L for the left screen in the rear. R for the right screen in the rear.

Symbols on the BMW Touch Command

Different symbols are displayed on the BMW Touch Command screen, depending on the selected menu.

The functions which correspond to the symbols shown are performed as described in chapter Entertainment.

Sound output via headphones and vehicle loudspeakers

General

In the rear, it is possible to output the sound from a selected entertainment source via headphones or the vehicle's speakers, depending on the rear seat enable setting, see page 68.

Selecting the sound output

-  1. Press the button.
2. Select desired sound output:
"Loudspeakers" or "Headphones"

Headphones

Headphones connected by a cable

A jack connector 3.5 mm, approx. 1/8 in can be used to connect headphones and compatible headsets to the CD/DVD/Blu-ray player in the rear, see page 64.

Wireless headphones

General

Suitable wireless headphones are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Connecting headphones

Up to 3 sets of wireless headphones can be connected.

1. Switch on headphones.
 2. "My Vehicle"
 3. "iDrive settings"
 4. "Headphones/Remote control"
- A list of connected devices is displayed.

5. "Connect new device"
6. Press and hold the switch-on button on the headphones until the following text is displayed:
"Connecting..."

The headphones are shown on the list of connected devices.

Symbol	Meaning
	Headphones.
	Connection to the left screen.
	Headphones.
	Connection to the right screen.
	Battery charge state.

Renaming headphones

The name shown for the headphones can be changed.

1. "My Vehicle"
 2. "iDrive settings"
 3. "Headphones/Remote control"
- A list of connected devices is displayed.
4. Select headphones.
 5. "Rename"
 6. Enter desired name.

Deleting the headphone connection

1. "My Vehicle"
 2. "iDrive settings"
 3. "Headphones/Remote control"
- A list of connected devices is displayed.
4. Select headphones.
 5. "Remove device"

Selecting a page

A set of headphones can be connected to the left or right side of the rear entertainment. The side is selected on the headphones, see the user manual for the headphones.

Rear-seat control feature

General

It is only possible to make rear seat enable settings via iDrive in the front.

Settings

Restricted operation in the rear

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Rear-seat entertainment"
4. "Limited (only Media/Radio)"

▷ Same entertainment sources in the front and rear:

If the same entertainment source is selected in the front and rear, adjustments can only be made to this entertainment source from the front. For example, if the radio is being listened to in the front and rear, it is only possible to change the station in the front.

▷ Different entertainment sources in the front and rear:

If one entertainment source is selected in the front and a different one in the rear, the sound can only be output through headphones. The entertainment source selected at the front is output via the vehicle loudspeakers.

It is only possible to access the following function in the rear when this setting is selected: "Media/Radio".

Permitted rear operation

1. "My Vehicle"
 2. "iDrive settings"
 3. "Rear-seat entertainment"
 4. "Enable rear-seat control"
- ▷ Same entertainment sources in the front and rear:

If the same entertainment source is selected in the front and rear, adjustments can be made to this entertainment source from the front and rear. For example, if the radio is being listened to in the front and rear, it is possible to change the station in the front and rear.

▷ Different entertainment sources in the front and rear:

If the entertainment source selected in the rear is different from the one selected in the front, the sound can be output through the speakers or headphones.

Switching off rear entertainment

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Rear-seat entertainment"
4. "Disable rear-seat control"

Rear entertainment is switched off and cannot be switched on again from the rear.

To switch rear entertainment on again, select one of the two rear enable settings, see page 68.

Volume limit for headphones

For the headphones in the rear, a volume limit can be switched on in the front.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Rear-seat entertainment"
4. "Volume limitation"

Selecting entertainment source for rear

An entertainment source can be selected for the screens in the rear using iDrive at the front.

The selection can be changed using the controls in the rear.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "Rear"
3. Select desired screen or both screens.
4. Select desired entertainment source.

It is only possible to select entertainment sources that can be controlled from the rear.

Settings

Brightness

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Control display"
4. Set screen brightness.

Language

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. Select language for all screens.

Headphones/remote control

Connect wireless headphones, see page 67.

Connect remote control, see page 65.

Sound

If the vehicle loudspeakers are selected for sound output, the settings are made as in the front.

If the headphones are selected for sound output, only the treble, bass and surround settings can be adjusted. The setting is made separately for the headphones on the left and right.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Sound"

Operation

Most functions are operated via iDrive in the front. The following functions are operated in a different way:

- ▷ Music hard disc
- ▷ Blu-ray video
- ▷ Navigation
- ▷ Options

Music hard disc

- ▷ Saving music only using the front CD/DVD player or the front USB interface.
- ▷ Export and import of data only using the front USB interface.

Blu-ray video

Country codes

Only Blu-ray discs with the regional code selected when the vehicle was ordered can be played. See also information on the Blu-ray disc.

Code	Region
A	North America, South America, Japan, Korea, Taiwan, Hong Kong, Southeast Asia.
B	Europe, Africa, Oceania, Greenland.
C	India, Nepal, China, Russia, central and southern Asia.

To start playback

Playback does not start automatically on inserting a CD, DVD or Blu-ray disc.

To start playback:

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "CD/DVD/Blu-ray"

Video menu

The following menu items can also be selected in the Blu-ray disc video menu:

Symbol	Function
	To call up the Blu-ray menu.
	The film is paused.
	Press the button to exit the Blu-ray menu.
	Call up the Blu-ray pop-up menu.
	The film continues playing in the background.
	Press the button to exit the Blu-ray menu.
	More functions. Scenes can be highlighted. This function depends on the possibilities of the Blu-ray disc.

Blu-ray memory

The Blu-ray player contains an internal memory, for highlighting scenes, for example.

When the Blu-ray memory is full, a message appears on the Control Display.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. Press the button.
3. "Clear Blu-ray memory"

Picture-in-picture function

Some Blu-ray discs offer the possibility of integrating an image into an ongoing video film, which shows different contents of the Blu-ray disc.

If this option is used on one screen, the second screen cannot play back a different video source than the Blu-ray disc.

To enable playback of Blu-ray discs and other video sources at the same time, proceed as follows:

1. "Media/Radio"
2. Press the button.
3. "Permit simultaneous playback of Blu-ray and other video sources"

Cinavia Notice

This product uses technology from Cinavia for restricting the use of unauthorised copies of commercial film and video products and their soundtracks. As soon as unauthorised use of a pirated copy is detected, a message is displayed and the playback or copying process is interrupted. If the playback or copying process is interrupted and one of the following messages is displayed, this means it is an unauthorised copy of content that is protected by Cinavia technology.

Message code 1: playback stopped. The media content to be played is protected by Cinavia and is not authorised for playback on this device. For further information visit <http://www.cinavia.com>. Message code 1.

Message code 3: audio playback has been temporarily muted. Do not adjust the playback volume. The media content to be played is protected by Cinavia and is not authorised for playback on this device. For further information visit <http://www.cinavia.com>. Message code 3.

For more information about Cinavia technology, refer to the Cinavia online consumer information centre at <http://www.cinavia.com>. To request additional information about Cinavia by post, send a postcard with your postal address to: Cinavia Consumer Information Center, P.O. Box 86851, San Diego, CA, 92138, USA.

Intellectual property law

Copyright 2004-2012 Verance Corporation.
Cinavia is a trademark of the Verance Corpora-

tion. Protected by US patent 7.369.677 and worldwide patents that have been licensed and registered by the Verance Corporation. All rights reserved.

Navigation

Route planning can be performed separately on both screens in the rear. Route guidance can only be started in the front.

Suggesting a destination

A destination or trip can be forwarded to the front as a suggestion. The suggestion can be accepted or rejected at the front. This function is not available with the following setting: "Limited (only Media/Radio)".

1. Enter a destination.
2. "Suggest destination to driver"

Options

Split screen is not possible.

External devices

General

External devices can also be connected to the vehicle as additional entertainment sources.

- ▷ Connection of external audio and video devices or digital cameras using the AUX-IN port or HDMI connection in the rear. Operation is via the external device.
- ▷ External devices are connected using the USB audio interface in the rear. Operation is same as in front.

Due to the large number of audio and video devices available on the market, there is no guarantee that every audio and video device will play perfectly via the screen.

To start playback

1. "Media/Radio"
2. Select the device.

- ▷ "HDMI"
- ▷ "AUX"
- ▷ "USB"
- ▷ Name of the USB device.

Adjusting the volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume differs significantly from other audio sources, it makes sense to adjust the volumes.

1. "Media/Radio"
2. "AUX"
3. Tilt the Controller to the left.
4. ⚡ "Volume:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired volume is set.
6. Press the Controller.

Frequently Asked Questions

Why can nothing be selected on the screen?

- ▷ Toggle the remote control to this screen.

Why are radio or TV channels greyed out and cannot be selected?

- ▷ Function is restricted based on the selected enable setting. Change the setting.

Why is the CD/DVD/Blu-ray not played back?

- ▷ The disc does not begin to play automatically. Start CD/DVD/Blu-ray manually.

Why can the vehicle loudspeaker volume not be adjusted in the rear?

- ▷ Sound output in the rear is via headphones. If necessary, change the priority and output the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers.



Communication

This chapter summarises all the available mobile communication options for keeping in touch with family, friends, business partners and service providers.

Telephone

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Telephone functions

General

Mobile telephones can be connected to the vehicle using Bluetooth, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle, the remote control may have to be in the interior.

At high temperatures, the charging function of the mobile telephone can be restricted and no longer operate.

To avoid malfunctions, a mobile telephone which is connected to the vehicle should not be operated with the phone's keypad.

When using the mobile telephone through the vehicle, follow the user manual of the mobile telephone.

Safety note



WARNING

Operating integrated informations systems and communication devices during the journey may distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Only operate the systems or devices if permissible in the traffic situation.

Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.◀

Incoming call

If the number of the caller is saved in the telephone book and is transferred from the network, the name of the contact is displayed. Otherwise, only the phone number is displayed.

Accepting a call

Incoming calls can be accepted in different ways.

- ▷ Via iDrive:
 - 📞 "Accept"
- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:
Select using knurled wheel on steering wheel: "Accept"

Rejecting a call

- ▷ Via iDrive:
 - 📞 "Reject"
- ▷ Via the selection list in the instrument cluster:
Select using knurled wheel on steering wheel: "Reject"
- ▷ Via gestures: move your hand in the direction of the front passenger seat.

Ending a call

- ▷ Via iDrive:
 - 📞 "End call"
- ▷ Press the button on the steering wheel.

Last calls

The last outgoing, missed and incoming calls are transferred to the vehicle. Depending on the equipment version, the transfer is from the main and additional telephone.

Displays

1. "Communication"
2. "Recent calls"
3. The last 20 calls are displayed.

Filter call list

1. "Calls:"
2. Select the desired setting.

Dial number from list

Select from list. Call is established using the mobile telephone from which the entry came.

Using options: start the call using the second mobile telephone.

To cancel: "End call"

Saving as a contact or adding to a contact

1. Highlight phone number.
2.  Press the button.
3. "Save as new contact" or "Add to contact"

Active calls

Adjusting the volume

During a call, turn the volume knob on the radio until the required volume has been reached. The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Automatic volume compensation

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Sound"
4. "Volume settings"

5. "Microphone" or "Loudspeakers"
6. Adjusting: turn the Controller.
7. Saving: press the Controller.

Dialling a number

1. "Communication"
2. "Dial number"
3. Enter numbers.
4.  Select the symbol.

The call is made using the mobile telephone assigned to the telephone function.

To establish the connection via the additional telephone:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Call via"

Hold, resume

An active call can be held and resumed later.

- ▷  "Hold/Resume"
Call is held.
- ▷  "Hold/Resume"
Call is continued.

Microphone muting

The microphone can be muted during active calls.

"Microphone"

A muted microphone is activated automatically:

- ▷ When a new call is set up.
- ▷ When toggling between call parties.

DTMF overlap dialling

DTMF overlap dialling is used to access network services or to control devices, for example to access an answer phone remotely. This requires the DTMF code.

1.  "Digit input"
2. Enter DTMF code.

Calls with a number of participants

General

It is possible to switch between calls or merge two calls to set up a conference. The functions must be supported by the mobile telephone and service provider.

Accepting a call during another call

If there is a second call during an ongoing call you hear a call waiting signal, if applicable.

"Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is held.

Setting up a second call

Another call can be set up during a call.

1. "Contacts"
2. Select new call number.

The call is started and the first call is held.

Switching between two calls, toggling

You can switch between two calls.

1. Setting up two calls.

2. "Resume"

The phone switches to the call that is in progress.

Setting up a conference

Two calls can be merged to set up a telephone conference. The calls must be set up using the same mobile telephone.

1. Setting up two calls.

2. "Place conference call"

Hands-free system

General

Calls taken via the hands-free system can be continued via the mobile telephone and vice versa.

From mobile telephone to the hands-free system

Calls that were started outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued via the hands-free system with standby state or the ignition switched on. The remote control must be in the vehicle for this to work.

Depending on the mobile telephone, there is an automatic switch to the hands-free mode.

If the changeover does not take place automatically, follow the instructions on the mobile telephone display. See also the user manual of the mobile telephone.

From the hands-free system to the mobile telephone

Calls taken via the hands-free system can also be continued via the mobile telephone, depending on the mobile telephone.

Follow what is shown on the mobile telephone display. See also the user manual of the mobile telephone.

Contacts

General

Contacts can be created and edited. In addition, the contacts are transferred from the mobile telephone and displayed. Contact pictures can be displayed if the mobile telephone supports this function.

Displaying all contacts

1. "Communication"
2. "Contacts"

The contacts are listed in alphabetical order. The contact search function and the quick search are offered, depending on the number of contacts.

Contact search

If there are more than 30 contacts, the contact search function is available.

1.  "Search"
2. Enter letters.
The hits are displayed on the right side.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. Select contact to display it.

Quick search in lists

With more than 30 contacts, a quick search is available. Letters for which an entry is available are displayed in alphabetical order along the left edge of the Control Display.

1. Turn the Controller quickly to the left or right.
At the left edge, all letters are displayed for which a contact has been saved.
2. Select the initial letter of the required contact.
The first entry of the selected letter is displayed.

Saving home contact

A home contact can be saved. This is the first item on your contact list.

1. "Home contact (empty)"
2. Fill in required fields.
3. "Save contact in the vehicle"

Saving a contact in the vehicle

1.  Press the button.
2. "Save contact in the vehicle"

A copy of the contact from the mobile telephone is saved in the vehicle.

Additional functions

Depending on the equipment, the following functions are available in a selected contact:

- >  Start route guidance.
- >  Call up contact.
- >  New e-mail.

Deleting a contact

A contact saved in the vehicle can be deleted. It is not possible to delete contacts transferred from the mobile telephone.

1. Highlight the required contact.
2.  Press the button.
3. "Delete contact"

Deleting all contacts in the vehicle

All contacts saved in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts transferred from the mobile telephone are not deleted.

1.  Press the button.
2. "Delete all contacts in the vehicle"
3. "OK"

New contact

If applicable, "Clear fields"

1.  Press the button.
2. "New contact"
3. Fill in required fields.
4. "Save contact in the vehicle"

Selecting sources

It is possible to select whether the contacts should be transferred from the mobile telephone, and if so, from which mobile telephone.

1.  Press the button.
2. "Select sources for contacts"
3. Select required mobile telephone.

Sorting contacts

The contact names can be displayed in a different sequence. The sort order for contacts might not be the same as the selected sort order, depending on how contacts are saved on your mobile telephone.

-  1. Press the button.
2. "Sort contacts"
3. "Surname" or "First name"

Checking address as destination

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, a contact can be adopted as a destination.

1. Select the desired contact.
2. Select address.
3. "Check address" or "Search for address online"
4. Correct entries if necessary.
5. "Start route guidance"

The address can be accepted into route guidance.

Editing contacts

If a contact that was transferred from the mobile telephone is changed, a copy of the entry is created in the vehicle when saving.

In other words, identical contact entries are merged into a single contact.

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"
3. Change required entry or add entries.
4. "Save contact in the vehicle"

Displaying contact pictures

Photos saved for contacts are saved in the vehicle when the mobile telephone is connected to the vehicle.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Contact pictures"
6. Press the Controller.

Voice control

A connected smartphone can be operated by voice commands.

To do this, activate the voice control in the smartphone.

Button on the steering wheel	Function
	Press the button for at least 3 seconds. Voice control in the smartphone is activated.
	

 Symbol on the Control Display shows that voice control is active.

Additional functions

General

Depending on the mobile telephone, the following content from the mobile telephone is transferred to the vehicle:

- ▷ Contacts, see page 76.
- ▷ SMS messages, see page 79.
- ▷ E-mails, see page 80.
- ▷ Calendar entries, appointments, see page 81.

- ▷ Tasks, see page 82.
- ▷ Memos, see page 82.

The data transfer can take a few minutes.

It might be necessary to have certain functions enabled by the mobile telephone or service provider.

SMS messages

Displaying all SMS messages

1. "Communication"
2. "Messaging"

For information on BMW messages, see page 111.

Status

A symbol indicates the status of the SMS message.

Symbol	Meaning
	Read SMS message.
	Unread SMS message.

Filtering a message list

1. Press the button.
2. "Filter messages"
3. Select the desired setting.

Selecting sources

It is possible to select whether the SMS messages are to be transferred from the mobile telephone, and if so, from which mobile telephone.

1. Press the button.
2. "Select sources for messages"
3. Select required mobile telephone.

Deleting a conversation

Completely delete a conversation with a contact.

1. Highlight required SMS message.
2. Press the button.
3. "Delete text message thread"
4. "Yes"

Displaying SMS message

Select the desired SMS or conversation. The conversation with this contact is displayed.

Answering or forwarding an SMS message

1. Select required SMS message.
2. ▷ "Reply"

The recipient of the SMS message is entered automatically.
- ▷ "Forward"

"To:"

Enter number or contact. Tilt the Controller to the right, if necessary, to select the contact from the list.

3. "From:"
- Select the mobile telephone if necessary from which the SMS message is to be sent.
4. "Text:"
- Text recognition, see page 83.
5. "Send"

New SMS message

1. "Communication"
 2. "Messaging"
 3. "Compose text message"
 4. "To:"
- Enter number or contact. Tilt the Controller to the right, if necessary, to select the contact from the list.

5. "From:"

Select the mobile telephone if necessary from which the SMS message is to be sent.

6. "Text:"

Text recognition, see page [83](#).

7. "Send"

To cancel: "Delete all contents"

Additional functions

The following functions are available for a selected SMS message or a conversation.

- ▷ "Call sender"
- ▷ "Add to contacts" or "Show sender"
- ▷ "Forward", see page [79](#).
- ▷ "Reply", see page [79](#).
- ▷ "Delete"
- ▷ Read out contents, see page [84](#).
- ▷ "Use data", see page [84](#).

E-mail

Displaying all e-mails

1. "Communication"
2. "Email"

Selecting account

It is possible to select whether the e-mails should be transferred from the mobile telephone, and if so, from which mobile telephone and if necessary from which user accounts.

1. Press the button.
2. "Select account"
3. Select required accounts.

Status

A symbol identifies the status of the e-mail.

Symbol	Meaning
	Read e-mail.
	Unread e-mail.

Filtering e-mails

1. Press the button.
2. "Filter emails"
3. Select the desired setting.

Deleting an e-mail

1. Select required e-mail.
2. Press the button.
3. "Delete email"
4. "OK"

Display all recipients

If an e-mail has several recipients, they can be displayed and their data used for further functions.

1. Select desired E-mail.
2. Press the button.
3. "Show all recipients"

New e-mail

1. "Communication"
2. "Email"
3. "Compose email"
4. "To:"
Enter e-mail address or contact. Tilt the Controller to the right, if necessary, to select the contact from the list of contacts.
5. "From:"
If necessary, select an account from which the e-mail is to be sent.
6. "Subject:"
Text recognition, see page [83](#).

7. "Text:"

Text recognition, see page 83.

8. "Send"

To cancel: "Delete all contents"

Answering or forwarding an e-mail

1. Select desired E-mail.

2. "Reply"

The recipient of the e-mail is entered automatically.

▷ "Reply to all"

All recipients of the e-mail are entered automatically.

▷ "Forward"

Enter e-mail address or contact. Tilt the Controller to the right, if necessary, to select the contact from the list.

3. "To:"

Enter e-mail address or contact. Tilt the Controller to the right, if necessary, to select the contact from the list of results.

4. "From:"

If necessary, select a mobile telephone or user account from which the e-mail is to be sent.

5. If applicable, "Subject:"

Text recognition, see page 83.

6. "Text:"

Text recognition, see page 83.

7. "Send"

- ▷  "Delete email"

Calendar

Display calendar

1. "Communication"

2. "Calendar"

The dates of the current week are displayed.

To display other days in the calendar:

▷ "Show previous week"

▷ "Show next week"

Showing calendar month

Select calendar day.

The month overview is displayed. Calendar days with appointments are marked.

Changing to current day



1. Press the button.

2. "Change to today"

Selecting sources

It is possible to select whether the appointments should be transferred from the mobile telephone, and if so, from which mobile telephone.



1. Press the button.

2. "Select source"

3. Select required mobile telephone.

Activating reminders



1. Press the button.

2. "Activate reminders"

Reminders are displayed in the messages and in the status field, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Additional functions

The following functions are available with a selected e-mail.

▷ "Read out", see page 84.

▷ "Reply", see page 81.

▷ "Add to contacts" or "Show sender"

▷ "Mark as unread"

Deactivating reminders

1. Select required calendar entry.
2.  "Deactivate reminders"

Updating the calendar

Update data, see page 84.

Additional functions

Depending on the equipment, the following functions are available in a selected appointment:

- ▷  Read out contents, see page 84.
- ▷ Starting route guidance.
- ▷ "Use details", see page 84.

Tasks

Display tasks

1. "Communication"
2. "Tasks"

All tasks are displayed.

Sorting tasks

1. "Sorted by"
2. Select the desired setting.

Activating reminders

1.  Press the button.
 2. "Activate reminders"
- Reminders are displayed in the messages and in the status field, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Updating tasks

Update data, see page 84.

Selecting sources

It is possible to select whether the tasks are to be transferred from the mobile telephone, and if so, from which mobile telephone.

1.  Press the button.
2. "Select source"
3. Select required mobile telephone.

Additional functions

The following functions are available in a selected task.

- ▷  Read out contents, see page 84.
- ▷ "Use data", see page 84.

Memos

Displaying all memos

1. "Communication"
2. "Memos"

All voice memos and text memos are displayed.

Exporting all voice memos

To export voice memos via the USB port, it is necessary for a compatible device to be connected to the USB interface.

The export overwrites voice memos that are already on the USB device.

- ▷ Compatible devices: USB mass storage media, for example USB memory sticks or MP3 players with USB interface.
- ▷ Incompatible devices: USB hard disks, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with a number of bays, Apple iPod/iPhone.
- ▷ File systems: current file systems for USB data storage media are supported. FAT 32 format is recommended.

1.  Press the button.
2. "Export all memos (USB)"

Deleting all voice memos

1.  Press the button.
2. "Delete all voice memos"
3. "OK"

New voice memo

1.  "New voice memo"
2.  "Start recording"/"Resume recording"
3.  "Pause recording"
4. "Save"

The voice memo is displayed in the list of voice memos.

To cancel: "Cancel"

Display memo

Select the desired memo.

Additional functions

The following functions are possible with a selected voice memo.

- ▷  "Email with voice memo", see page 80.
- ▷  "Export (USB)", see page 82.
- ▷  "Delete"
- ▷  "Play", see page 84.

Updating notes

Update data, see page 84.

Text recognition/dictation function

Principle

Spoken words are detected by voice recognition and converted to text. The text can be corrected and added to as needed. The text can be used as a subject or content of e-mails or SMS messages. To use it, data is sent across an encrypted connection to a service provider and stored locally there.

Operating requirements

The mobile telephone must support the function.

The following function is activated: "Server speech recognition"

Recording texts

1.  Select the desired language.
2.  Select the symbol to start the recording.
3.  Select the symbol to stop the recording.
4. "OK" "Confirm text"
5. ▷  "Delete last dictation"
 - ▷  "Delete all"
 - ▷  "Read out full text"
 - ▷  "Read out last dictation"

Improving voice recognition for contact names

Principle

The contact names on a connected mobile telephone are transferred to the voice recognition system. This improves recognition of contact names when they are converted into text. To use it, data is sent across an encrypted connection to a service provider and stored locally there.

Activating/deactivating function

This function can be enabled or disabled for each mobile telephone.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the required device.
5. "Upload of contact names for dictation function"

Reading out

SMS, e-mails, tasks, text memos and calendar entries can be read out.

- ▷ ▷ "Play"
- ▷ || "Pause"
- ▷ ▷ "Next section"/"Next element"
- ▷ |< "Previous section"/"Previous element"
- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the left to finish.

Playback

Voice memos can be played back.

- ▷ ▷ "Play"
- ▷ || "Pause"
- ▷ ▷ "Fast forward"
- ▷ << "Fast reverse"

Updating data

Memos, tasks and the appointments in the calendar can be updated.

1. "Communication"
2. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Calendar"
 - ▷ "Tasks"
 - ▷ "Memos"
3.  Press the button.
4. "Update data"

Using data

Telephone numbers, e-mail addresses in the calendar, SMS messages, etc. can be edited further.

While the vehicle is in motion:

1. Select the required element, for example an SMS message.
2. "Use data"
3. All data that can be used is displayed.
4. Select the required element, for example a telephone number.

5. Tilt the Controller to the right.

All available options are displayed.

- ▷ "Compose email"
- ▷ "Compose text message"
- ▷ "Add to contact"
- ▷ "Save as contact"
- ▷ "Call number"

6. Select the desired setting.

The elements can be selected individually at a standstill. The available options are displayed.

Adapting menu

The menu can be adapted, for example to remove the entries for unused functions from the menu.

1. "Communication"
2. "Personalise menu"
3. Select the desired setting.
4. Tilt the Controller to the left.

Snap-in adapter

Principle

The snap-in adapter enables:

- ▷ Storage of the mobile telephone.
- ▷ Charging of the battery.
- ▷ Connection to the external aerial of the vehicle.

This ensures better network reception and uniform reproduction quality.

General

Further information on snap-in adapters which are compatible with and support the functions of the mobile phone is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

At high temperatures, the charging functions of the mobile telephone can be restricted and no longer operate.

Installed position

The snap-in adapter is in the front centre armrest. The direction of installation in the centre armrest varies from vehicle to vehicle.

Inserting the snap-in adapter

1. Press the button and take out the cover.



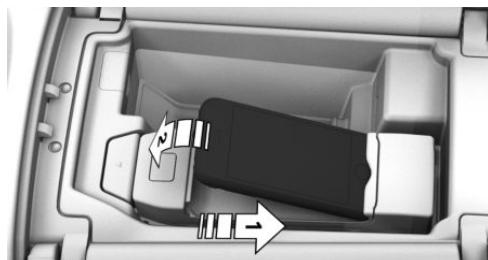
2. Insert snap-in adapter at the front, arrow 1, and press to the bottom, arrow 2, until the adapter engages.



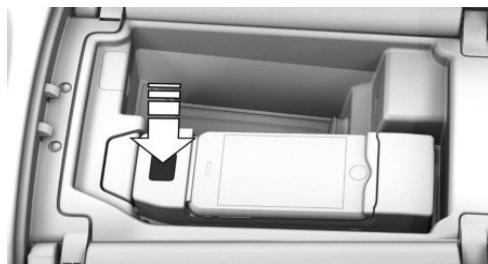
Inserting mobile telephone

1. Depending on the mobile telephone, remove the protective cap from the aerial connector and from the USB port of the mobile telephone if necessary.
2. Push the mobile telephone with buttons upwards in the direction of the electrical

connections, arrow 1, and push down, arrow 2, until it engages.



Removing mobile telephone



Depending on the mobile telephone, press or slide the button and remove mobile telephone. Depending on the mobile telephone, reinsert the protective cap of the aerial connector and from the USB port of the mobile telephone if necessary.

Removing snap-in adapter

Push button in front of snap-in adapter. Remove adapter and reinsert cover if necessary.

Wireless charging dock

Principle

The wireless charging dock permits the following functions to be performed wirelessly:

- ▷ Charging the battery of a mobile telephone with Qi capability and of other mobile devices which support the Qi standard.

- ▶ Charging the BMW display key, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.
- ▶ Connection of the mobile telephone to the external aerial.

This ensures better network reception and a consistent reproduction quality, depending on the country.

General

In the case of vehicle equipment that includes a wireless charging dock in the centre armrest of the rear console, it is also possible to charge the mobile phone in the rear.

When inserting the mobile telephone, make sure there are no objects between it and the wireless charging dock.

During charging, the surface of the cradle and the mobile telephone can heat up. At higher temperatures, a reduction in the charging current can occur; in exceptional cases, the charging process is temporarily interrupted.

 If the vehicle is equipped with a charge indicator, the Control Display shows whether a mobile telephone with Qi capability is being charged.

Safety notes

NOTE

The cradle is provided for mobile telephones up to a certain size. Forceful insertion into the cradle can damage the cradle or the mobile telephone. There is a danger of damage to property. Observe the maximum dimensions for the mobile telephone. Do not force the mobile telephone into the cradle.◀

WARNING

When charging a device that meets the Qi standard in the wireless charging cradle, any metal objects located between the device and the cradle can become very hot. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are

no objects between the device and the cradle.◀

Operating requirements

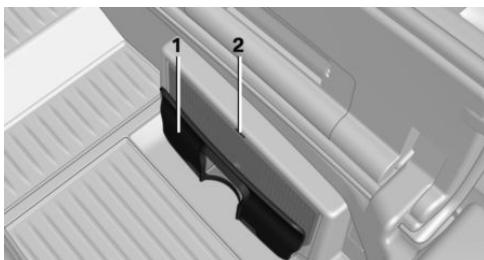
- ▶ The mobile telephone must support and be compatible with the required Qi standard. For compatible mobile telephones, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.
- If the mobile telephone does not support the Qi standard, the mobile telephone can be charged using a special Qi-compatible charging pad.
- ▶ The mobile telephone is not allowed to exceed a maximum size of approximately 151 x 74 x 16 mm, 5.9 x 2.9 x 0.6 in.
- ▶ Only use protective sleeves and covers up to a maximum thickness of 2 mm, 0.07 in. Otherwise, the charging function may be impaired.
- ▶ Ignition or standby state is switched on.
- ▶ Charging tray: the mobile telephone to be charged is located in the middle of the cradle.

Vertical cradle

General

The wireless charging dock is in the centre armrest at the front.

Overview

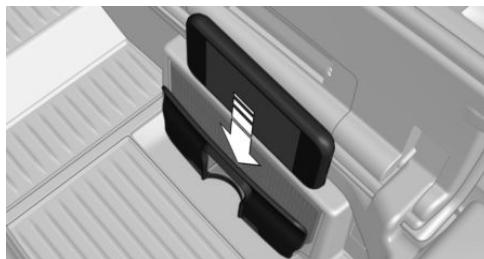


1 Holder

2 LED

Inserting mobile telephone

1. Open centre armrest, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.
2. Push the mobile telephone into the cradle with the display on the side of the holding clip.



3. Close the centre armrest.

Removing mobile telephone

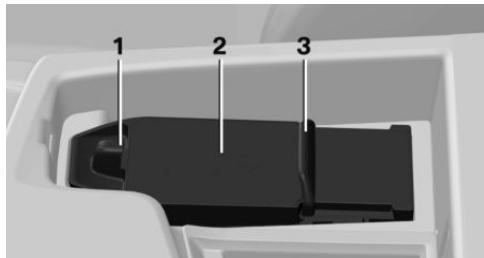
1. Open centre armrest.
2. Remove the mobile telephone.

Horizontal storage compartment

General

The wireless charging dock is in the centre armrest at the front.

Overview



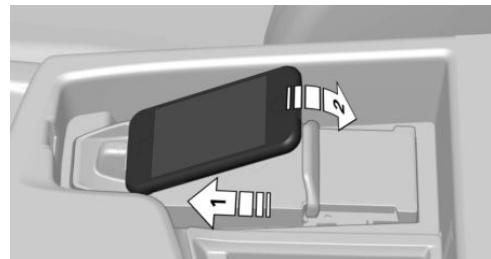
1 Front holder with LED

2 Storage area

3 Adjustable holding clip

Inserting mobile telephone

1. Open centre armrest, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.
2. Slide the holding clip backwards.
3. Insert the mobile telephone with the display upwards in the direction of the front holder, arrow 1.



4. Secure the mobile telephone in the storage compartment with the holding clip, arrow 2.
5. Close the centre armrest.

Removing mobile telephone

1. Open centre armrest.
2. Open the holding clip and take out the mobile telephone.

Charging tray

General

The wireless charging dock is in the centre console at the front.

Overview



1 LED

2 Storage area

Inserting mobile telephone

1. Push the cover of the storage compartment forward.
2. Place the mobile telephone in the centre of the tray with the display facing upwards.
3. Tap handle strip to close the cover of the storage compartment.
4. Push the cover of the storage compartment backwards.

Removing mobile telephone

1. Push the cover of the storage compartment forward.
2. Remove the mobile telephone.

Forgotten warning

General

If the vehicle is equipped with the forgotten warning function, a warning can be output if a mobile telephone with Qi capability has been left in the wireless charging dock when exiting the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is shown in the instrument cluster.

Make sure that the vehicle idle state is not activated automatically when the front doors are opened.

To do this, deactivate the following function, if necessary: "Switch off after door opening".

Activating

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Wireless charging tray"
4. "Forgotten mobile device alert"

LED displays

Col-our	Meaning
Blue	<p>The mobile telephone is charging.</p> <p>The blue LED extinguishes once the inserted mobile telephone with Qi capability is fully charged.</p>
Orange	<p>The mobile telephone is not charging.</p> <p>The mobile phone is possibly exposed to excessively high temperatures or there may be foreign bodies in the charging cradle.</p>
Red	<p>The mobile telephone is not charging.</p> <p>Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.</p>

System limits

If the mobile phone or the vehicle interior is exposed to excessively high temperatures, the charging functions of the mobile telephone might be restricted and functions might no longer work.

Rear phone

Principle

The rear phone consists of a handset and a snap-in adapter.

Via a SIM card, it is used just like a mobile telephone, with the advantage that the handset can be used.

If the snap-in adapter is connected to the vehicle, telephone calls can be made from the front seats using the hands-free system.

Calls can be transferred from the handset to the hands-free system and vice versa.

Through the integrated WiFi hotspot, various devices, such as a notebook, for example, can connect to the Internet wirelessly via the WLAN.

General

Service providers

Some functions depend on the service provider and contract.

If you have any other questions, contact the service provider directly.

TWIN SIM cards

If the snap-in adapter and another mobile telephone you are carrying with you use what are known as "TWIN cards" with the same telephone number, switch off the device which is not being used. Otherwise, the telephone in the rear may not work properly.

Overview

Handset and snap-in adapter

Handset and snap-in adapter are in the centre armrest in the rear.

The arrangement of the handset and snap-in adapter can vary depending on fitted equipment.

Removing handset



Pull the handset upwards.

Inserting handset

1. Snap the handset into place at the top, arrow 1.



2. Press the handset downwards, arrow 2.

Options for use

Preparations

To be able to use the rear phone, the following must be carried out depending on the type of use:

- Insert the SIM card into the snap-in adapter, see page 90.
- Connect the mobile telephone via the SIM Access Profile (SAP) to the snap-in adapter, see page 91.
- In addition, the snap-in adapter can be connected to the vehicle, see page 91.

Operation via the handset

Principle

Calls can only be made directly via the handset.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Snap-in adapter installed in the vehicle.
- ▷ SIM card inserted in the snap-in adapter.

Or:

Mobile telephone connected via the SIM Access Profile (SAP) to the snap-in adapter.

Operation via the hands-free system

Principle

Calls can be made from the front via the hands-free system or directly via the handset.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Snap-in adapter installed in the vehicle.
- ▷ SIM card inserted in the snap-in adapter.

Or:

Mobile telephone connected via the SIM Access Profile (SAP) to the snap-in adapter.

- ▷ Snap-in adapter connected to the vehicle.

Operation via Bluetooth headset

Principle

Calls can be made via a Bluetooth headset.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Snap-in adapter installed in the vehicle.
- ▷ SIM card inserted in the snap-in adapter.

Or:

Mobile telephone connected via the SIM Access Profile (SAP) to the snap-in adapter.

- ▷ Bluetooth headset connected to snap-in adapter.

Operation using SIM card

Principle

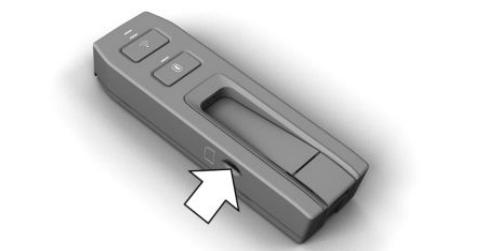
The snap-in adapter directly accesses the SIM card of the mobile telephone.

Inserting SIM card

1. Press the button, arrow 1.



2. Pull the snap-in adapter upwards and forwards, arrow 2.
3. Insert SIM card as described on the side of the snap-in adapter.



4. Insert the snap-in adapter at the lower end.
5. Push downwards until it clicks.

Removing the SIM card

To remove SIM card from snap-in adapter, press SIM card.

Connect snap-in adapter to the vehicle

Connect the snap-in adapter to the vehicle. The phone book is shown on the Control Display and the front hands-free system can be used.

Connecting snap-in adapter, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Operation using SIM Access Profile (SAP)

Principle

Using the SIM access profile (SAP), the snap-in adapter accesses the SIM card of the mobile telephone using Bluetooth. Through the handset connected with the snap-in adapter, the phone can be operated in the rear.

The calls and the connection to the external aerial run via the snap-in adapter. Radiation which is caused by the transmission process is dissipated from the vehicle interior.

If a connected mobile telephone supports the download of saved phone book entries, the internal phone book is displayed on the handset and the Control Display.

Operating requirements

- ▷ SAP capable mobile telephone. Further information on compatible models is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or via www.bmw.com/fond-telefonie.
- ▷ Mobile telephone is switched on with activated Bluetooth interface.
- ▷ No SIM card is inserted into the snap-in adapter.
- ▷ Snap-in adapter is installed.
- ▷ The handset is switched on.

Connecting the mobile telephone via SAP

1.  Press and hold the button on the snap-in adapter for approximately 5 seconds until the acoustic signal sounds twice in quick succession.

The LED above the button flashes, alternating green and yellow.

2. The 16-digit SAP PIN is displayed on the handset.
3. "Connect" with BMW GSM SIA.
4. Enter the displayed PIN in the mobile telephone.

Breaking the connection

- ▷ Disable the SAP connection on the mobile telephone. If the Bluetooth interface is not disabled, the connection is automatically re-saved after approximately 10 seconds.
- ▷ Switch off the handset.
- ▷ Take the mobile telephone to a distance approximately 10 metres away from the vehicle.

Connecting the handset

Principle

To be able to use the handset, it must be connected to the snap-in adapter.

General

The handset is already connected at the factory. The connection is set up automatically each time the handset is switched on. This means it is only necessary to reconnect the handset if there is a new handset.

Ensure that the battery on the rear of the handset is correctly inserted.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The Bluetooth passkey, see page 103, on the back of the snap-in adapter is known.

- ▷ The snap-in adapter is inserted in the centre armrest.
- ▷ Ignition or standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The SIM card is inserted into the snap-in adapter.

Connecting the handset

1.  Press and hold the button on the snap-in adapter for approximately 7 seconds until the acoustic signal sounds three times in quick succession.
The LED above the button flashes yellow.
2. Switch on the handset.
3. "Search BT devices"
4. "Ok"
5. BMW CON SIA II
6. "Conn."
7. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
8. "Ok"

The connection to the snap-in adapter is established.

Connecting Bluetooth headset

Principle

To be able to use a Bluetooth headset, it is necessary for the Bluetooth headset to be connected to the snap-in adapter. A Bluetooth headset that has already been registered is automatically connected to snap-in adapter.

General

If another Bluetooth headset is registered, the data of the previous Bluetooth headset is deleted. Only one Bluetooth headset at a time can be registered and connected.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Depending on Bluetooth headset, registration with the snap-in adapter is performed automatically.

The Bluetooth headset supports a fixed passkey, which has a default setting of 0000; this can be altered if required on web server <http://192.168.1.1> on the Connectivity-SIA2.0 page under BT Headset.

- ▷ Bluetooth headset is switched on, Bluetooth headset must be set visible if necessary.
- ▷ The snap-in adapter is inserted in the centre armrest.
- ▷ Ignition or standby state is switched on and the remote control is in the vehicle.
- ▷ SIM card is inserted in snap-in adapter or mobile telephone is connected to snap-in adapter via SIM Access Profile.

Connecting Bluetooth headset

1.  Press and hold the button on the snap-in adapter for approximately 9 seconds until the acoustic signal sounds four times in quick succession.
The LED above the button flashes blue.
 2. Switch on Bluetooth headset and set visible if necessary.
 3. Depending on the Bluetooth headset, press and hold the talk button on the Bluetooth headset to connect with the snap-in adapter. See operating instructions for Bluetooth headset.
- Bluetooth headset is connected once LED on snap-in adapter is no longer illuminated.

Accepting a call

Incoming calls are displayed on hands-free system or snap-in adapter.

The calls can also be accepted using a Bluetooth headset that is already connected.

Press the talk button on the Bluetooth headset.

Initiating a call

Using Bluetooth headset, it is possible to call last number dialled using hands-free system or handset.

Press the talk button on the Bluetooth headset twice.

Transferring a call

General

Calls can only be conducted on one terminal unit at a time:

- ▷ Using hands-free system.
- ▷ Using the rear handset.
- ▷ Using the Bluetooth headset.

An incoming call can be heard using terminal unit that took the call, such as the rear handset.

A call can be transferred between terminal units during a call.

Audio using hands-free system

- ▷ Press the talk button on the Bluetooth headset twice to accept the call using the Bluetooth headset.
- ▷ Select "Handsfree off" on the rear handset or lift the rear handset out of the cradle to take the call with the rear handset.

Audio using the rear handset

- ▷ Press the talk button on the Bluetooth headset twice to accept the call using the Bluetooth headset.
- ▷ Select "Handsfree on" on the rear handset to accept the call using the hands-free system.

Audio using Bluetooth headset

- ▷ Press the talk button on the Bluetooth headset twice within 1 second to take the call using the hands-free system.

- ▷ Remove the rear handset from the cradle to take the call with the rear handset.
- ▷ Select "Handsfree on" on the rear handset to accept the call using the hands-free system.

Operation

Basic principles

Connect button

-  Press the button. Select the displayed or highlighted phone number, accept the call.

On/off/exit button

-  Press and hold the button: switch on and off.

Press button: ends a call.

If the handset is switched off and on again while the vehicle is in motion, the Bluetooth connection in the Control Display must be re-established.

Functional requirement for readiness displays

- ▷ SIM card is inserted into the snap-in adapter or a mobile telephone is connected via SIM Access Profile.
- ▷ The handset is switched on.
- ▷ The PIN for the SIM card has been entered or the PIN query, see page 102, has been suppressed.
- ▷ Entering the PIN is also possible on the Control Display if the snap-in adapter is connected to the vehicle.
- ▷ Mobile telephony reception must be guaranteed.



The standby indicator and name of the network operator are displayed.

Display keys



The current functions of these buttons are shown in the bottom line of the display.

Press the button: selects the function.

Arrow keys



Press the up/down arrow buttons: browses in menus.

Press the left/right arrow buttons: sets the call volume during a call.

The volume last set is saved and retained for the next call.

Text input

- ▷ Press a numerical key repeatedly until the desired character is displayed. If the next letter is entered with the same key as the current letter, wait briefly until the cursor is displayed again.
- ▷ Insert space: 0 key.
- ▷ To switch between upper or lower case: # key.
- ▷ To insert symbols: 1 key.
- ▷ To switch to number mode: press and hold # key.

Menus

Press "Menu". This contains the following sub-menus:

- ▷ "Last calls"
- ▷ "Phone book"
- ▷ "Text messag."
- ▷ "Settings"

Press the arrow keys up/down, to toggle between the menus. Press "Ok" to select the menu.

Symbols

White square: function deactivated.

Black square: function activated.

Initiating a call

Via numerical keys

1. Enter the complete phone number with area code/national dialling code.



2. Press the button.

Delete last number during input: "Delete"

Via repeat dialling

The last ten phone numbers dialled are automatically saved.



1. Press the button.

The last dialled numbers are displayed.

2. Highlight number.

-  3. Press the button.

Via phone book

1. "Ph.book"
2. Insert the first letter of the desired entry or browse using the arrow keys.
3. Highlight the entry.

-  4. Press the button.

Via SMS

In the "Text messag." menu:

1. "Inbox" or "Outbox"
2. "Ok"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. "Ok"
5. Call up "Options".
6. "Call"
7. "Ok"

The number is shown on the Control Display.

-  8. Press the button.

Via the call list

In the "Last calls" menu:

1. "Missed calls" or "Received calls"
2. "Ok"
3. Highlight the entry.

-  4. Press the button.

Incoming call

Accepting a call

If the number of the caller is saved in the phone book and is transferred from the net-

work, the name of the phone book entry is displayed.

-  ▶ Press the  button or "Answer".
▶ With call acceptance, see page 101, activated, take the handset from its cradle.

Rejecting a call

-  Press the button or "Reject".

Forwarding a call

Principle

Incoming calls are diverted to another phone number.

A password might be required to set this up.
All functions are in the "Settings" menu under "Call forward".

Diverting calls

1. "Voice calls"
2. "Ok"
3. "Forward all calls", "If busy", "If not avail." or "If no answer"
4. "Ok"
5. "Activate"
6. "Ok"
7. Enter the phone number for the diversion.
8. "Ok"

Diverting fax and data inputs

1. "Fax calls" or "Data calls"
2. "Ok"
3. "Activate"
4. "Ok"
5. Enter the phone number for the diversion.
6. "Ok"

Checking the status

1. Select desired call forwarding.

2. "Status"
3. "Ok"

The status is displayed.

Disabling all diversions

1. "Deactivate all"
2. "Ok"

Phone book

Selecting the storage location

If the mobile telephone supports downloading of internal phone book entries and this function is active, the internal memory of the phone book is selected as the storage location. The function "Memory place" is then not available.

Select the SIM card or snap-in adapter as the storage location.

In the "Phone book" menu:

1. "Memory place"
2. "Ok"
3. "SIM" or "GSM-SIA" or "Both"
4. "Ok"

Setting the display

In the "Phone book" menu:

1. "Private Ph.book"
2. "Ok"

Function is enabled or disabled.

Available memory

In the "Phone book" menu:

1. "Memory place"
2. "Ok"
3. "Status"
4. "Ok"

New entry

Save phone numbers in the international format.

Press and hold the asterisk button until + is shown on the Control Display.

In the "Phone book" menu:

1. "New entry"
2. "Ok"
3. Enter name.
4. "Ok"
5. Enter the complete phone number.
6. "Store"
7. "Ok"

Transferring entries

Contact data can be transferred, for example from an Outlook file, to the rear telephone via a WLAN connection. To do this, connect a WiFi-capable mobile telephone or notebook to the rear telephone, see page 104.

Calling up:

1. Start Internet browser on the device.
 2. Enter following address in address line of Internet browser:
`http://192.168.1.1`
- The CON-SIA2 page is displayed.
3. Select UPLOAD tab.
- When doing so, make sure that the settings and notation for the source file are precisely as shown in the example. Each line in the Excel file is saved in the phone book as a separate entry.
4. Press the Browse button and select the required file.
 5. Press the UPLOAD PB button.

Entry from call lists

Save phone numbers from call lists in the phone book.

In the "Last calls" menu:

1. "Numbers dialled", "Missed calls" or "Received calls"
2. "Ok"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. "Options"
5. "Store number"
6. "Ok"
7. Enter name and number and confirm each with "Ok".
8. "Store"
9. "Ok"

Entry from SMS

In the "Text messag." menu:

1. "Inbox" or "Outbox"
2. "Ok"
3. Highlight SMS and select with "Ok".
4. "Options"
5. "Extract number"
6. "Ok"

Editing an entry

In the "Phone book" menu:

1. "Find entry"
2. "Ok"
3. Highlight entry and select with "Ok".
4. "Edit"
5. "Ok"
6. Edit name and number and confirm with "Ok".
7. "Store"
8. "Ok"

Deleting an entry

In the "Phone book" menu:

1. "Find entry"
2. "Ok"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. "Ok"
5. "Delete"
6. "Ok"
7. "Yes"

Showing details

In the "Phone book" menu:

1. "Find entry"
2. "Ok"
3. Highlight the entry.
4. "Ok"
5. "Details"
6. "Ok"

SMS

General

Received SMS messages are saved automatically. If necessary, delete saved SMS messages so that you can receive new SMS messages.

Observe the memory status, see page 99, on the SIM card.

All functions are in the "Text messag." menu.

Setting the SMS Service Centre

The phone number of the Service Centre is saved.

1. "Settings"
2. "Ok"
3. "Servicecentre"
4. "Ok"
5. Check the phone number.
6. "Ok"

Displaying SMS

1. "Inbox"

2. "Ok"

All SMS are displayed.

To read an SMS, highlight the message and "Ok".

Writing an SMS

Creating and sending an SMS

1. "New text msg"

2. "Ok"

3. Enter the text, see page 94, and insert a template/symbol if necessary, see page 98.

4. "Options"

5. "Send"

6. "Ok"

7. Enter the phone number or use "Search" to open the phone book and highlight an entry.

8. "Ok"

9. "Send"

Forwarding an SMS

Displaying desired SMS, see page 98.

1. "Options"

2. "Forward"

3. "Ok"

4. "Options"

5. "Send"

6. "Ok"

7. Enter the phone number or use "Search" to open the phone book and highlight an entry.

8. "Ok"

9. "Send"

Replies to an SMS

1. Displaying SMS, see page 98.

2. "Options"

3. "Reply"

4. "Ok"

5. Enter the text, see page 94.

6. "Options"

7. "Send"

Inserting template/symbol

1. Create an SMS, see page 98.

2. "Options"

3. Highlight template/symbol.

4. "Ok"

5. "Options"

6. "Send" or "Store"

Saving created SMS messages

Created SMS messages can be saved for future use on the SIM card.

1. "New text msg"

2. "Ok"

3. Enter the text, see page 94.

4. "Options"

5. "Store"

6. "Ok"

Automatically save SMS

Save sent SMS messages automatically.

1. "Settings"

2. "Ok"

3. "Store text msg"

4. "Ok"

Function is enabled or disabled.

Deleting an SMS

1. "Inbox" or "Outbox"

2. "Ok"

3. Highlight SMS and select with "Ok".
4. "Options"
5. "Delete"
6. "Ok"
7. "Yes"

Deleting oldest read text message

If the text message memory is full, the LED above the key illuminates orange.

The oldest read SMS can be deleted.

 Press and hold the button on the snap-in adapter for approximately 3 seconds until the LED above the button flashes orange.

Options

Querying memory status

 Symbol indicates that memory capacity is no longer available for SMS messages.

Delete saved SMS, see page [98](#).

1. "Settings"
2. "Ok"
3. "Memory capacity"
4. "Ok"

The number of occupied and free memory slots is displayed.

Activating automatic status report

Show free memory when sending an SMS.

1. "Settings"
2. "Ok"
3. "Status report"
4. "Ok"

Function is enabled or disabled.

Setting transmission time

Validity period for attempts to send an SMS.

1. "Settings"
2. "Ok"
3. "Validity"
4. "Ok"
5. Highlight time period.
6. "Ok"

Function is enabled or disabled.

Setting the language

Set the language for the SMS.

1. "New text msg"
2. "Ok"
3. "Options"
4. "Input language"
5. "Ok"
6. Highlight language.
7. "Ok"

Desired language is enabled.

Calls with a number of participants

Call waiting

If there is a second call during an ongoing call, you hear a call waiting signal.

"Answer" or "Reject".

Setting up a second call

1. "Options"
2. "Hold"
3. "Back"
4. Select entry from phone book or the number of another subscriber.

Switching between two calls, toggling

1. "Options"
2. "Switch"

Telephone conference

Merge two calls to set up a conference.

1. "Options"
2. "Conference"

Terminating a call**Terminating current call**

"End call"

Terminating all calls

1. "Options"
2. "End call"

Terminating second call when conference calling

1. "Options"
2. "Switch"
3. "End call"

Terminating conference call

1. "Options"
2. "Conf. participants"
3. Select the call.
4. "End active call"

Settings**General**

Unless otherwise indicated, the functions are in the "Settings" menu.

Telephone**Activating/deactivating call number transmission**

Display call number on receiver.

1. "Call options"
2. "Ok"
3. "Transmit caller ID"

4. "Ok"

5. "Activate", "Deactivate" or "Network-depend."

Setting call waiting

Acoustic signal for a call during another call.

1. "Call options"
2. "Ok"
3. "Call waiting"
4. "Ok"
5. "Activate" or "Deactivate"
6. "Ok"

Selecting menu language and entry language

1. "Telephone"
2. "Ok"
3. "Language"
4. "Ok"
5. "Menu language" or "Input language"
6. "Ok"
7. Highlight language.
8. "Ok"

Resetting the language

1. Press the button.
2. "Menu"
3. Press the arrow button downwards three times.
4. Press the right-hand arrow once.
5. Press the arrow button downwards once.
6. Press the right-hand arrow once.
7. Press the arrow button downwards three times.
8. Press the right-hand arrow twice.
9. Highlight language and select with "Ok".

Deleting the call list

In the "Last calls" menu:

1. "Delete"
2. "Ok"
3. "All calls" or select entry.
4. "Ok"
5. "Yes"

Providing protection against inadvertent operation of the keys.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Ok"
3. "Autom. keylock"
4. "Ok"

Cancelling the key lock

Follow the instructions on the handset display.

Restoring factory settings

If you reset the handset to the factory settings, the following settings are made. This does not affect the SIM card and network settings.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Ok"
3. "Default settings"
4. "Ok"
5. "Yes"

Setting call volume

1. "Telephone"
2. "Ok"
3. "Ring tone vol. SIA"
4. "Ok"
5. Alter the setting.
6. "Ok"

Setting brightness and lighting duration

Create the setting for the Control Display.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Ok"
3. "Brightness" or "Backlight durat."
4. Adjust the settings.
5. "Ok"

Automatic key lock

Locks the keypad automatically if no key has been pressed for a certain time.

Function	Factory setting
Phone book.	The phone book is deleted.
Display of the phone book.	Both.
Save text messages automatically.	Switched off.
Transfer duration of text messages.	Maximum.
Status report for text messages.	Switched off.
Key lock.	Switched off.
Brightness.	3
Lighting duration.	3
Language.	English.
Bluetooth name.	GSM SIA BMW.

Function	Factory setting
Call acceptance for handset.	Switched on.
Private phone book.	Switched off.
Ring sound volume.	4

Network selection

Principle

On older SIM cards, it might be necessary to enable roaming.

Roaming enables you to connect to other phone networks abroad.

Automatic or manual network selection

With automatic network selection, the handset connects to an available network.

With manual network selection, an available network can be selected. If the handset is connected to another network, a triangle is shown on the Control Display.

1. "Network selection"
2. "Ok"
3. "Automatic" or "Manual"
4. "Ok"

Manual network selection

1. "Netw. select."
2. "Ok"
3. "Select network"
4. Select network.
5. "Ok"

Authorisation and security

Enabling/disabling the PIN query

Do not deactivate the PIN query, otherwise the SIM card is not protected against abuse.

1. "Security"
2. "Ok"
3. "PIN query"
4. "Ok"
5. "Activate" or "Deactivate"
6. "Ok"
7. Enter any PIN and confirm with "Ok".

Changing the PIN

If the PIN query is activated:

1. "Security"
2. "Ok"
3. "Change PIN"
4. "Ok"
5. Enter the current PIN and confirm with "Ok".
6. Enter the new PIN twice and confirm each one with "Ok".

Resetting SIM card block

If the incorrect PIN is entered three times, the SIM card is blocked.

"Please enter PUK:" appears on the Control Display.

A PIN Unlocking Key PUK or Super-PIN is required; these can only be entered on the handset.

After entering the PUK, assign a new PIN, see page [102](#).

Barring calls

General

These functions are protected with a password against unauthorised use.

Calling up the menu

1. "Security"
2. "Ok"
3. "Call barring"
4. "Ok"

Barring outgoing calls

Outgoing calls can be suppressed:

- ▷ All except for emergency call.
 - ▷ All international calls.
 - ▷ All international calls except home country.
1. "Outgoing calls"
 2. "Ok"
 3. "All calls", "International calls" or "Int. exc. homectry"
 4. "Ok"
 5. "Activate", "Deactivate" or "Status"
 6. Enter your password.
 7. "Ok"

Incoming calls

Incoming calls can be suppressed:

- ▷ All calls.
 - ▷ All international calls.
1. "Incoming calls"
 2. "Ok"
 3. "All calls", "Int'l calls"
 4. "Ok"
 5. "Activate", "Deactivate" or "Status"
 6. Enter your password.
 7. "Ok"

Deactivating call barring

1. "Deactivate all"
2. Enter the password and confirm with "Ok".

Resetting settings

All snap-in adapter settings are reset to factory settings, see page 101. The WLAN has to be

reconfigured and the Bluetooth connections have to be re-established.



Press buttons simultaneously.

Bluetooth passkey

General



The Bluetooth passkey is located on the back of the snap-in adapter.

To read the passkey remove the snap-in adapter, see page 90.

The number in the PIN line is the Bluetooth passkey. A new PIN can be chosen.

Changing the Bluetooth passkey

In the "Settings" menu:

1. "Bluetooth"
2. "Ok"
3. "Change Passkey"
4. "Ok"
5. Enter new passkey.
6. "Ok"

Resetting Bluetooth passkey



Press and hold the button on the snap-in adapter for approximately 11 seconds. The LED above the button illuminates red. All Bluetooth passkey connections are deleted.

WLAN

Principle

A device such as a WLAN-capable notebook can be wirelessly connected to the snap-in adapter using WLAN.

Operating requirements

- ▷ SIM card has been inserted into snap-in adapter and snap-in adapter is ready for operation.
- ▷ Device is on and ready for operation.
- ▷ WLAN connection on device is switched on.
- ▷ Access data of the service provider is known: APN, user name, password.
The APN, in other words the access point of the service provider, is different when changing to another mobile telephone network, for example abroad. Please obtain information from the service provider which APN is used in a different mobile telephone network.
- ▷ WPA2 key and the name of the snap-in adapter, SSID, are available. This data is available on the back of the snap-in adapter.

Connecting the device to the snap-in adapter

1.  Check whether the bottom LED above the WLAN button flashes green.
If the LED does not illuminate green:
Press the button on the snap-in adapter for approximately 5 seconds until the bottom LED above the WLAN button illuminates green.
2. On the device, start the program for setting up wireless networks, see operating instructions of the device.
3. Select from the list of wireless networks "BMW Wireless" within range of the snap-in adapter and connect.
4. Enter WPA2 key.
Bottom LED above WLAN button on the snap-in adapter is illuminated green if a connection has been established.

Configuring connection to the Internet

To establish a connection to the Internet you must configure the snap-in adapter.

1. Start Internet browser on the device.
2. Enter the following URL in the Internet browser's URL line: <http://192.168.1.1>
The CON-SIA2 page is displayed.
3. Select "WAN".
4. If the fields are not yet filled in, make the entries. Data is provided by the service provider.
"APN": access point of the service provider.
"Username": user name.
"Password": password.
5. Confirm with "Submit".
6. Select "WLAN".
7. The name of the snap-in adapter is stated in the "SSID" field. You can individually adapt this name, if required.
8. Keep all other settings.

Resetting WLAN settings

WLAN settings of the snap-in adapter are reset to factory settings. The configuration has to be carried out again.

- 
- Press and hold WLAN button for approximately 9 seconds until the bottom LED over the button flashes red. Then release the button.

Switching the WLAN on and off on the snap-in adapter

- 
- To switch on: press and hold WLAN button until bottom LED is illuminated green.

To switch off: press and hold WLAN button until bottom LED flashes green and then extinguishes.

Frequently Asked Questions

Why can no connection to the Internet be established?

Check whether WLAN is switched on at the snap-in adapter and on the device.

Why can no connection to the Internet be established even though WLAN is switched on on the snap-in adapter and the device?

The UMTS network may be busy. In such a case, change to another network, see page 102, GSM.

Status display LEDs

Top LED above WLAN button	Meaning
Illuminate yellow.	Internet connection via GSM, 2G.
Illuminate green.	Internet connection via UMTS, 3G.
Bottom LED above WLAN button	Meaning
Does not illuminate.	WLAN deactivated.
Illuminate green.	WLAN is activated.
LED above Blue- tooth button	Meaning
Illuminate green.	Bluetooth connection to the vehicle, operating handset, headset or mo- bile telephone activated.
Illuminate orange.	Text message memory full.

Services and applications

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The Teleservices, intelligent emergency call or ConnectedDrive Services features are required to use the services and applications described here.

The content and scope of the services that are available can vary by country. Therefore, it is possible that some of the services and applications described in this Owner's Handbook may not be offered, or may not yet be available in the vehicle's country of registration.

Services and applications may be provided in the following ways:

- ▷ In the scope of the vehicle order; for example as special equipment.
- ▷ Via the BMW ConnectedDrive customer portal on the Internet.
- ▷ Via iDrive on the Control Display of the vehicle in the ConnectedDrive Store.

Details on the content and scope of ConnectedDrive can be obtained from www.bmw.com/connecteddrive or your Service Partner.

Safety note



WARNING

Operating integrated informations systems and communication devices during the journey may distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Only operate the systems or devices if permissible in the traffic situation. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.◀

BMW Teleservice

Principle

Teleservice is a service that helps to keep the vehicle mobile.

General

The offer depends on the vehicle equipment and the country variant.

When driving abroad, the services may only be available with restrictions. Connection charges can be incurred.

For more information regarding available services, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends contacting a Service Partner or customer support.

Teleservice can comprise the following services:

- ▷ Automatic Teleservice Call, see page 107.
- ▷ Manual Teleservice Call, see page 107.
- ▷ Teleservice Report, see page 107.
- ▷ Teleservice Battery Guard, see page 108.
- ▷ Your Service Partner, see page 108.
- ▷ Online logbook, see page 109
- ▷ Breakdown assistance, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

- ▷ BMW Accident Assistance, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Ignition or standby state is switched on.

Automatic Teleservice Call

Principle

Teleservice data relating to a vehicle's service requirements is automatically transmitted by BMW to the Service Partner when a service is due. If possible, the Service Partner will contact you to arrange a service appointment.

In so doing, the Service Partner can prepare precisely for service appointments. The workshop stay is shortened.

Last Teleservice Call

Checking when the Service Partner was notified, see page 107.

Manual Teleservice Call

Principle

A manually triggered Teleservice Call causes the data for the vehicle's service requirements to be transferred by BMW to the Service Partner. If possible, the Service Partner will contact you to arrange a service appointment.

General

A Teleservice Call can also be started through a Check Control message, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Starting a Teleservice Call

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Assistance"

3. "Teleservice Call"

Teleservice Report

Principle

The technical data from your vehicle is transferred as needed to BMW at regular intervals. This is used to evaluate the further development of BMW products.

General

The Teleservice Report is free of charge. It is activated for vehicles that meet certain requirements.

- ▷ Certain technical requirements are met.
- ▷ Active BMW ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ Equipment with intelligent emergency call or with ConnectedDrive services.

Neither personal information nor position data is transferred.

Displays

Displaying when the last Teleservice Report has been transferred, see page 107.

Last Teleservice Call

Principle

The last Teleservice Calls, such as the last message sent to the Service partner, can be shown on the Control Display.

Displaying the last Teleservice Call

To check when the last Teleservice Call has been transferred.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Teleservice Call"

Teleservice Battery Guard

Principle

If the battery charge state falls below certain levels, for example when the vehicle is stationary for an extended period, the Service Partner is informed in defined cases.

General

If required and possible, the Service Partner will contact you to arrange a service appointment.

Battery Guard Teleservice is available on a country-specific basis and under the following conditions:

- ▷ Certain technical requirements are met.
- ▷ Active BMW ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ Equipment with intelligent emergency call or with ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ To be informed by Teleservice Battery Guard, your contact data must be saved in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displays

Displaying when the last Teleservice Battery Guard Call has been transferred, see page 107.

Your Service Partner

Principle

Possible contact with the Service Partner.

General

In special cases, for example after a change of owner or address, it may be necessary to change the Service Partner. There are several possible ways of doing this:

- ▷ Via customer support.
- ▷ From a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- ▷ Where applicable, independently via iDrive on the vehicle's Control Display.

- ▷ Where applicable, via the ConnectedDrive customer portal on the Internet.

The Service Partner menu can also be selected using the last Teleservice Call, see page 107.

Displaying Service Partners

The Service Partner that is currently assigned to the vehicle is displayed as a contact in the vehicle.

1. "ConnectedDrive" or "Communication"
2. "BMW Assistance"
3. "Your Service Partner" or select Service Partner Management if necessary.

The assigned Service Partner is displayed along with all its contact information.

Depending on the equipment, the following functions are available in a Service Partner contact:

- ▷ "Start route guidance"
- ▷ Call up contact.
- ▷ "Compose email"

Changing Service Partners

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Assistance"
3. Select entry for Service Partner Management.

The assigned Service Partner is displayed along with all its contact information.

4. Select the entry to change the Service Partner.

A search for a different Service Partner can be launched under Change Service Partner.

To change the Service Partner, the current location of the vehicle is preselected. Adapt the search criteria of the location search if necessary.

The new Service Partner receives information on all the service requirements that your vehi-

cle has reported or you have reported manually.

Depending on the equipment, the following functions are available for a Service Partner contact:

- ▷ "Start route guidance"
- ▷ Call up contact.
- ▷ "Compose email"

Online logbook

Principle

The online logbook saves and documents completed trips.

General

The range varies from country to country.

All completed journeys can be saved in the vehicle.

The minimum data recorded are date, time, geoposition, the number of kilometres at the start and end of each trip, kilometres travelled and selected type of trip.

For business trips, the destination and purpose of the visit, plus the business partner being visited, are also recorded.

The completed logbook entries are automatically transferred to the ConnectedDrive customer portal, where they can subsequently be displayed and edited. As a template for the financial authorities, a report can be compiled by the user containing all the necessary information to ensure compliance with country-specific legal requirements.

The entries can be completed subsequently in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

The journeys recorded are encrypted and can only be shown and processed in the vehicle or in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Unlimited use of the function is only guaranteed with mobile telephone reception.

- ▷ The correct date and time are set on the Control Display, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.
- ▷ The current software version must be installed, see the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Updates and related, up-to-date information are posted on the website at www.bmw.com/update.

Activating logbook

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Logbook"
3. "Logbook"

Activate the function.

Starting a new trip

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Logbook"
3. "New journey"
4. Adjust the following trip data as necessary:
 - ▷ "Driver:"
 - ▷ "Journey type:"
 - ▷ "Visited business contacts:"
 - ▷ "Purpose of journey:"
 - ▷ "Journey destination:"
5. "Start journey"

Changing trip data

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Logbook"
3. "Manage current journey"
4. "Modify data"
5. Change desired trip data.
6. "Resume journey"

Showing a logbook

Display chronological listing of all trips saved in the vehicle.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Logbook"
3. "Show logbook"
4. Select a journey to open the detailed view of the journey.

Transmitting a logbook

All completed trips saved in the vehicle are automatically transferred to the ConnectedDrive Portal. They can continue to be displayed in the vehicle.

Manual transfer of the trips saved in the vehicle:

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Logbook"
3. "Transfer logbook"
The time of the last transfer is displayed.
4. "Transfer to customer portal"

Saving a logbook

To save trips manually, a compatible device must be connected to the USB interface in the centre armrest.

1. Connecting USB medium to USB interface, see the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.
2. "ConnectedDrive"
3. "Logbook"
4. "Transfer logbook"
5. "Transfer to USB"

The journey data is encoded when saved onto the medium; it can be transmitted to the ConnectedDrive Portal via PC.

Settings

- "Pop-up at start of journey"

The trip last undertaken is shown on the Control Display automatically.

The new journey can be continued with the current journey data, or the journey data can be edited.

If any editing is carried out, the journey automatically continues with the most recent journey data after a certain time.

- "Automatic break recognition"

The current trip is not terminated automatically if the trip is interrupted for a period defined by the user.

- "Break:"

The desired break time can be set between 1 and 90 minutes; the preset break time is 10 minutes.

Resetting a logbook

Deletes all trips and trip data saved in the vehicle. Journeys already transferred to the ConnectedDrive customer portal are retained there.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Logbook"
3. "Delete all data"

Deactivating a logbook

If the logbook is deactivated, all saved journeys are transferred to the BMW ConnectedDrive Portal. All data entered in the vehicle is retained.

The current trip is ended.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Logbook"
3. "Logbook"

Deactivate the function.

If you want to use the logbook again, this must be reactivated. Activating logbook, see page 109.

Updating BMW Services

Principle

All the services available in the vehicle are updated manually.

Updating services

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2.  Press the button.
3. "Update BMW Services"

Customer support

Principle

Contact customer support for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling customer support

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Assistance"
3. "Customer support"

The customer support is displayed and a voice connection is established. If a voice connection is not established, dial the number manually.

ConnectedDrive Services

Operating requirements

- ▷ Connected Drive Services are applied for at a Service Partner or have been purchased via the ConnectedDrive Store.
- ▷ Mobile telephony reception must be guaranteed.
- ▷ For certain services, for example information on current location, the vehicle must be able to determine your current location.
- ▷ The correct date is set on the Control Display, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

ConnectedDrive Store

Principle

Various services can be ordered retrospectively for vehicles that meet certain technical requirements.

General

The range varies from country to country.

Ordering services

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. To buy a service, select it and follow the instructions in the Control Display.

BMW messages

General

Messages from the Concierge Service and from My Info are displayed.

Information about SMS messages from the mobile telephone, see page 79.

Displaying BMW messages

1. "ConnectedDrive"
 - or
 - "Communication"
 2. "BMW messages"
- The latest BMW messages are displayed.

Status

A symbol indicates the status of the message.

Symbol	Meaning
	Read BMW message.
	Unread BMW message.

Filtering the message list according to status

-  1. Press the button.
2. "Filter BMW messages"
3. Select the desired setting.

Filtering message list by message type

1. "Filter"
2. Select the desired setting.

Deleting a message

-  1. Press the button.
2. Delete selected message: "Delete message"
Deleting all messages: "Delete all messages"

Additional functions

Depending on the equipment, the following functions are available in a selected SMS message, from the Concierge Service or from My Info.

-  Select town/city to start route guidance.
- Select telephone number to dial it.

My Info

General

Messages from My Info can come from the ConnectedDrive customer portal or be sent by selected partners.

Vehicle apps

Principle

BMW ConnectedDrive Services offer you apps and other functions that enable you to display information, for example the weather and news, on the Control Display.

Displaying BMW ConnectedDrive service apps

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. Select required app.

Messages

- My Info messages, see page 111.

Driver profiles

- Exporting/importing driver profile, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Navigation

Depending on the equipment version:

- Importing trips, see page 15.
- Information on Points of Interest, see page 11.

Log on

To display personal data, for example e-mails, a log on is required.

The function is country-dependent.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
-  2. Press the button.
3. "Login"
4. "User:"
Enter the ConnectedDrive user name.
5. "Password:"
Enter the ConnectedDrive password.
6. "OK"

Automatic log on

The log on takes place automatically when the vehicles apps are called up.

"Auto-login"

The "Auto-login" function can be deactivated in the ConnectedDrive customer portal. A change may be required in the customer portal under Password protection in the vehicle in the Control menu item.

Logging off

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Vehicle apps"
3.  Press the button.
4. "Log out"

Adapting menu

The menu can be adapted, for example to remove the entries for unused functions from the menu.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Personalise menu"
3. Select the desired setting.
4. Tilt the Controller to the left.

Other functions are available depending on the vehicle.

General

The vehicle is controlled via the BMW Connected app, which can be obtained for iOS from the Apple App Store and for Android in the Google Play Store.

For Remote Services to be used, they must be activated in the ConnectedDrive customer portal or in the BMW Connected app as a one-time procedure. An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

Alternatively, remote control of certain functions can also be requested using the BMW ConnectedDrive call centre.

You can find the Owner's Handbook for the BMW Connected App in the ConnectedDrive customer portal or at www.bmw.com.

Concierge Service

Principle

The Concierge Service provides information about hotels, restaurants etc. and can send an SMS with the required information to the vehicle. Addresses can also be sent directly to the navigation system. A voice connection to the Concierge Service is established for this purpose.

Starting the Concierge Service

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Concierge Services"

A voice connection to the Concierge Service is established.

Remote Services

Principle

Remote Services enable some vehicle functions to be controlled remotely via a smartphone app. The app can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle, for example.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Principle

CarPlay makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone by Siri voice operation and using iDrive.

General

Depending on the country variant, CarPlay may not be available. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop for more detailed information.

CarPlay and the associated functions are provided by the iPhone. The scope and content depend on the device manufacturer and may vary depending on the country variant.

The following restrictions apply to an iPhone connected via CarPlay:

- ▷ Telephoning is only possible via CarPlay.
- ▷ The iPhone cannot be registered as an additional telephone.

- ▷ The entries in the phonebook are not transferred to the vehicle.
- ▷ Only one further telephone can be connected to the vehicle.
- ▷ Using CarPlay may incur mobile phone costs. These costs do not form part of vehicle's optional equipment.

Operating requirements

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle, see the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Selecting CarPlay

CarPlay can be selected using the following menus:

- ▷ "Apple CarPlay"
The CarPlay menu is displayed.
- ▷ "Media/Radio"
"Now playing in Apple CarPlay"
The iPhone music app opens.
- ▷ "Navigation"
"Maps in Apple CarPlay"
The iPhone navigation app opens.
- ▷ "Communication"
"Phone in Apple CarPlay"
The iPhone telephone app opens.

Operating CarPlay

CarPlay can be operated using iDrive and by voice commands.

By voice:

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel until Siri voice control is activated on the iPhone.
2.  Press the button on the steering wheel until Siri voice control is activated on the iPhone.
3. Say the commands recognised by the iPhone.

Switching CarPlay off/on

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the iPhone with CarPlay function.
5. ▷ "BMW iDrive"
Select the entry to switch CarPlay off.
The iPhone remains connected as a smartphone.
- ▷ "Apple CarPlay"
Select the entry to switch CarPlay on.

CarPlay navigation

The destination of the active CarPlay navigation can be transferred to the BMW navigation. Route guidance is taken over by the BMW navigation and the CarPlay navigation is closed. Transferring back to CarPlay is not possible.

BMW Connected App

Principle

The Connected App provides mobility-based services and applications.

General

You can find information about installing the Connected App and on its content, as well as information about the ConnectedDrive customer portal, at www.bmw.com/connected-drive.

The Connected app must be installed on the smartphone you wish to use. The installation process will vary depending on the smartphone.

To use all the features of the Connected app, you will need to register when you start it up; you only need to do this once. The registration process creates a personal ConnectedDrive account for you in the ConnectedDrive customer portal. If you already have a Connected-

Drive account, you can use its login details in the Connected app.

Some functions enable communication with the vehicle without the need for you to be inside or at the vehicle. These functions can be executed via the Connected app or the ConnectedDrive account.

The vehicle needs to be linked to the ConnectedDrive account in order to use the functions; you only need to do this once. You can link the vehicle via the account or via the app. Confirmation in the vehicle via iDrive is also required.

Apps

Principle

Certain apps of a compatible smartphone can be integrated into the vehicle. These apps are displayed on the Control Display.

General

Some apps can only be used when the vehicle is stationary for safety reasons.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using applications that have been classified by BMW as compatible with your vehicle; otherwise there is a risk of system malfunctions.

Information about using apps:

- ▷ The extent of software applications shown on the Control Display depends on the functions of the app installed on the smartphone.
- ▷ The data transfer of the apps from the smartphone to the vehicle may take a while. Some apps are dependent on the speed of the available Internet connection of the smartphone.
- ▷ Some smartphones cannot use apps and Bluetooth hands-free at the same time. Restart the app on the smartphone after a phone call as necessary.

- ▷ Using the apps on the smartphone can result in mobile telephone costs. These costs do not form part of apps.

Information about compatibility:

- ▷ Compatible smartphones: www.bmw.com/bluetooth.
- ▷ Available apps and installing them: www.bmw.com/connectivity.
- ▷ From a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Requirements

- ▷ Corresponding mobile radio contract.
- ▷ Compatible smartphone.
- ▷ Apps are installed on the smartphone and ready for use.
- ▷ The smartphone is connected to the vehicle via the snap-in adapter, a USB port or Bluetooth, see Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Operating the apps

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. Select the desired app on the smartphone.

Displaying the status

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Mobile devices"

Frequently Asked Questions

Why are the apps installed on my smartphone not displayed on the Control Display, even though the smartphone is connected to the vehicle?

- ▷ The smartphone is no longer selected for the use of apps.
Another smartphone connected to the vehicle has been selected for the use of apps.
- ▷ The smartphone is no longer selected for the use of Bluetooth audio.

The smartphone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. Another smartphone has been selected for the use of Bluetooth audio. Without Bluetooth audio, the use of apps via a Bluetooth connection is not possible.

Two different smartphones are used for audio playback and for using apps. In this case, one of the smartphones has to be connected to the vehicle via the USB interface.

- The smartphone is connected to the vehicle simultaneously via Bluetooth and the USB interface.

With simultaneous connection via the USB interface and Bluetooth, the Bluetooth connection takes precedence.



Reference

The section contains the alphabetical index that will lead you to the desired information in the quickest manner possible.

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

Alternative routes 19
AM/FM stations 41
Apple CarPlay preparation, operation 113
Applications, see Apps 115
Appointments, see Calendar 81
App, Remote Services 113
Apps 115
Arrow view, split screen 27
Audio 45
Audio CD 46
Audio playback, Bluetooth 51
Audio playback, pause 36
Automatic Teleservice Call 107
AUX-IN port in the rear 64
AUX-IN port, operation 45
Avoid areas 25

B

Balance, sound settings 38
Bang & Olufsen 39
Bass, sound settings 38
Battery Guard, Teleservice 108
Battery replacement, remote control for rear entertainment 62
Bluetooth audio 51
Bluetooth headset 90
Bluetooth headset, connecting 92
Blu-ray player in the rear 64
Blu-ray video 69
BMW ConnectedDrive 111
BMW ConnectedDrive Store 111

BMW messages 111
BMW Routes 15
BMW Teleservice 106
BMW Touch Command, with rear entertainment 66
Bowers & Wilkins, sound settings 39
Brokering, see Calls with a number of participants 76
Bypassing a section of the route 20

C

Calendar 81
Calling up the map, navigation 17
CarPlay, operation 113
CD 46
CD/DVD, safety notes 46
Changing entertainment source 36
Changing the batteries, remote control for rear entertainment 65
Charging cradle, see Wireless charging 85
Concierge Service 113
Concierge Service messages, see BMW messages 111
Conference, Calls with a number of participants 76
ConnectedDrive 111
ConnectedDrive Store 111
Connecting headset, Rear phone 92
Contacts 76
Country selection, navigation 9
Course of the route, see Navigation 19

Customer support 111

D

DAB digital radio 42
Destination input 9, 10
Destination input by voice control 10
Dictation function 83
Digital radio DAB/DMB 42
DMB digital radio 42
DVD, Video 55
Dynamic Route Guidance 31

E

Electronic logbook 109
E-mail 80
Entering an address, navigation 9
Entering destination using GPS coordinates 13
Entertainment, controls 36
Entertainment in the rear 63
Equaliser 38

F

Fader, sound settings 38
FM/AM stations 41

G

Gong, volume compensation 39
GPS coordinates, entering destination 13
GPS navigation, see Navigation system 8

H

Handset, see Rear phone 89
 Hands-free system 76
 Hands-free unit 76
 HDMI connection in the rear 64
 Headphones for rear entertainment 67
 Help for navigation, see Frequently Asked Questions 33
 Help for rear entertainment, see Frequently Asked Questions 71
 Help for WLAN to phone in the rear, see Frequently Asked Questions 105
 Home address, navigation 11
 Hotline, see Customer support 111

I

Inductive charging, see Wireless charging 85
 Interactive map, see Functions in the map view 23
 Intermediate destination, navigation 14
 iPod/iPhone 51

J

Journey, route guidance with stopovers 14
 Junction, entering for navigation 9

L

Last destinations 9
 List of route guidance information, split screen 27
 Logbook, online 109

M

Manoeuvre information, see Route guidance information 22
 Map update 32
 Map view, functions 23
 Memos 82
 Message list, traffic information 29
 Messages from BMW 111
 Mobile phone, operation 74
 Mobile telephone, operation 74
 MP3 player, see Audio 45
 Multichannel reproduction surround 38
 Music hard disc 47
 My information messages, see BMW messages 111

N

Navigation announcement, see Spoken instructions 21
 Navigation, split screen 27
 Navigation system 8

O

Online alternative routes 19
 Online Entertainment 52
 Online logbook 109
 On-street parking info 22

P

Parking information 22
 Pause, audio playback 36
 Phone book 96
 Points of Interest, navigation 11

Q

Quick search 10

R

Radio 41
 Radio, controls 36
 Radio Data System RDS 41
 Radio, muting 36
 Radio, see Changing entertainment source 36
 Radio, setting volume 36
 Radio, sound settings 38
 RDS Radio Data System 41
 Reading out 84
 Real-Time Traffic Information RTTI 29
 Rear entertainment 63
 Rear entertainment, connections 64
 Rear phone 89
 Rear telephone, adjusting the volume 94
 Rear telephone, selecting menus 94
 Recommended tours, see BMW Routes 15
 Refuelling recommendation 20
 Remote control for rear entertainment 62, 64
 Remote Services, App 113
 Renaming a station 42
 Route, changing 18
 Route criteria, route 18
 Route guidance 18
 Route guidance information, route 22
 Route guidance with stopovers, see Journey 14
 Route magnet, see Changing the route 20
 Routes, see BMW Routes 15
 RTTI Real-Time Traffic Information 29

S

Saved stations 44

Saving destination as contact **18**

Saving stations **41**

Screen Mirroring, video **57**

Searching for charging stations, see Charging stations and Points of Interest **11**

Selecting destination from contacts, navigation **13**

Service messages, see BMW messages **111**

Service Partner **108**

Services, Remote **113**

Settings, navigation **24**

Short messages SMS, see Short messages **79**

Smartphone, operation **74**

Snap-in adapter, mobile telephone **84**

Software applications, Car-Play **113**

Software applications, see Apps **115**

Sound **38**

Sound, Bang & Olufsen **39**

Sound, Bowers & Wilkins **39**

Sound, multichannel reproduction surround **38**

Sound output **36**

Speed Volume, volume compensation **39**

Split screen, navigation **27**

Spoken instructions, navigation **21**

Standard settings, navigation **24**

Stations AM/FM **41**

Stopover, navigation **14**

Store, see BMW Connected-Drive Store **111**

Street, entering for navigation **9**

Surround, multichannel reproduction **38**

T

Tablet, with rear entertainment **66**

Tasks **82**

Telephone conference, see Calls with a number of participants **76**

Telephone in the rear **89**

Telephone, operation **74**

Teleservice **106**

Teleservice Battery Guard **108**

Teleservice Call **107**

Teleservice Report **107**

Television, TV **58**

Text recognition **83**

Touch Command, with rear entertainment **66**

TP, traffic information **44**

Traffic information, navigation **29**

Traffic information, radio **44**

Treble, sound settings **38**

Trips, importing **15**

TV **58**

U

Update, navigation map **32**

USB audio interface **51**

USB port in the rear **64**

V

Vehicle apps **112**

Video DVD **55**

Video replay **55**

Video, Screen Mirroring **57**

Voice control **78**

Voice memos **82**

Voice recognition via server **83**

Volume compensation **39**

W

Wireless charging **85**

Wireless charging dock **85**

Y

Your Service Partner **108**

More about BMW

www.bmw.com



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



Contents

A-Z

Owner's Handbook
for Vehicle



The Ultimate
Driving Machine



THE BMW 5 SERIES SALOON.

OWNER'S HANDBOOK.

BMW EfficientDynamics
Less emissions. More driving pleasure.

5 Series

Owner's Handbook for the vehicle

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your vehicle, the easier you will find it is to operate. We would therefore like to offer you the following advice:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. Also use the integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important notes on how to operate the vehicle, enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical advantages of your BMW. It also contains useful information which will help you to maintain both the operating and road safety of your BMW as well as its full resale value.

If applicable, you will find updates after the editorial deadline in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Supplementary information is provided in the other documents of on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.



The Owner's Handbook is available as an app in many countries. You will find further information on the Internet at:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

© 2017 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without written
permission from BMW AG, Munich.
English X/17, 11 17 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

For quick access to a particular topic or item, please consult the detailed alphabetical index, see page 372.

The topics of navigation, entertainment and communication can be called up using the following Owner's Handbooks: Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle, Online Owner's Handbook, BMW Driver's Guide app.

6 Notes

Overview

- 14 Driving area
- 19 Idle state, standby state and drive-ready state
- 22 iDrive
- 31 BMW Gesture Control
- 34 Voice control system
- 37 General settings
- 50 Owner's Handbook media

Controls

- 56 Opening and closing
- 83 Adjusting
- 99 Carrying children safely
- 108 Driving
- 129 Displays
- 147 Lights
- 155 Safety
- 191 Driving Stability Control Systems
- 195 Driver Assistance Systems
- 239 Driving comfort
- 241 Air conditioning
- 256 Interior equipment
- 263 Storage compartments
- 267 Boot

Driving hints

- 274 Driving precautions
- 279 Towing a trailer
- 284 Saving fuel

Mobility

- 294 Refuelling
- 296 Fuel
- 301 Wheels and tyres
- 326 Engine compartment
- 328 Engine oil
- 332 Coolant
- 334 Maintenance
- 337 Replacing parts
- 344 Breakdown Assist
- 352 General care

Reference

- 358 Technical data
- 370 Appendix
- 372 Everything from A to Z

Notes

About this Owner's Handbook

Orientation

The quickest way to find information on a particular topic or feature is to consult the alphabetical index.

We recommend that you read through the first chapter to obtain an initial overview of the vehicle.

Updates after going to press

Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the following Owner's Handbooks:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide App.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

The topics of navigation, entertainment and communication can be called up using the following Owner's Handbooks:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide App.

Additional sources of information

Service Partner

A Service Partner of the manufacturer will be happy to answer any further questions.

Internet

Owner's Handbook and general information about BMW, for example on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmw.com.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

The integrated Owner's Handbook describes the specific equipment and functions present in the vehicle. The integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display. Further information, see page 50.

BMW Driver's Guide App

The BMW Drivers Guide app specifically describes the equipment and functions included in the vehicle. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets. Further information, see page 51.

Online Owner's Handbook

The Online Owner's Handbook specifically describes the equipment and functions present in the vehicle. The Online Owner's Handbook can be displayed in any of today's browsers. Further information, see page 52.

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Handbook

Symbol	Meaning
	Precautions that must be followed. To avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.
◀	End of a specific item of information.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts on a display in the vehicle for selecting functions.
...<	Commands for the voice control system.
>....	Replies by the voice control system.

Actions

The actions to be carried out are shown as a numbered list. The sequence of steps must be followed.

1. First action.
2. Second action.

Lists

Alternative options and lists of items with no implied sequence are shown as bullet point lists:

- ▷ First option.
- ▷ Second option.

Symbol for components and assemblies

Refers to the relevant section of this Owner's Handbook for further information in connection with a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook describes all models and all standard, national and special equipment available for the model series. As a result, this Owner's Handbook may also contain descriptions and illustrations of equipment and functions not featured in your vehicle, for example due to selected special equipment or country specification.

This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.

Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

If certain equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks provided. In right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently from those shown in the illustrations.

Production date

The production date of your vehicle can be found at the bottom of the door pillar on the driver door.

The production date is defined as the calendar month and the calendar year in which the vehicle body and the powertrain assemblies are joined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

Status of the Owner's Handbook

General

Continuous development ensures high levels of vehicle safety and quality. In rare instances, your vehicle may therefore differ from the information supplied here.

For Australia/New Zealand: general

When reading this Owner's Handbook, please bear the following in mind: to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards, we pursue a policy of continuous, ongoing development. Because modifications in the design of both vehicles and accessories may be introduced at any time, your own vehicle's equipment may vary from that described in this handbook. For the same reason, it is also impossible to guarantee that all descriptions will be completely accurate in all respects.

We must therefore request your understanding of the fact that the manufacturer of your vehicle is unable to recognise legal claims based on discrepancies between the data, illustrations and descriptions in this Owner's Handbook and your own vehicle's equipment. Please note, too, that some of the optional equipment described in this manual is not available on Australian models due to restrictions imposed by Australian Design Rules and other requirements.

Should you require any further information, please contact your Service Partner or a qualified specialist workshop, who will be pleased to advise you.

Updates after going to press

Updates following the copy deadline can result in differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the following Owner's Handbooks:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide App.

You will find notes on any updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Your own safety

Intended use

Comply with the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical data of the vehicle.
- ▷ The applicable laws and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle is used.
- ▷ Vehicle papers and legal documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically designed for the operating conditions and approval requirements prevalent in the country to which it was first delivered - homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in another country, it may have to be adapted to any prevailing different operating conditions and approval requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you cannot lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. A Service Partner is able to provide further information.

Maintenance and repairs

The advanced technology used in your vehicle, for example the state-of-the-art materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitably appropriate maintenance and repair methods.

Consequently, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having corresponding work carried out by a BMW Service Partner. If you choose to use another specialist workshop, BMW recommends using one that performs work such as maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In this Owner's Handbook, facilities of this kind are referred to as "another qualified service centre or specialist workshop".

If such work, for example maintenance and repair, is performed inexpertly, it could result in consequential damage and thus constitute a safety risk.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessory products that are specifically approved for this purpose by BMW.

You are recommended to consult a BMW Service Partner for advice on genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and expert advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW.

BMW accepts product responsibility for genuine BMW parts and accessories. BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each individual product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Nor can suitability be assured if an official permit has been issued for it in a specific country. Tests performed for such permits cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient.

Data memory

General

A number of electronic control devices are installed in your vehicle. Some of these are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for example Driver Assistance Systems. There are also control devices which manage comfort or infotainment functions.

Electronic control devices contain data memories, which are able to save information on the

vehicle condition, component wear and condition, maintenance requirements, technical events or errors temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or its environment, for example:

- ▷ Operating states of system components, for example, fill levels, tyre inflation pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components, for example wheel rotation speed, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, fastened seat belt indicator.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults of important system components, for example, lights and brakes.
- ▷ Information on vehicle-damaging events.
- ▷ Responses of the vehicle to particular driving situations, for example, triggering of an airbag, activation of the stability control systems.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, for example temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is required to perform the control device functions. It is also used for detecting and rectifying malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimise vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or error memories and, if necessary, in the vehicle key.

Reading out data

When service work is being carried out, for example repairs, service operations, warranty work and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number. A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can read out the information. The legally required on-board diagnostics

(OBD) socket in the vehicle is used to read out the data. The data is collected, processed and used by the relevant organisations in the service network. The data documents the technical conditions of the vehicle, helps in locating faults and improving quality, and is transferred to the vehicle manufacturer, if necessary.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring obligations to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfil these obligations, the vehicle manufacturer requires technical data from the vehicle. Error and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop performs repair or servicing work.

Data on service work carried out and proof of maintenance is saved in the vehicle under the service history and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. The vehicle owner can contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer to object to the data being saved and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. This objection applies for as long as the vehicle owner remains the proprietor of the vehicle.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General

Depending on the equipment, some data can be transferred into the vehicle when using comfort and infotainment functions, for example:

- ▷ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▷ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▷ Entered navigation destinations.
- ▷ Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be saved locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected

to the vehicle, for example a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is saved in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time. This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly desired. This depends on the personal settings selected for using online services.

Depending on the equipment, the following comfort and individual settings can be saved in the vehicle and modified at any time, for example:

- ▷ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▷ Suspension and climate control settings.
- ▷ Individual settings, for example interior lighting.

Control via mobile user devices

Depending on the equipment, mobile end user devices connected to the vehicle, for example smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle controls. The sound and picture from the mobile user device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile user device at the same time. Depending on the type of connection, this includes, for example position data and other general vehicle information. This optimises the way in which selected apps, for example navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile user device and the vehicle, for example active access to vehicle data. How the data is processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The range of settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile user device.

Services

General

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged be-

tween the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is established via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile user devices brought into the vehicle, for example smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the relevant functions are described in the appropriate place, for example the Owner's Handbook or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is also provided. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for example with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose. Any collection, processing and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on legal permission, a contractual arrangement or consent.

In addition, the vehicle manufacturer evaluates anonymised information on transport infrastructure and how the infotainment system is used. This information cannot be traced back to individual vehicles or people. Evaluating the data enables the manufacturer to further improve its products or services, for example by incorporating the most up-to-date traffic information. The data transfer feature can be deactivated in the vehicle. Certain services and functions, some of which are subject to a charge, can be deactivated by the driver. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. With the exception of functions and services required by law, for example emergency call systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged when using these services. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Vehicle identification number



The vehicle identification number is in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.



The vehicle identification number is on the type plate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive, see page 42.



Overview

This chapter presents the layout of the different buttons, switches and displays. It will also quickly acquaint you with the various operating concepts and options.

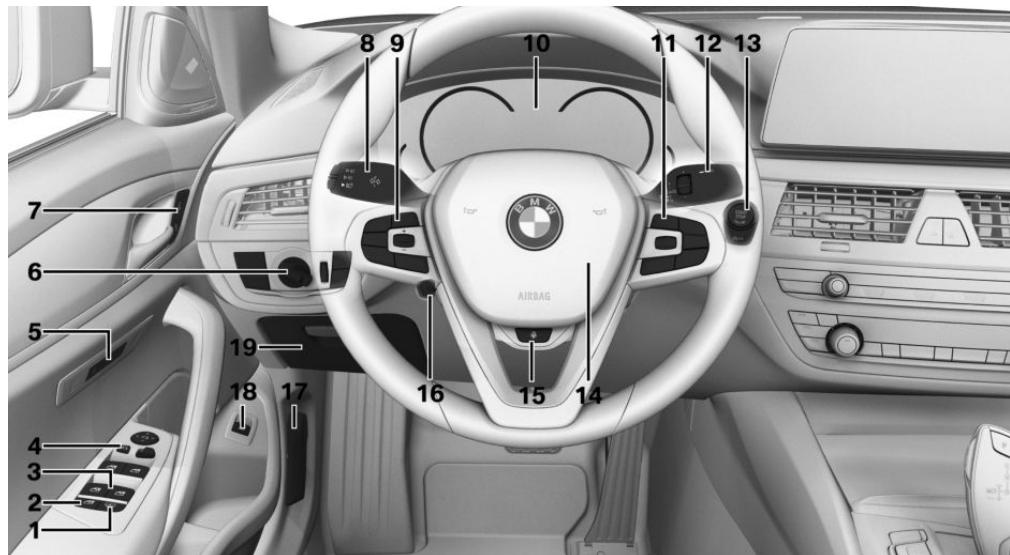
Driving area

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on

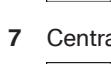
account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Around the steering wheel



- 1 Roller sunblind in the rear window [79](#)
- 2 Safety switch [78](#)
- 3 Power windows [77](#)
- 4 Exterior mirror operation [92](#)
- 5 Seat comfort functions

- 6 Lights
 - Front fog lights [151](#)
 - Rear fog light [151](#)
- Memory function [94](#)
- Massage function [95](#)

	Night Vision 170		High-beam assistance 150
	Light switch 147		On-board computer 141
	Lights off Automatic driving lights control 148		9 Buttons on steering wheel, left Manual Speed Limiter 195
	Daytime driving lights 149		Cruise Control on/off 196
	Side lights 147		Active Cruise Control on/off 199
	Automatic driving lights control 148		Steering and lane control assistant on/off 208
	Adaptive light functions 149		To interrupt or resume Cruise Control
	High-beam assistance 150		Active Cruise Control: to increase the distance
	Low-beam headlights 148		Active Cruise Control: to reduce the distance
	Instrument lighting 152		With steering and lane control assistant: to set the distance
	Right parking light 148		Rocker switch for Cruise Control
	Left parking light 148		
	7 Central locking system		10 Instrument cluster 129
	Unlocking 65		11 Buttons on steering wheel, right
	Locking 65		Entertainment source, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
	8 Steering-column lever, left		Volume, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
	Turn indicator 115		
	High-beam headlights, headlight flasher 115		Voice control system 34



Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)

Knurled wheel for selection lists [140](#)

12 Steering-column lever, right



Wipers [116](#)



Rain sensor [117](#)



Cleaning windscreen and headlights [117](#)

13 

To switch drive-ready state on/off [108](#)



Auto Start Stop function [109](#)



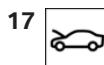
Horn, entire area



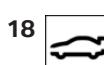
Steering wheel heating [94](#)



To adjust the steering wheel [93](#)



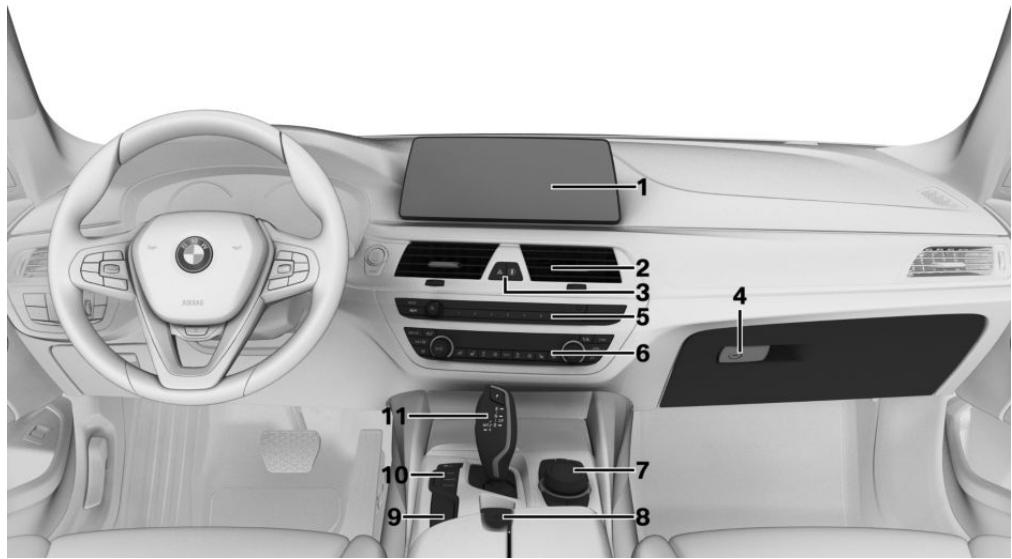
To release the bonnet [327](#)



To open/close boot lid [70](#)

19 Glove box [264](#)

Around the centre console



1 Control Display [22](#)

2 Ventilation [245](#)

- | | | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| 3 |  Hazard warning lights 344 | 10 |  Drive experience switch 125 |
| |  Intelligent Safety 159 | |  SPORT drive mode |
| | | |  COMFORT drive mode |
| | | |  ECO PRO drive mode |
| | | |  ADAPTIVE drive mode |
| | | |  Dynamic Stability Control, DSC 191 |
| 4 | Glove box 263 | 11 | Steptronic transmission selector lever 120 |
| 5 | Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6 | Manual transmission selector lever 120 | |
| 6 | Automatic air conditioning 241 | | |
| 7 | Controller with buttons 23 | | |
| 8 |  Parking brake 112 | | |
| |  Automatic Hold 113 | | |
| 9 |  Park Distance Control, PDC 212 | | |
| | Without Surround View: rear-view camera 216 | | |
| | Surround view 219 | | |
| | Crossing traffic warning 236 | | |
| | Park Assistant 226 | | |
| | Remote Control Parking 231 | | |
| |  Surround View: Panorama View 219 | | |

Around the roof lining



- | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|---|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 | | Emergency call, SOS 346 | 4 | | Reading lights 153 |
| 2 | | Glass Roof 79 | 5 | | Interior light 152 |
| 3 | | Front passenger airbag indicator lamp 158 | | | |

Idle state, standby state and drive-ready state

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- ▷ Idle state.
- ▷ Standby state.
- ▷ Drive-ready state.

Idle state

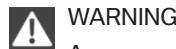
Principle

When the vehicle is in the idle state, it is switched off. All electrical consumers are deactivated.

General

The vehicle is in the idle state before you open it from outside and once you have left the vehicle and locked it.

Safety notes

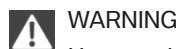


WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.◀



WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

Automatic idle state

The vehicle switches automatically to the idle state under the following conditions:

- ▷ After a few minutes, if no operation is performed on the vehicle.
- ▷ When the battery state-of-charge is low.

- When leaving the vehicle, if one of the front doors is opened, depending on the iDrive setting.

Idle state is not established automatically during a telephone call.

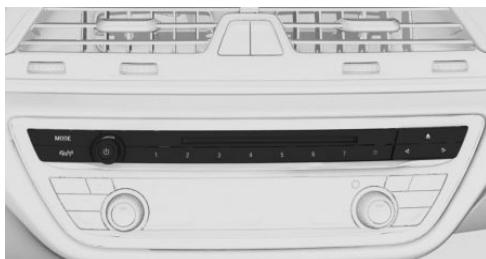
Establishing idle state on opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

- "My Vehicle"
- "Vehicle settings"
- "Doors/Key"
- "Switch off after door opening"

Manual idle state

To establish idle state in the vehicle at the end of journey:



Press and hold the button, until the OFF display on the instrument cluster turns off.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is activated, most functions can be operated while the vehicle is still at a standstill. Any desired settings can be performed.

General

The vehicle switches to standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Display in the instrument cluster



OFF is shown in the instrument cluster. The drive is switched off and standby state switched on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Switching on the drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General

Some functions, for example Dynamic Stability Control DSC, can only be operated when drive-ready state is switched on.

Please observe the additional information about drive-ready state, see page 108.

Switching on drive-ready state



The drive-ready state is switched on using the start/stop button:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- With manual gearbox: press clutch and engage neutral.
- Press the start/stop button.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the revolution counter shows the current engine speed.

Switching off drive-ready state

To switch off drive-ready state, press the start/stop button. The vehicle changes to standby state.

iDrive

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. These functions can be operated using the Controller and, depending on the equipment version, the touchscreen.

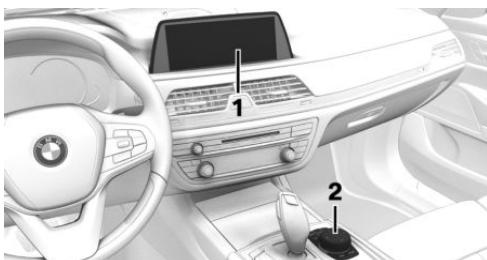
Safety note

WARNING

Operating integrated informations systems and communication devices during the journey may distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Only operate the systems or devices if permissible in the traffic situation. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.◀

Controls

Overview



- 1 Control Display, with touchscreen depending on the equipment version
- 2 Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

Control Display

General

To clean the Control Display, comply with the information regarding care, see page [355](#).

If the Control Display is exposed to very high temperatures, for example because of strong sunlight, there may be a reduction in brightness and the Control Display may even switch itself off. Normal functions will be restored when the temperature is reduced, for example by shading or using the air conditioning system.

Safety note

NOTE

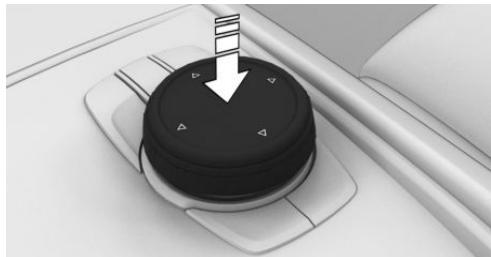
Objects in the area in front of the Control Display can slip and damage the Control Display. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not place objects in front of the Control Display.◀

Switching on

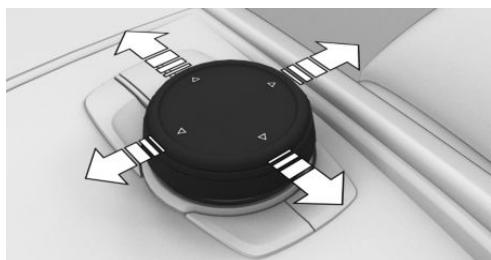
1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press the Controller.

Switching off

1.  Press the button.
2. "Switch off control display"



▷ Tilting in four directions.



Controller

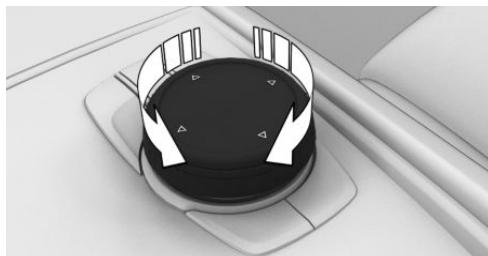
General

The buttons can be used to call up menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and perform settings.

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller, see page 27.

Operation

- ▷ Turning.



- ▷ Pressing.

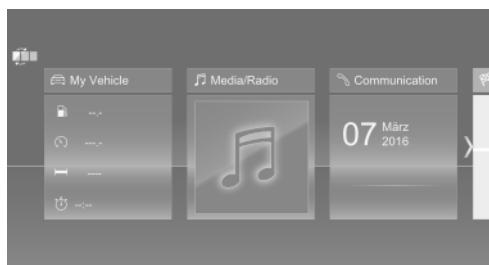
Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
	Press once: calls up main menu. Press twice: shows all menu items of the main menu.
	Calls up Communication menu.
	Calls up Media/Radio menu.
	Calls up the Destination input menu of the navigation system.
	Calls up navigation map.
	Press once: calls up the previous screen. Press and hold: calls up the last menus used.
	Calls up the Options menu.

Operation using Controller

Calling up the main menu

Press the button.



The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Adapting the main menu

1. Press the button twice.

All menu items of the main menu are displayed.

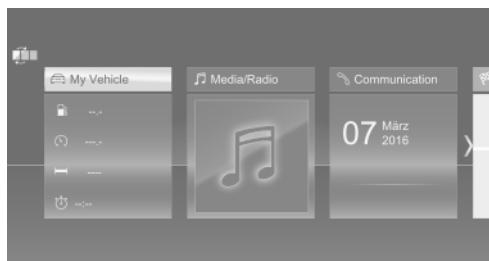
2. Select a menu item.

3. To move a menu item to the desired position, tilt the Controller to the right or left.

Selecting a menu item

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the Controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Handbook

In this Owner's Handbook, the menu items that can be selected are shown in quotation marks, for example "iDrive settings".

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, for example "iDrive settings", a new screen is displayed.

► Tilt the Controller to the left.

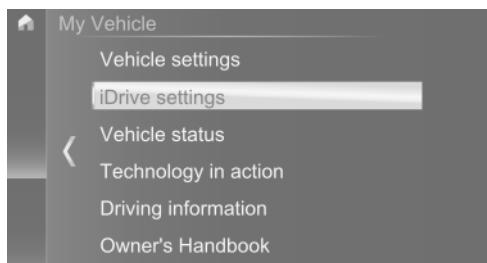
The current screen is closed and the previous screen is displayed.

► Press the button.

The previous screen is opened again.

► Tilt the Controller to the right.

The new screen is opened.



The arrow indicates that further screens can be called up.

Calling up recently used menus

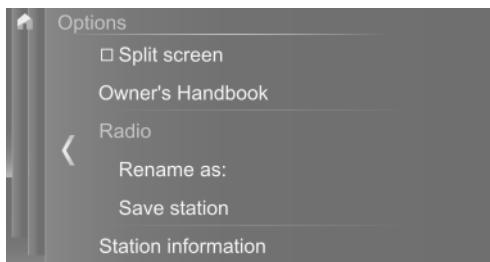
The recently used menus can be displayed.

► Press and hold the button.

Calling up the Options menu

► Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

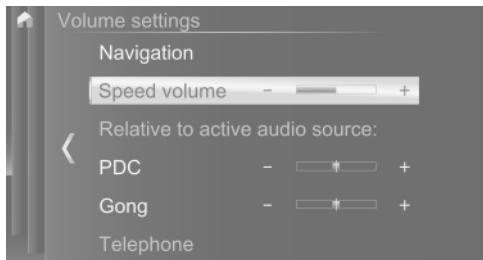


The Options menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Screen settings, for example "Split screen".
- ▷ Operating options for the selected main menu, for example for "Media/Radio".
- ▷ If applicable, other operating options for the selected menu, for example "Save station".

Adjusting the settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating functions

Some menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The box indicates whether the function is enabled or disabled. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

- Function is enabled.
- Function is disabled.

Entering letters and numbers

General

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller or the touchscreen. The keyboard display changes automatically.

Entry

1. Turn the Controller: to select letters or numbers.
2. **OK**: to confirm your entry.

Deleting

Symbol	Function
◀	Press Controller: deletes letters or digits.
◀	Press and hold the Controller: deletes all letters or numbers.

Changing between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Depending on the menu, it is possible to enter upper and lower case letters, numbers and characters.

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter letters.
1@+	Enter numbers.
abc or ABC	Switch between upper and lower case.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the selection is gradually narrowed down and possibly supplemented with every subsequent letter that you enter.

- Inputs are continuously compared with the data saved in the vehicle.
- ▷ Only letters for which data is available are offered for entry.

- ▶ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages available in iDrive.

Operating alphabetical lists

For alphabetic lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which entries are available, can be shown on the left side.

1. Turn the Controller quickly to the left or right.
On the left, all letters are displayed for which an entry is available.
2. Select the initial letter of the desired entry.
The first entry of the selected letter is displayed.

Operation by touchscreen

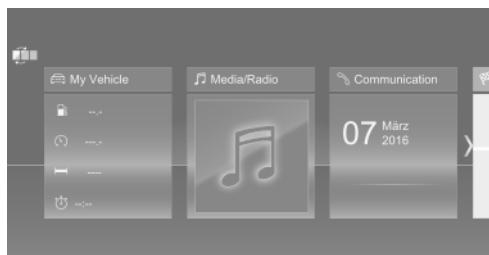
General

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

Touch the touchscreen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Calling up the main menu

⌂ Tap the symbol.



All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Adapting the main menu

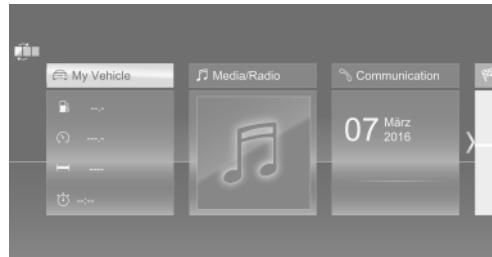
1. ⌂ Tap the symbol.

All menu items of the main menu are displayed.

2. Drag the menu item to the desired position on the right or left.

Selecting a menu item

Touch required menu item.

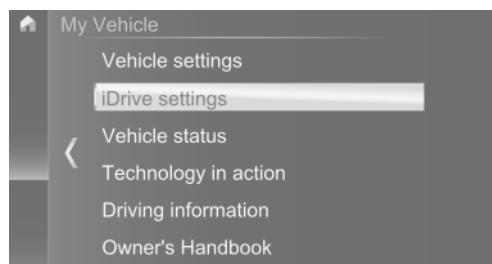


Menu items in the Owner's Handbook

In this Owner's Handbook, the menu items that can be selected are shown in quotation marks, for example "iDrive settings".

Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, a new screen is displayed.



The arrow indicates that further screens can be called up.

▶ Swipe to the left.

▶ Tap the symbol.

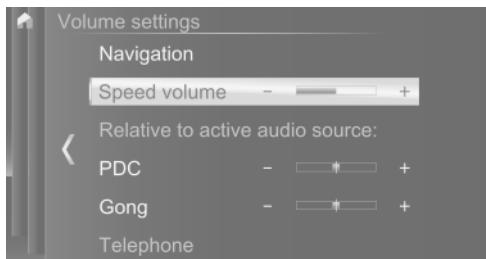
The new screen is opened.

Adjusting the settings

Settings such as volume can be made using the touchscreen.

- ▶ Move to the right or left until the required setting is displayed.

- ▷ - + Tap the symbol.



Operation of the navigation map

The navigation map can be moved via the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
To enlarge/reduce map	Pinch or open up your fingers.

Touchpad

General

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Touchpad"
4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Write": to enter letters and numbers.
 - ▷ "Map": to operate the map.
 - ▷ "Search fields": to write letters without selecting the list field.
 - ▷ "Audio feedback": to have the entered letters and numbers read out.

Activating/deactivating functions

Some menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The box indicates whether the function is enabled or disabled. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

- Function is enabled.
 Function is disabled.

Entering letters and numbers

General

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller or the touchscreen.

The keyboard display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
◀	Tap the symbol: delete letter or number.
◀	Tap and hold the symbol: delete all letters or numbers.

Changing between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter letters.
1@+	Enter numbers.
ABC or abc	Switch between upper and lower case.

Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires a bit of practice to begin with. Pay attention to the following when entering:

- ▷ The system recognises upper and lower case and numbers. It may be necessary to switch between upper and lower case, numbers and characters, see page 25.
- ▷ Enter symbols as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or dots, so that the letter will be correctly detected. The input option depends on the language that has been set.

You may need to enter special characters using the Controller.

Entering special characters

Entry	Operation
To delete a character.	Swipe on the touchpad towards the left.
To enter a space.	Swipe in the middle of the touchpad to the right.
To enter a hyphen.	Swipe at the top of the touchpad to the right.
To enter an underscore.	Swipe at the bottom of the touchpad to the right.

Operating map

The map of the navigation system can be moved using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
To move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
To enlarge/reduce map.	Pinch together or move apart your fingers on the touchpad.
To display menu.	Tap once.

Split screen

General

Additional information, for example information from the on-board computer, can be displayed on the right-hand side of the screen in some menus.

This information remains visible in the split screen view even if you switch to another menu.

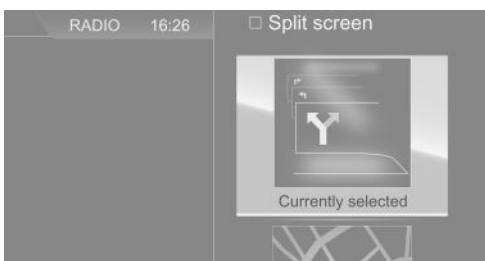
Switching the split screen view on/off

1.  Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

In the menus in which a splitscreen view is possible, you can select the desired display.

1. Tilt the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.



3. Select the desired setting.

Defining the display selection

The display selection can be defined.

1. Tilt the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.
3. "Personalise menu"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Tilt the Controller to the left.

Status information

General

The status field is located in the top area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Symbols in the status field

Telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Reception level of mobile telephone network.
.....	Searching for network.
	No mobile telephone network available.
	Critical charge state of the mobile telephone reached.
	Data transfer not possible.
	Roaming active.
	Text message received.
	Message received.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.
	Contacts are being loaded.

Entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player.
	Music hard disc.
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile telephone audio interface.
	Online Entertainment
	WLAN.
	iPod.

Other functions

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	Sound output switched off.
	Determining the current vehicle position.
	Traffic information.

Favourites buttons

General

iDrive functions, for example radio stations, navigation destinations, telephone numbers and shortcuts to the menu or pages of the integrated Owner's Handbook, can be saved to Favourites buttons and called up directly.

The settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

Saving a function

1. Select function via iDrive.
2. **1 ... 7** Press and hold the desired button until a signal sounds.

Performing a function

- 1 ... 7** Press the button.

The function is carried out immediately. If you have selected a telephone number, for example, the connection will also be established.

Displaying the button assignment

Touch the buttons with your finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.



Clearing the button assignment

1. Press and hold buttons 1 and simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

BMW Gesture Control

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

BMW Gesture Control enables some iDrive functions to be operated simply by moving your hands.

Overview



The gestures performed under the rear-view mirror are detected by a camera in the roof lining.

Activating/deactivating

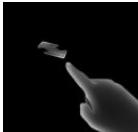
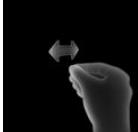
Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Gestures"
4. "Gesture control"

Settings

- ▷ "Display tips": the possible gesture is displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ "Audio feedback": an audible signal is output when the gesture is recognised.

Possible gestures

Gesture	Operation	Function
	Move your index finger forward in the direction of the screen and back again.	Accept phone call. Select highlighted entry of a list during voice control. "Resume route guidance" confirm pop-up.
	Move your hand across the width of the Control Display in the direction of the front-passenger side.	Reject phone call. Close popup. End voice control.
	Slowly move your hand in a clockwise circle with your index finger pointing forward. Gesture is detected after approximately one circular movement.	Increase volume.
	Slowly move your hand in an anticlockwise circle with your index finger pointing forward. Gesture is detected after approximately one circular movement.	Reduces volume.
	Pinch your thumb and index finger together and move your hand horizontally right or left.	Surround View: rotate camera view. This gesture is only possible with the vehicle at standstill.
	Move your index and middle fingers apart and extend them forwards.	Individually assignable gesture.

Perform the gestures under the rear-view window and to the side of the steering wheel.

Perform the gestures clearly.

The gestures can also be performed by the front passenger.

Assign gesture individually

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Gestures"

4. "Function assignment"
5. Select the desired setting.

System limits

Detection of gestures by the camera can be disrupted under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The camera lens is covered.
- ▷ There are objects on the rear-view mirror.
- ▷ The camera lens is contaminated. Cleaning camera lenses, see page [355](#).
- ▷ The gesture is performed outside the detection area.
- ▷ Wearing of gloves or jewellery.
- ▷ Smoking in the interior.

Voice control system

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Principle

The voice control system enables most of the functions shown in the Control Display to be operated by spoken commands. The system provides spoken announcements to assist you with input.

General

- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice control system to a limited extent.
- ▷ The system has a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ [...] Indicates commands for the voice control system in the Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ Commands, numbers and letters should be spoken fluently, with the usual emphasis and at a normal volume and speed.
- ▷ Always speak the commands in the language of the voice control system.
- ▷ When selecting the radio station, use the customary pronunciation of the station name as it is displayed on the Control Display.

[...] Station ..., for example, Classic Radio station.

Operating requirements

In order for the voice commands to be detected, a language must be set using iDrive that is supported by the voice control system.

Setting the language, see page [37](#).

Saying voice commands

Activating the voice control system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the acoustic signal.
3. Say the command.



This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice control system is active.

If no further spoken commands are possible, switch to iDrive to operate the function.

Switching off the voice control system



Press the button on the steering wheel or say *Cancel*.

Possible commands

General

Most of the menu items on the Control Display can be said as commands.

Commands from other menus can be spoken as well.

Some list entries, for example telephone book entries, can also be selected using the voice control system. When doing this, list entries are to be spoken exactly as they are shown in the relevant list.

Displaying possible commands

The following is displayed in the upper area of the Control Display:

- ▷ Some of the possible commands for the current menu.
- ▷ Some of the possible commands from other menus.
- ▷ Voice recognition status.
- ▷ Encrypted connection unavailable.

Help with the voice control system

- ▷ To have possible voice commands read aloud: ›Voice commands‹.
- ▷ To have information about the voice control system read aloud: ›General information on voice control.‹
- ▷ To have help on the current menu read aloud: ›Help.‹

An example: calling up sound settings

The commands for the menu items are spoken exactly as they are selected using the Controller.

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Media and radio‹
4. ›Sound‹

Settings

Setting the speech dialogue

You can select whether the system uses the standard dialogue or the short variant.

With the short variants of the speech dialogue, the system announcements are played in shortened form.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Voice control:"
5. Select the desired setting.

Selecting the input language

For some languages, it is possible to select which language is used for voice input.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Voice input:"
5. Select the desired setting.

Activating voice recognition via server

Voice recognition via server enables use of the dictation function and natural input of destinations and improves the quality of voice recognition. To use it, data is sent across an encrypted connection to a service provider and stored locally there.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Server speech recognition"

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer while the voice control system is querying your previous spoken instruction. The function can be deactivated if the confirmations are frequently cancelled inadvertently, for example due to background noise or speaking.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speaking during voice output"

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume knob during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is obtained.

- ▷ The volume setting is retained even if you change the volume of other audio sources.
- ▷ The volume setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Information for emergency calls

The voice control system should not be used for emergency calls. Under stress, a person's speech and voice pitch can change. This could unnecessarily delay the connection of your call.

Instead, use the SOS button, see page [346](#), located near the rear-view mirror.

Operating conditions

- ▷ Doors, windows and the Glass Roof should be kept closed to avoid noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid background noises in the vehicle while you are speaking.

General settings

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Language

Setting the language

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Language:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the speech dialogue

Speech dialogue for the voice control system, see page 35.

Time

Setting the time zone

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"

4. "Time zone:"

5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the time format

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Instrument cluster with extended functionality: setting time display

The time can be displayed in analogue or digital format.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Time"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Automatic time setting

Depending on equipment, the time, date and, if necessary, time zone are updated automatically.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Date

Setting the date

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Alter the setting for month and year.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting the date format

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Setting units of measurement

It is possible to select the units of measurement for various values, for example fuel consumption, distances and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Units"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Activating/deactivating display of the current vehicle position

Principle

If vehicle tracking is activated, the current vehicle position can be displayed in the BMW Connected app or in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Vehicle tracking"
4. "Vehicle tracking"

Depending on the lighting conditions, the brightness adjustment may not be immediately apparent.

Selecting the content of the main menu

The content displayed in some menu items of the main menu can be selected.

-  Press the button.
2. "Contents of main menu"
3. Select the desired menu and desired content.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Activating/deactivating information windows

Information windows are automatically shown on the Control Display for some functions.

Some of these information windows can be activated or deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Pop-ups"
4. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Control Display

Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Messages

Principle

The menu shows all messages received by the vehicle, centrally in the form of a list.

General

The following messages can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Communication messages, for example e-mail, SMS or reminders.
- ▷ Service requirement messages.

Messages are additionally displayed in the status field.

Calling up messages

Via iDrive:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the required message.

The corresponding menu is opened, in which the message is displayed.

Deleting messages

All messages which are not Check Control messages can be deleted from the list. Check Control messages remain for as long as they are relevant.

Via iDrive:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the required message if necessary.
3.  Press the button.
4. "Delete this notification" or "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be performed:

- ▷ Select the applications from which messages are permitted.
- ▷ Sort the sequence of messages by date or priority.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Notifications"
4. Select the desired setting.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers various functions which require data to be transferred to BMW or a service provider. The transfer of data can be deactivated for some functions.

General

If data function has been deactivated for a function, then that function cannot be used.

Only perform settings with the vehicle at a standstill.

Activating/deactivating data transfer

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "iDrive settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on use, the vehicle stores personal data such as saved radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General

Depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle, the following data can be deleted:

- ▷ Driver profile settings.
- ▷ Saved radio stations.
- ▷ Saved Favourites buttons.
- ▷ Trip and on-board computer values.
- ▷ Music hard disc.
- ▷ Navigation, for example saved destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for example Favourites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for example voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.

It can take up to 15 minutes in total to delete data.

Operating requirements

Data can only be deleted with the vehicle at a standstill.

Deleting data

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "iDrive settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Delete personal data"
6. "Delete personal data"
7. "OK"
8. Exit and lock the vehicle.

Deletion is completed after 15 minutes.

If not all data is deleted, repeat deletion if required.

Cancelling deletion

Switch-on drive-ready state to cancel the data deletion.

Connections

Principle

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General

The following overview shows possible functions and the appropriate connection types for them. The extent of applications depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Telephoning using the hands-free system.	Bluetooth.
Operating telephone functions via iDrive.	
Using the smartphone Office functions.	
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.
Operating compatible apps via iDrive.	Bluetooth or USB.
USB storage medium:	USB.
Exporting and importing driver profiles.	
Performing software updates.	
Importing and exporting stored journeys.	
Music playback.	
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB device.	USB.
Using the vehicle Internet access.	Internet hotspot.
Operate Apple CarPlay apps via iDrive and by voice commands.	Bluetooth and WiFi.
Screen Mirroring:	WiFi
Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	

The following connection types require one-off registration process with the vehicle:

- ▷ Bluetooth.
- ▷ Internet hotspot.
- ▷ Apple CarPlay.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring.

Connected devices are then automatically recognised and connected to the vehicle.

Safety note



WARNING

Operating integrated informations systems and communication devices during the journey may distract you from the traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Only operate the systems or devices if permissible in the traffic situation. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.◀

Compatible devices

General

Information about mobile devices compatible with the vehicle is available at www.bmw.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur when using unlisted devices or different software versions.

Viewing the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, the vehicle identification number and software part number may have to be stated. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth information"
6. "System information"

You have the option of performing a software update, see page 48.

Bluetooth pairing

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible device, see page 42, with Bluetooth interface.

- ▷ The remote control or BMW display key is located in the vehicle.
- ▷ The device is operational.
- ▷ Bluetooth is activated on the device and switched on in the vehicle, see page 42.
- ▷ If default Bluetooth settings are required on the device, for example visibility, see the user manual of the device.

Switching on Bluetooth

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth"

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To be able to use all supported functions of a mobile telephone, it is necessary for the following functions to be activated before registering the mobile telephone with the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Office"

Activate this function to transfer SMS messages, e-mails, calendar, tasks, memos and reminders to the vehicle. Transferring all data to the vehicle may incur costs.

- ▷ "Contact pictures"

Activate the function to have contact pictures displayed.

6. Tilt the Controller to the left.

Registering the mobile device with the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5. Select functions:
 - ▷ "Telephone"
 - ▷ "Bluetooth audio"
 - ▷ "Apps"
 - ▷ "Apple CarPlay"
 - ▷ "Screen Mirroring"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.

6. On the mobile device, search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the mobile device.
Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.

7. Depending on the mobile device, either a control number is displayed, or you will have to enter the control number yourself.

Compare the control number shown on the Control Display with the control number in the device display.
Confirm the control number in the device and on the Control Display.
 Enter the same control number on the device and via iDrive then confirm.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list, see page 47.

Frequently Asked Questions

All preconditions are met and all necessary steps have been carried out in the specified order. Nevertheless, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

Why could the mobile telephone not be paired or connected?

- ▷ Too many Bluetooth devices are paired to the mobile telephone or the vehicle.

In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

Delete all known Bluetooth connections from the device list on the mobile telephone and start a new device search.

- ▷ The mobile telephone is in power-save mode or the battery is low.

Charge up the mobile telephone.

Why does the mobile telephone no longer respond?

- ▷ The applications on the mobile telephone are no longer functioning.

Switch the mobile telephone off and on again.

- ▷ Ambient temperature too high or too low to operate the mobile telephone.

Do not subject the mobile telephone to extreme ambient conditions.

Why can telephone functions not be operated via iDrive?

- ▷ The mobile telephone may not be configured correctly, for example as a Bluetooth audio device.

Connect the mobile telephone with the telephone or additional telephone function.

Why are no phone book entries, not all entries or incomplete entries displayed?

- ▷ The transfer of the phone book entries is not yet completed.
- ▷ Under certain circumstances only the phone book entries saved in the mobile telephone or on the SIM card are transferred.
- ▷ It is possible that phone book entries with special characters cannot be displayed.
- ▷ It may not be possible to transfer contacts from social networks.

- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be saved is too high.
- ▷ The data volume of the contact is too large, for example due to saved information such as memos.

Reduce the data volume of the contact.

- ▷ A mobile telephone can only be connected as an audio source or as a telephone.

Configure the mobile telephone and connect it with the telephone or additional telephone function.

How can the telephone connection quality be improved?

- ▷ Adjust the strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile telephone; the procedure varies from mobile telephone to mobile telephone.
- ▷ Place the mobile telephone in the snap-in adapter or close to the centre console.
- ▷ Insert the mobile telephone in the wireless charging dock.
- ▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone and speaker separately in the sound settings.

If all the points on the list have been reviewed and the desired function cannot be performed, contact the Hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

USB connection

General

Mobile devices with a USB port are connected to the USB interface.

- ▷ Mobile telephones.

The snap-in adapter has its own USB port that is automatically connected when an appropriate mobile telephone is inserted.

- ▷ Audio devices, for example MP3 players.
- ▷ USB storage devices.

Common file systems are supported. Formats FAT32 and exFAT are recommended.

The following uses are possible:

- ▷ Exporting and importing of driver profiles, see page 71.
- ▷ Playback of music files via USB audio.
- ▷ Playback of video films via USB video.
- ▷ Importing of software updates, see page 48.
- ▷ Importing trips.

When connecting, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not use force when inserting the plug into the USB interface.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB device from mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of USB devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every device.
- ▷ Do not expose the USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, for example very high temperatures, see operating instructions of the device.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of different compression techniques, correct playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in every case.
- ▷ A connected USB device is supplied with charging current via the USB interface if the device supports this.
- ▷ To ensure correct transfer of the stored data, do not charge a USB device from the socket in the vehicle when the device is also connected to the USB interface.
- ▷ Depending on how the USB device is being used, it may be necessary to perform settings on the USB device, see operating instructions of the device.

Unsuitable USB devices:

- ▷ USB hard drives.

- ▷ USB hubs.
- ▷ USB memory card reader with several inserts.
- ▷ HFS-formatted USB devices.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or lamps.

Operating requirements

Compatible device, see page 42, with USB interface.

Connecting a device

Connect the USB device to a USB interface, see page 261, using a suitable adapter cable.

The USB device is displayed in the device list, see page 47.

Internet connection

General

Up to 8 devices can be connected at the same time using the Internet hotspot.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible device, see page 42, with WiFi interface.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ Data contract with a service provider.
- ▷ WiFi activated on the device.
- ▷ Internet hotspot activated on the vehicle.
- ▷ Standby state switched on.

Activating the Internet hotspot

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet hotspot"

Connecting a device to the Internet hotspot

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5.  "Internet hotspot"

The hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.

6. On the device, search for WiFi networks. Select the network name on the device.
7. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

The device is displayed in the device list, see page 47.

A data volume must be purchased from a service provider when you first connect to the Internet via the Internet hotspot.

This data volume is used by all devices connected via the Internet hotspot.

Data volumes can be purchased via the ConnectedDrive Store.

Settings

The network name and hotspot code can be changed. In addition, the network name can be hidden to prevent it from being discovered by other devices.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4.  Press the button.
▷ "Change hotspot key"
Enter the required hotspot code.
5. ▷ "Change hotspot name"
Enter required network name.
- ▷ "Hide hotspot"

- Activate or deactivate the function.
6. Confirm the entry of the hotspot code or the network name:
OK Select the symbol.

Apple CarPlay preparation

Principle

CarPlay makes it possible to operate certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone by Siri voice operation and using iDrive.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, see page 42.
iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile radio contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WiFi and Siri voice operation are activated on the iPhone.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following settings:
 - ▷ "Bluetooth"
 - ▷ "Apple CarPlay"

Registering iPhone with CarPlay

Register iPhone via Bluetooth on the vehicle, see page 43.

Select CarPlay as the function:

- ▷ "Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list, see page 47.

Operation

For more information, see the integrated Owner's Handbook, Online Owner's Handbook, BMW Driver's Guide app or, the Owner's

Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Frequently Asked Questions

All preconditions are met and all necessary steps have been carried out in the specified order. Nevertheless, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In such cases, the following explanations may provide assistance:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of saved vehicles under Bluetooth and under WiFi.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the desired function still cannot be run: contact the hotline, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Screen Mirroring

General

Screen Mirroring makes it possible to show the smartphone display on the Control Display.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Compatible smartphone, see page 42, with Screen Mirroring interface.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring is switched on in the smartphone.
- ▷ WiFi is switched on in the vehicle.

Switching on WiFi

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Vehicle WiFi"

Register smartphone with Screen Mirroring

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5.  "Screen Mirroring"

The WiFi name of the vehicle is displayed in the Control Display.

6. On the smartphone, search for WiFi devices in the vicinity.

The WiFi name of the vehicle is shown on the display of the device. Select WiFi name of the vehicle.

7. Confirm the connection via iDrive.

The device is connected and displayed in the device list, see page [47](#).

Managing mobile devices

General

- ▷ Following one-off registration, the devices are automatically detected and connected again when the standby state is switched on.
- ▷ The data saved on the SIM card or in the mobile telephone is transferred to the vehicle following detection.
- ▷ Some devices may require particular settings, for example authorisation; see the user manual of the device.

Displaying device list

All devices registered or connected to the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates which function a device is used for.

Symbol	Function
	"Telephone"
	"Additional telephone"
	"Bluetooth audio"
	"Apps"
	"Internet hotspot"
	"Apple CarPlay"
	"Screen Mirroring"

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated on a registered or connected device.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the required device.
5. Select the desired setting.

If a function is assigned to a device, where applicable it is deactivated for a device that is already connected and that device is disconnected.

Disconnecting a device

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the device.
5. "Disconnect device"

The device remains registered and can be connected again, see page [48](#).

Connecting a device

A disconnected device can be reconnected.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the device.
5. "Connect device"

Functions assigned to the device before disconnection are reassigned to the device upon reconnection. If applicable, these function are deactivated for a previously connected device.

Deleting a device

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the device.
5. "Delete device"

The device is disconnected and deleted from the device list.

Switching telephone and additional telephone

If two mobile telephones are paired with the vehicle, the functions of the telephone and additional telephone can be exchanged.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Swap telephone/additional tel."

Software update

General

The vehicle supports a large number of mobile devices, for example mobile telephones and MP3 players. Software updates are provided for many of the supported devices. Regular updating of the vehicle software keeps the vehicle up-to-date.

Updates and related, up-to-date information are posted on the website at www.bmw.com/ update.

Displaying installed software version

The software version installed in the vehicle is displayed.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Show current version"

If an update has already been applied, select the desired version to show additional information.

Updating software via USB

Do not attempt to update the software unless the vehicle is at a standstill.

Via iDrive:

1. Save the file for the software update onto a USB data storage medium in the main folder.
2. Connect USB data storage medium to a USB interface, see page [261](#).
3. "My Vehicle"
4. "iDrive settings"
5. "Software update"
6. "Update software"
7. "USB"
8. "Install software"

9. "OK"
10. Wait for the update.
11. "Shut down system"
If necessary, switch off the engine beforehand.

Restoring the software version

It is possible to restore the software to the version prior to the last update or to its factory settings.

Do not attempt to restore the software unless the vehicle is at a standstill.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
 2. "iDrive settings"
 3. "Software update"
 4. "Restore software"
 5. ▶ "Previous version"
The previous software version is restored.
▶ "Software factory settings"
The first software version is resaved.
 6. "Remove software"
 7. "OK"
 8. Wait for restore.
 9. "Shut down system"
- If necessary, switch off the engine beforehand.

Owner's Handbook media

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Various media can be used to call up content from the Owner's Handbook. The following Owner's Handbook media formats are available:

- ▷ Printed Owner's Handbook, see page 50.
- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle, see page 50.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide App, see page 51.
- ▷ Online Owner's Handbook, see page 52.

There are different features, see page 53, in each of the different media formats.

Printed Owner's Handbook

Principle

The printed Owner's Handbook describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series.

General

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

Supplementary Owner's Handbooks

Please also follow the supplementary Owner's Handbooks which are attached in addition to the on-board documentation as needed.

Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

Principle

The integrated Owner's Handbook describes the specific equipment and functions present in the vehicle.

The integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the Control Display.

Selecting the Owner's Handbook



1. Press the button.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "Owner's Handbook"
4. Select the required method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling within the Owner's Handbook

Turn the Controller until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General

The section of the Owner's Handbook relating to the function that is currently selected can be displayed directly.

Calling up when using iDrive

Switch to the Options menu directly from the function on the Control Display:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Owner's Handbook"

Calling up when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

-  "Owner's Handbook"

Switching between a function and the Owner's Handbook

You can use the Control Display to switch from a function, for example the radio, to the Owner's Handbook, and then back and forth between the two displays:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Owner's Handbook"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Handbook.
4.  Press the button again to switch back to the last displayed function.
5.  Press the button again to switch back to the last displayed page of the Owner's Handbook.

To switch continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Handbook, repeat steps 4 and 5. New screens are opened each time you do so.

Favourites buttons

General

The shortcuts to the Owner's Handbook can be saved on Favourites buttons, see page 29, and called up directly.

Saving

1. Select required jump using iDrive:
 - ▷ "Quick reference"
 - ▷ "Picture search"
 - ▷ "Keyword search"
 - ▷ "Animations"
2.  Press and hold the required Favourites button for more than 2 seconds.

Executing/Performing

-  Press the appropriate button.
-  Owner's Handbook is displayed directly with the selected shortcut.

BMW Driver's Guide App

Principle

The BMW Drivers Guide app specifically describes the equipment and functions included in the vehicle.

The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

General

The Owner's Handbook is available as an app in many countries. You will find further information on the Internet at:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

The content can be filtered by entering the vehicle identification number.

Vehicles

It is possible to store Owner's Handbooks for various vehicles in the app.

It is also possible to test the app using a demonstration vehicle.

Operating systems and language

The app is available for the iOS and Android operating systems.

The Owner's Handbook is downloaded in the language of the device.

Online Owner's Handbook

Principle

The Online Owner's Handbook specifically describes the equipment and functions present in the vehicle.

The Online Owner's Handbook can be displayed in any of today's browsers.

General

The Online Owner's Handbook is available in many countries. An account on the customer portal may be required.

The content can be filtered by entering the vehicle identification number.

Vehicles

It is possible to store several individual Owner's Handbooks for various vehicles.

Language

The language is based on whichever language is set in the operating system.

Printing

The print function can be used to automatically format and print out individual chapters.

Media components

General

The following components are not available to the same extent in all media formats.

Further information about availability, see page 53.

Quick Reference

Important information is found in the quick reference for the operation of the vehicle, the operation of fundamental vehicle functions and in case of breakdown.

Search by pictures

The search by pictures function enables you to search for information and descriptions using pictures. This is particularly useful, for example, if you require a description of an item of equipment but do not know its name.

Frequently Asked Questions

This chapter contains answers to frequently asked questions about the vehicle and helpful links to additional information.

Quick links

The chapter on quick links explains the most important information and operating instructions on the basis of various situations.

Animations

The animations explain the basic functions of systems.

Smart Scan

Smart Scan can be used to scan various symbols in the vehicle. After a brief explanation of the symbol in question appears, it is then possible to display the chapter directly.

Smart Scan is only available for the iOS operating system.

Keyword search

The keywords function enables searches to be carried out for information and descriptions in the media.

Key features

	Printed	Integrated	APP	Online
All equipment included.	X	—	—	—
Equipment included in vehicle.	—	X	X	X
Quick reference.	—	X	X	X
Search by pictures.	—	X	X	X
Frequently asked questions.	—	—	X	X
Quick links.	—	—	X	X
Animations.	—	X	X	X
Smart Scan.	—	—	X	—
Keyword search.	X	X	X	X

X: included.

—: not included.



Controls

The information in this chapter helps you to operate your vehicle confidently. All equipment designed to make your journey safer and more comfortable is described here.

Opening and closing

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Remote control

General

The delivery specification includes two remote controls with integrated keys.

Each remote control contains a replaceable battery. Replacing the battery, see page 58.

The buttons' functions can be assigned depending on the equipment installed and the country specification. For settings, see page 74.

Personal settings are saved in the vehicle for each remote control. Driver profiles, see page 71.

The remote controls store servicing information. Service data in the remote control, see page 334

Safety notes

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a danger of injury. Carry the remote control with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.◀



WARNING

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.◀



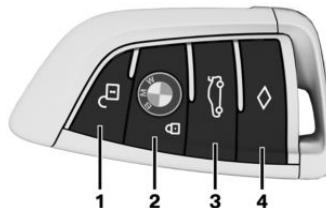
WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

Overview



1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Opening the boot lid

With automatic tailgate operation: to open/
close boot lid

4 Headlight courtesy delay feature

Unlocking



Press the button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, see page 74, the following access points are unlocked:

- ▷ The driver door and the fuel filler flap.
Press the button on the remote control again to unlock the other access points.
- ▷ All doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

The following functions are also carried out:

- ▷ The settings saved in the driver profile, see page 71, are applied.
- ▷ The driver's seat is set to the last seat position saved. This function must be activated in the settings, see page 74.
- ▷ The interior light is switched on, unless it was switched off manually. Switching the interior light on/off manually, see page 153.
- ▷ Depending on the settings, the welcome light and headlight courtesy delay feature, see page 148, are switched on.
- ▷ Automatically folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out. This function must be activated in the settings, see page 74. Exterior mirrors that were folded in using the comfort closing feature must be folded out using comfort opening.
- ▷ With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched off.
- ▷ The alarm system, see page 75, is switched off.

The vehicle is operational, see page 20, after one of the front doors is opened.

The light functions might be dependent on the ambient brightness.

Comfort opening



Keep the button on the remote control pressed after unlocking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are opened for as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Exterior mirrors folded in using comfort closing are folded out.

Locking

1. Close the driver door.
2. Press the  button on the remote control.
- ▷ All the doors, the boot lid and fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▷ The exterior mirrors are folded in. This function must be activated in the settings, see page 74.
- ▷ With anti-theft system: The anti-theft system is switched on. This prevents the doors from being able to be unlocked using the locking buttons or the door openers.
- ▷ The alarm system, see page 75, is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still switched on when locking, the vehicle horn sounds twice. In this case, switch off the drive-ready state using start/stop button.

Comfort closing

Safety note



WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the comfort closing feature is operating. There is a danger of injury. During comfort closing, make sure that the area of movement is kept free.◀

Closing

 Keep the button on the remote control pressed after locking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are closed for as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

The exterior mirrors are folded in.

If the hazard warning lights are switched on, the exterior mirrors are not folded in.

Switching on the interior light and exterior lights

 With the vehicle locked, press the button on the remote control.

The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

- The interior light is switched on, unless it was switched off manually. Switching the interior light on/off manually, see page 153.
- Depending on the settings, the headlight courtesy delay feature, see page 148, is switched on. The welcome light is only switched on when unlocking.

The light functions might be dependent on the ambient brightness.

Boot lid

General

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

Depending on the equipment and the country specification, it is possible to select whether the doors are also locked. Adjusting the settings, see page 74.

Safety notes

 **WARNING**

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operating. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is free.◀

 **NOTE**

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is free.◀

Opening

 Keep the button on the remote control pressed for approximately 1 second.

On some equipment versions, the doors are also unlocked each time.

With automatic tailgate operation: closing

 Press and hold the button on the remote control.

Releasing the button stops the movement.

If the doors were not unlocked, the boot lid is locked again as soon as it is closed.

Switching on the headlight courtesy delay feature

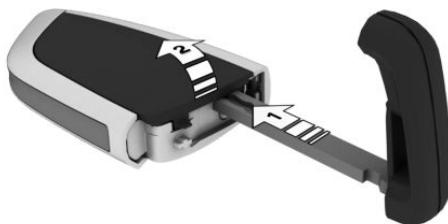
 Press the button on the remote control.

Setting the duration, see page 148.

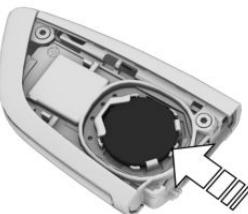
Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, see page 64.
2. Place integrated key under the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and pry off

the cover with a lever motion of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Use a pointed object to push the battery in the direction of the arrow and lift it out.



4. Insert a new type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover back into position.



Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Additional remote controls

Additional remote controls are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Loss of remote controls

A lost remote control can be blocked and replaced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Malfunction

General

A Check Control message, see page 130, is shown.

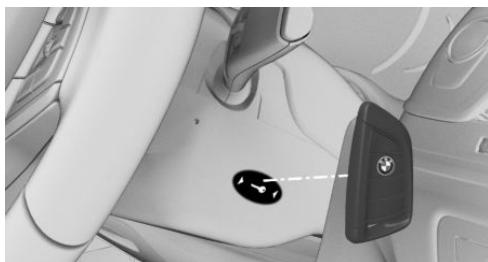
It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the remote control in some conditions, including the following:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, see page 58.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control by metallic objects.
- Do not transport the remote control together with metallic objects.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the remote control
- Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference with the radio link caused by the charging of mobile devices, for example a mobile phone.
- ▷ The remote control is located in the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging cradle.

Place the remote control somewhere else.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, see page 64.

Switching on the drive-ready state via the remote control special ID feature



The drive-ready state cannot be switched on if the remote control has not been detected.

If this happens, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the back of the remote control against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the remote control is detected:
Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, change the position of the remote control slightly and repeat the procedure.

BMW display key

General

The BMW display key is supplied with an additional mechanical key. When using the display key, you should also carry the mechanical key, for example in your wallet or purse.

The display key supports all functions of the standard remote control.

The following functions are also available:

- ▷ Call up status of doors and windows.
- ▷ Call up status of the anti-theft alarm.
- ▷ Call up service information.
- ▷ Call up range with the available fuel.
- ▷ With auxiliary heating: operate auxiliary heating.

Without auxiliary heating: operate independent ventilation.

- ▷ Remote Control Parking.

Safety notes

WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a danger of injury. Carry the remote control with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.◀

WARNING

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.◀

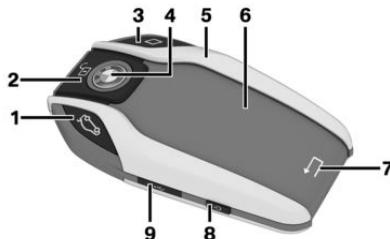
WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

Overview



1 Opening the boot lid

With automatic tailgate operation: to open/close boot lid

2 Unlocking

3 Headlight courtesy delay feature

4 Locking

5 Parking button

6 Display

7 Back

8 Switch display on/off

9 Micro-USB charge point

Reception range

Number of available functions of the display key depends on distance to vehicle.

- ▷ In close reception range, all functions of the display key are available.
- ▷ In the extended reception range, the status information can be called up.
- With auxiliary heating: auxiliary heating can be operated.
- Without auxiliary heating: independent ventilation can be operated.
- ▷ Outside reception range, it is possible to display last status information transmitted from vehicle.

Symbol is shown on the display if one of the buttons is pressed outside the reception range.

Display

General

Display is divided into status bar at top, information area and status bar at bottom.

Upper status bar

Status bar at top shows following information:

- ▷ Vehicle locked.
- Vehicle unlocked.
- ▷ Time set in vehicle.
- ▷ State of charge of the battery of the display key.

Information area

In the information area, the information can be called up and the additional functions carried out.

If information area contains more than one page, page indicators are displayed under information.

Indicator for current side is filled in.

Swipe to the left or right to switch between the sides.

If further information can be accessed on a page, tap on the corresponding symbol.

Tap symbol below the display to return to the higher-level page.

Lower status bar

The lower status bar shows whether the display key is within the reception range, see page 61.

- ▷ "Connected": the display key is located in the reception range.
- ▷ "Updated": the display key is located outside of the reception range. It indicates when the last data transfer from the vehicle took place.

Switching off/on

The content of the display is hidden automatically after a brief time to reduce battery power consumption.

Hide the information shown on the display manually:

Press button on the left of the display key.

Overview, see page [61](#).

Show content on the display:

1. Press button on the left of the display key.
2. Next, swipe your finger from the bottom to the top to cancel the screen lock.

Switch off the display to increase the battery life:

1. Press and hold the button on the left side of the display key for longer than 4 seconds.
2. "OK"

Switch on the display:

Press button on the left of the display key.

Operating principle

Depending on the equipment version, there are up to five main menus via which sub-menus can be accessed.

Main menu	Information/function
"Security information"	 /  Status of the doors. Status of the alarm system. After alarm triggering: date, time and reason for the alarm triggering.
	 Status of the windows. Status of the Glass Roof.

Main menu	Information/function
"Vehicle information"	Maintenance displays of the Condition Based Service CBS, see page 334 . Status of the parking lights.
"Range information"	Range with the available fuel.
"Precondit. setting"	With auxiliary heating: operate auxiliary heating, see page 248 . Without auxiliary heating: operate independent ventilation, see page 248 .
"R/C parking"	Driving into/out of a parking space under remote control, see page 231 .

Battery of the display key

General

Comply with the following notes:

- ▷ If the charge state of the display key battery decreases, the display is automatically switched off. The battery must be charged so the display can be switched on again. Functional capability of standard buttons is retained until the battery is completely flat.
- ▷ Charge the battery for at least three hours before using the display key for the first time or if the key has not been used for an extended period.
- ▷ The display key can be used during charging. If the battery is fully discharged, it can take some time before the display key can be used again.
- ▷ Due to the large variety of USB devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every charger. The charging time depends on the charger used.

- ▷ During charging, the charger and display key can heat up. At higher temperatures, a reduction in the charging current can occur due to the display key; in exceptional cases, the charging process is temporarily interrupted.

Charging

Via USB

Connect the display key to a USB port using the micro-USB charging connection.

With manual transmission: in the wireless charging dock



1. Open centre armrest.
2. Place the display key in the recess of the wireless charging dock under the centre armrest.

Make sure that the display is on the side of the holding clip and that the locking button is pointing upwards.

3. Close the centre armrest.

With Steptronic transmission: in the wireless charging dock



1. Open the cover of the cradle.
 2. Place the display key in the middle of the wireless charging dock in front of the cupholders.
- Make sure that the display is pointing upwards.
3. Close the cover of the cradle.

Malfunction

General

A Check Control message is shown.

Detection of the BMW display key by the vehicle may be disrupted by the following circumstances, amongst others:

- ▷ The battery of the display key is flat. Recharging the battery, see page 62.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the display key by metallic objects.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity.
- ▷ Interference with the radio link caused by the charging of mobile devices, for example a mobile phone.

Do not transport the display key together with metallic objects or electronic devices.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the mechanical key.

Switching on drive-ready state by special ID of the BMW display key



The drive-ready state cannot be switched on if the display key has not been detected.

If this happens, proceed as follows:

1. Hold the back of the display key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. If the display key is detected:

Switch on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

If the display key is not detected, change the position of the display key slightly and repeat the procedure.

Resetting the BMW display key

If the charged display key can no longer be switched on, or the display no longer responds to inputs, the display key can be reset.

Press and hold the button on the left of the display key for at least 20 seconds until something is shown on the display.

Integrated key

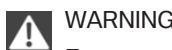
General

With the integrated key, the driver door can be unlocked and locked without the remote control.

The integrated key also fits in the glove box.

Use the integrated key to operate the key switch for front passenger air bags, see page 157.

Safety notes



WARNING

For some country versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

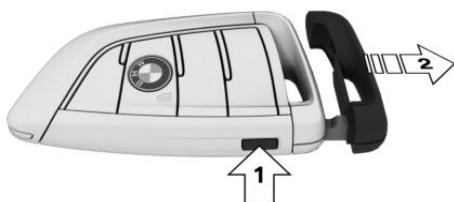
There is a risk of injury or danger to life if persons remain in the vehicle for extended periods and are exposed to extreme temperatures as a result. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.◀



NOTE

The door lock is firmly connected to the door. The door handle can be moved. Pulling the door handle when the integrated key is inserted can damage the paint or the integrated key. There is a danger of damage to property. Pull out the integrated key before pulling on the outer door handle.◀

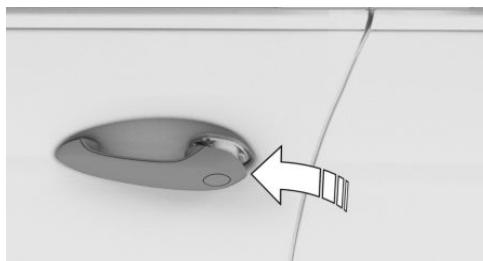
Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Unlocking/locking using the door lock

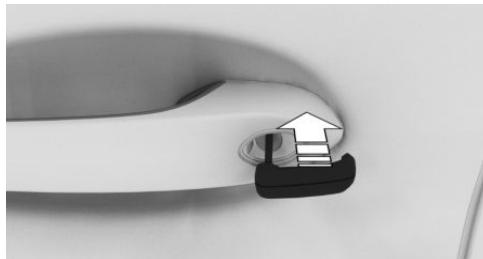
- Pull the door handle outwards with your left hand and hold it.



- Slide one finger of your right hand under the cover from behind and, when you feel the unlocking mechanism there, push it outwards.



- Use your left thumb to push the cover to the right.
- Unlock or lock the door lock with the integrated key.



The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered if the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

To stop the alarm, unlock the vehicle with the remote control, if necessary using the special ID of the remote control, see page 59.

Central locking buttons

General

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning lights and interior lights illuminate.

Overview



Central locking buttons.

Locking



Press the button with the front doors closed.

- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- ▷ Locking does not activate anti-theft protection for the vehicle.

Unlocking



Press the button.

Opening

- ▷  Press the button to unlock all the doors.
Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- ▷ Turn the door opener on the door to be opened. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Principle

This feature allows you to access the vehicle without having to operate the remote control.

Simply having the remote control with you, for example in your trouser pocket, is sufficient.

The vehicle automatically recognises the remote control when it is in the immediate vicinity or inside the vehicle.

General

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle.
- ▷ Comfort closing.
- ▷ Open the boot lid.
- ▷ Open boot lid contactlessly.

With automatic tailgate operation: open and close the boot lid contactlessly.

Operating requirements

- ▷ To lock, the remote control must be located outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the doors.
- ▷ The vehicle can only be unlocked and locked again after approximately 2 seconds.

Unlocking

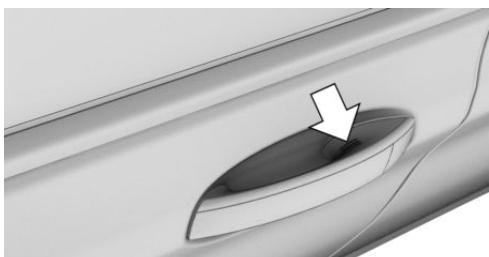


Fully grip the handle of a vehicle door.

This corresponds to pressing the  button on the remote control.

Locking

Close the driver door.



Use your finger to touch the grooved area on the handle of a closed vehicle door for approximately 1 second, without gripping the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing the  button on the remote control.

Comfort closing

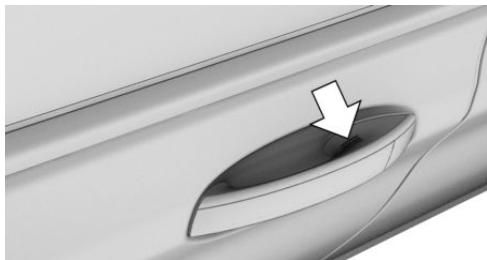
Safety note



WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the comfort closing feature is operating. There is a danger of injury. During comfort closing, make sure that the area of movement is kept free.◀

Closing



Use your finger to touch the knurled area on the handle of a closed vehicle door and keep your finger there without gripping the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing and holding the button on the remote control.

In addition to locking, windows and Glass Roof are closed and exterior mirrors are folded in.

Opening the boot lid

General

If the boot lid is opened using Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

Safety notes



WARNING

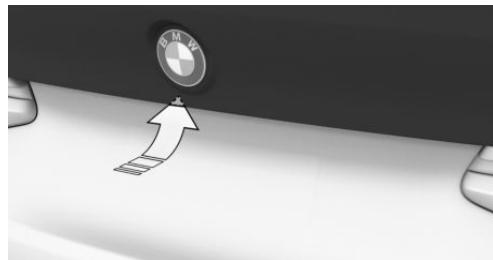
Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operating. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is free.◀



NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is free.◀

Opening



Press the button on the outside of the boot lid. This corresponds to pressing the button on the remote control.

Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid

Principle

The boot lid can be opened contactlessly if you carry the remote control. With automatic operation of the tailgate, it can also be closed contactlessly. Two sensors detect a foot movement forwards in the central rear area and the boot lid is opened or closed.

General

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

If the remote control is within the sensor range, the boot lid can be accidentally opened or closed by an unintentional or presumed foot movement.

The sensor range extends to approximately 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.

If the boot lid is opened with a contactless method, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety notes



WARNING

During operation without contact, there is a risk of touching vehicle parts, for example the hot exhaust system. There is a danger of

injury. Make sure you are standing securely when you perform the foot movement, and do not touch the vehicle.◀



WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operating. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is free.◀



NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is free.◀

Correct foot movement

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Move a foot in the direction of travel as far under the vehicle as possible and immediately pull it back again. With this movement, the leg must pass through the range of both sensors.



Opening

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The hazard warning lights flash before the boot lid opens.

Moving your foot again will stop the opening operation, and moving it one more time after that will close the boot lid again.

Closing

Contactless closing of the boot lid is only possible with automatic operation of the boot lid.

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal sounds prior to closing.

Moving your foot again will stop the closing operation, and moving it one more time after that will open the boot lid again.

Malfunction

It may be difficult for the vehicle to detect the remote control in some conditions, including the following:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, see page 58.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control by metallic objects.
Do not transport the remote control together with metallic objects.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity of the remote control.
Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request recognition function on the door handles.

In case of a fault, unlock and lock the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with the integrated key, see page 64.

Boot lid

General

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

Depending on the equipment and the country specification, it is possible to select whether the doors are also locked. Adjusting the settings, see page 74.

Safety notes

WARNING

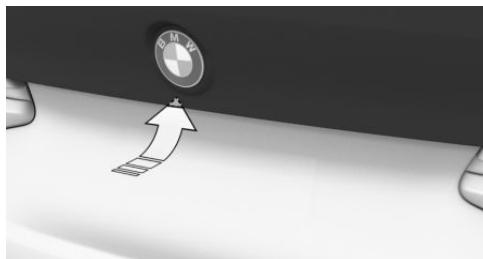
Parts of the body can become trapped when the boot lid is operating. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is free.◀

NOTE

The boot lid swings rearwards and upwards when opened. There is a danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the boot lid is free.◀

Without automatic tailgate operation

Opening from outside



- ▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.

With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the remote control about your person.

Press the button on the outside of the boot lid.

- ▷  Keep the button on the remote control pressed for approximately 1 second.

If applicable, the doors are also unlocked.
Opening with remote control, see page 58.

Opening from inside

- ▷  Press the button in the driver door storage compartment.

With Comfort Access: locking



Press the button on the inside of the boot lid with the driver door closed.

Closing

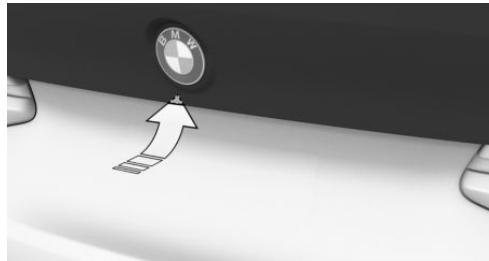


Pull the boot lid down using the handle recess.

With automatic tailgate operation

Opening

From outside



- ▶ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.
With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the remote control about your person.
Press the button on the outside of the boot lid.
- ▶  Keep the button on the remote control pressed for approximately 1 second.
If applicable, the doors are also unlocked.
Opening with remote control, see page 58.

From inside

-  Press the button in the driver door storage compartment.

Cancelling of the opening operation

The opening procedure is interrupted:

- ▶ If the vehicle begins to move.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the outside of the boot lid. Pressing the button again closes the boot lid.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the boot lid. Pressing the button again closes the boot lid.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the remote control. Pressing the button again resumes the opening operation.

- ▶ By pressing or pulling the button in the driver door. Pressing the button again resumes the opening operation.

Closing

From outside



Press and hold the button on the remote control.

From inside



Pull and hold the button in the driver door storage compartment.

For this function, the remote control must be inside the vehicle.

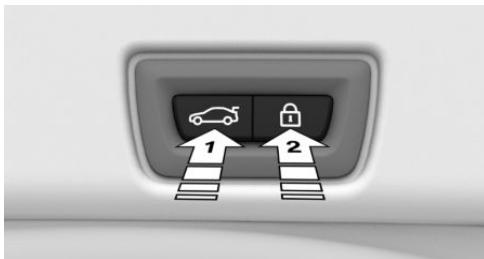
From inside of the boot lid

Without Comfort Access:



Press the button on the inside of the boot lid.

With Comfort Access:



- ▶ Press the button, arrow 1, on the inside of the boot lid.
- ▶ Press the button, arrow 2.

The vehicle is locked after the boot lid has been closed. To do this, the driver door must be closed and the remote control must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the boot lid.

Cancellation of the closing operation

The closing procedure is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When driving off suddenly.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the outside of the boot lid. Pressing the button again re-opens the boot lid.
- ▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the boot lid. Pressing the button again re-opens the boot lid.
- ▷ By releasing the button on the remote control. Pressing the button again and holding it down resumes the closing operation.
- ▷ By releasing the button in the driver door. Pulling the button again and holding it down resumes the closing operation.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical defect, manually operate the unlocked boot lid slowly, avoiding jerky movements.

Boot lid emergency release



Pull the handle in the boot.

This will unlock the boot lid.

Soft Close Automatic

Safety note



WARNING

Operation of the doors can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the doors is free.◀

Closing

To close, push the door gently.

The door is then closed automatically.

Driver profiles

Principle

Individual settings for several drivers can be saved in the driver profiles and called up again as required.

General

Three profiles are provided, in which personal vehicle settings can be saved. Each remote control is allocated to one of these driver profiles.

When the vehicle is unlocked with a remote control, the allocated driver profile is activated. All the settings saved in the driver profile are applied automatically.

If several drivers each use their own remote control, the vehicle will adapt to their personal settings when it is unlocked. These settings are also restored if the vehicle is used in the intervening period by someone with a different remote control.

Changes to settings are saved automatically in the currently used driver profile.

If a different driver profile is selected via iDrive, the settings saved there are automatically applied. The new driver profile is allocated to the remote control currently used.

A guest profile is also available which is not allocated to any remote control. It can be used to perform settings on the vehicle without changing the personal driver profiles.

Operating requirements

To ensure that the correct driver profile can be set, the system must be able to assign the detected remote control uniquely to the driver.

This is assured if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The driver is only carrying their own remote control.
- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle.
- ▷ The driver enters the vehicle through the driver door.

Currently used driver profile

The name of the currently used driver profile is displayed when the Control Display is switched on.

Select driver profile, see page 72.

As soon as the engine is started or any button pressed, the display selected last is shown on the Control Display.

To cancel the welcome screen via iDrive:

"OK"

Settings

Settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the currently used driver profile. Which settings can be saved depends on the country and equipment.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Air conditioning.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Favourites buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, sound.
- ▷ Control Display.

- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ TV.
- ▷ Park Distance Control PDC.
- ▷ Rear-view camera.
- ▷ Panorama View.
- ▷ Head-Up Display.
- ▷ Drive experience switch.
- ▷ Seat position, exterior mirror position, steering wheel position.
The positions set via the seat memory and the last position set are saved.
- ▷ Cruise Control.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.
- ▷ Night Vision.

Profile management

Selecting driver profile

Regardless of which remote control is currently being used, it is possible to call up a different driver profile. This enables the personal vehicle settings to be called up, even if the vehicle was not unlocked with the driver's own remote control.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
 2. "Driver profiles"
 3. Select driver profile.
 4. "OK"
- ▷ The settings saved in the selected driver profile are applied automatically.
 - ▷ The called up driver profile is allocated to the currently used remote control.
 - ▷ If the driver profile has already been allocated to another remote control, this driver profile then applies to both remote controls.

Guest profile

With the guest profile, individual settings can be performed that are not saved in any of the three driver profiles.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Drive off (guest)"
4. "OK"

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not allocated to the currently used remote control.

Renaming the driver profile

To avoid mixing up the driver profiles, it is possible to assign a personal name to the currently used driver profile.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
 - ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be renamed.
4. "Change driver profile name"
5. Enter a profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

Resetting the driver profile

The settings of the active driver profile are reset to factory settings.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
 - ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be reset.
4. "Reset driver profile"
5. "OK"

Exporting driver profile

Most of the settings of the currently used driver profile can be exported.

Exporting can be useful for backing up and calling up personal settings, for example before taking the vehicle into a workshop. Once backed up, the driver profiles can be taken into a different vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
 - ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be exported.
4. "Export driver profile"
5. Select a medium for exporting the driver profile.
 - ▷ "USB device"
 - If necessary, select the USB storage medium, see page 44.
 - ▷ Online
 - Via the BMW ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Importing driver profile

The existing settings of the currently used driver profile are overwritten by the settings of the imported driver profile.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select the driver profile to be overwritten.
 - ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be overwritten.
4. "Import driver profile"
5. Select a medium for importing the driver profile.
 - ▷ USB storage medium: "USB device"

- If necessary, select the USB storage medium.
- ▷ Online.
6. Select the driver profile to be imported.

System limits

It is not always possible to assign a remote control uniquely to a driver. This may be the case in the following scenarios:

- ▷ The front passenger unlocks the vehicle with their remote control, but another person drives.
- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle using Comfort Access and is carrying a number of remote controls.
- ▷ If there is a change of driver without the vehicle being locked and unlocked.
- ▷ If a number of remote controls are located in the area outside of the vehicle.

Settings

General

Various settings are possible for opening and closing, depending on the equipment and country variant.

These settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

Unlocking

Doors

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Driver's door" or "All doors"
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Driver's door only"

Only the driver door and fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

- ▷ "All doors"

The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Boot lid

Depending on the equipment and country specifications, these settings may not be available.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Tailgate" or "Tailgate and door(s)"
 - 5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Tailgate"
 - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"
 - Boot lid is opened.
 - ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"
 - Boot lid is opened and doors are unlocked.

Setting the last seat, mirror and steering wheel position

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
 - The setting can be made for the driver profile marked with this symbol.
4. "Last seat position automatic"

When the vehicle is unlocked, the driver's seat and exterior mirrors are adjusted to their last set positions. After the drive-ready state is switched on, the steering wheel is moved to its last set position.

The last position setting is independent of the positions saved via the seat memory.

Acknowledgement signals of the vehicle

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Flash for lock/unlock"

Unlocking is acknowledged by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.

Automatic locking

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Select the desired setting:

▷ "Relock automatically"

The vehicle is automatically locked again after a short while if no door is opened after unlocking.

▷ "Lock after pulling away"

On driving off, the vehicle is locked automatically.

Automatic unlocking

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Unlock at end of journey"

After the drive-ready state has been switched off by pressing the start/stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Closing the Glass Roof automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Automatic roof closing"

If the vehicle was parked with the Glass Roof open, the Glass Roof will be automatically closed, see page 80, when it starts to rain.

Folding the mirrors automatically

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Fold mirrors in when locked"

When locking, the exterior mirrors are automatically folded in, and when unlocking they are automatically folded out.

Establishing idle state after opening the front doors

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Switch off after door opening"

Idle state, see page 19, is established when the front doors are opened.

Alarm system

General

The alarm system responds to the following changes when the vehicle is locked:

- ▷ A door, the bonnet or the boot lid is opened.

- ▷ Movements in the interior.
- ▷ The vehicle's incline changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- ▷ There is an interruption in the power supply from the battery.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for on-board diagnosis, OBD.

The alarm system indicates these changes visually and audibly:

- ▷ Audible alarm.
Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ Activation of the hazard warning lights.

Switching on/off

The alarm system is switched on and off at the same time as the vehicle is unlocked and locked via the remote control or Comfort Access.

Opening the doors when the alarm system is switched on

The alarm system is triggered on opening a door if the door has been unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, see page [77](#).

Opening the boot lid with the alarm system switched on

The boot lid can be opened even with the alarm system switched on.

On closing the boot lid, it is locked again and monitored, as long as the doors are locked.

The hazard warning lights flash once.

Indicator lamp on the rear-view mirror



- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes every 2 seconds:
The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes for approximately 10 seconds before it flashes every 2 seconds:
The interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are not active because doors, bonnet or boot lid are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.
If the open access points are then closed, the interior protection and tilt alarm sensor are switched on.
- ▷ The indicator lamp extinguishes after the vehicle has been unlocked:
No attempt has been made to tamper with the vehicle.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the drive-ready state is switched on, but for no longer than approximately 5 minutes:
The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The incline of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds, for example, when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or when towing away.

Interior movement detector

To ensure perfect functioning, the windows and Glass Roof must be closed.

Avoiding false alarms

General

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector may trigger an alarm without any unauthorised activity taking place.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▷ In washing bays or car washes.
- ▷ In two-level garages.
- ▷ During transport via motorail, car ferry or trailer.
- ▷ When there are animals in the vehicle.
- ▷ At the filling station: if the vehicle is locked after refuelling starts.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior protection can be switched off for such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

 Press the button on the remote control again within 10 seconds, as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp illuminates for approximately 2 seconds and then flashes again.

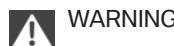
The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the remote control, if necessary using the special ID of the remote control, see page 59.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: fully grasp the door handle on either the driver door or the front passenger door while carrying the remote control.

Power windows

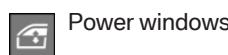
Safety note



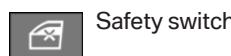
WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the windows are operating. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is kept clear◀

Overview



Power windows



Safety switch

Operating requirements

The windows can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is established.
- ▷ Drive-ready state is established.
- ▷ For a short while after idle state has been established.
- ▷ The remote control is in the interior.

Opening

- ▷  Push the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window opens as long as the switch is held.

- ▷  Push the switch past the resistance point.

The window is opened automatically. The movement is stopped by pressing the switch again.

Comfort opening using the remote control, see page 57.

Closing

-  Pull the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window closes as long as the switch is held.

-  Pull the switch past the resistance point.

The window closes automatically when the door is closed. Pulling the switch again stops the movement.

Comfort closing using the remote control, see page 57.

Closing using Comfort Access, see page 66.

Anti-trap mechanism

General

If the closing force exceeds a certain value when a window is closing, the closing operation is interrupted.

The window is opened slightly.

Safety note

WARNING

Accessories on the windows, for example aerials, can impair the anti-trap mechanism. There is a danger of injury. Do not attach any accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◀

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

If an external danger or ice does not allow you to close the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1.  Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

The window is closed with a restricted anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a certain value, the closing operation is interrupted.

2.  Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approximately 4 seconds and hold it there.

The window is closed without the anti-trap mechanism.

Safety switch

Principle

The safety switch can be used to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows by means of the switches in the rear, for example.

Switching on/off

-  Press the button.

When the safety function is switched on, the LED is illuminated.

Roller sunblinds for the rear side windows

Overview



 Button for the roller sunblind.

Operation

 Press the button to open the closed roller sunblind or to close the opened roller sunblind.

Pressing the button again during the movement moves the roller sunblind in the opposite direction.

System limits

If the roller sunblind can no longer be moved after a number of operations in immediate succession, the overheating protection mechanism is active. The system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Allow the system to cool down.

The roller sunblind cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Roller sunblinds, rear side windows

WARNING

When the roller sunblinds are closed and the windows opened, the roller sunblinds can be heavily stressed during the journey due to the air stream. The roller sunblinds can be-

come damaged and endanger vehicle occupants. There is a danger of injury. Do not open the windows during the journey when the roller sunblinds are closed.◀

Pull the roller sunblind out with the loop and hang into the holder.

Glass Roof

General

The glass roof and the sun guard are operated using the same switch.

Safety note

WARNING

Operation of the Glass Roof can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the Glass Roof is free.◀

Overview



Open/close the glass roof/sun guard.

Operating requirements

The glass roof can be operated under the following conditions.

- ▷ Standby state is established.

- ▷ Drive-ready state is established.
- ▷ For a short while after idle state has been established.
- ▷ The remote control is in the interior.

Movement is stopped by pressing switch upwards.

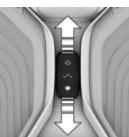
Raising/closing the Glass Roof



- Push the switch briefly upward.
- ▷ The closed glass roof is raised and the sun guard opens slightly.
 - ▷ The opened Glass Roof closes to the raised position. The sun guard does not move.

▷ The raised Glass Roof is closed.

Opening/closing the glass roof and sun guard together



Push the switch twice in rapid succession beyond the resistance point in the desired direction.

The glass roof and the sun blind move together. Movement is stopped by pressing switch upwards.

Comfort opening using the remote control, see page 57.

Comfort closing using the remote control, see page 57.

Closing using Comfort Access, see page 66.

Opening/closing the glass roof and sun guard separately



- ▷ Push and hold the switch in the desired direction as far as the resistance point. The sun guard continues to open for as long as the switch is pressed. The glass roof is opened if the sun guard is already fully open. The Glass Roof closes as long as the switch is held. If the glass roof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun guard is closed.

▷ Push the switch beyond the resistance point in the desired direction.

The sun guard is opened automatically. The glass roof is opened automatically if the sun guard is already fully open.

The Glass Roof is closed automatically. If the glass roof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun guard is closed automatically.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass roof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass roof as far as this comfort position.

Pressing the switch again opens the glass roof fully.

Closing in the case of rain

Principle

In idle state, the open Glass Roof is automatically moved to the raised position under the following conditions:

- ▷ When it starts to rain.
- ▷ Six hours after locking.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The rain sensor in the area of the rear-view mirror must not be covered, for example if the vehicle is half covered by a car port.
- ▷ Vehicle is in idle state.

- ▷ The function was activated in the settings, see page 74.

Malfunctions

The open Glass Roof is not moved to the raised position under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The Glass Roof is blocked.
- ▷ The anti-trap mechanism is not secured.
- ▷ There is a system error, for example due to a temporary interruption in the electrical power supply. In this case, initialising the Glass Roof, see page 81, can help.

An error message is shown on the Control Display. No further closing is attempted.

The open Glass Roof is immediately moved to the raised position under the following circumstances:

- ▷ Rain detection is not possible because of the system.

An error message is shown on the Control Display.

Anti-trap mechanism

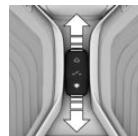
General

If the closing force exceeds a certain value when closing the Glass Roof, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the raised position.

Glass Roof is opened slightly.

Closing without anti-trap mechanism from open position

In the event of danger from the outside, proceed as follows:

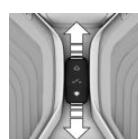


1. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it there.

The Glass Roof is closed with a restricted anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a certain value, the closing operation is interrupted.

2. Press the switch forwards once again beyond the resistance point and hold until the Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism. Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Closing without anti-trap mechanism from raised position



If there is a danger from the outside slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it there.

The Glass Roof is closed without the anti-trap mechanism.

Initialising after power failure

General

The Glass Roof functions may be restricted after a power cut during the opening or closing operation.

The system can be initialised under the following conditions.

- ▷ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ The drive-ready state is established.
- ▷ The outside temperature is above 5 °C/41 °F.

During the initialisation, the Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Ensure that the closing area is clear.

Initialising the system



Press the switch upwards and hold until the initialisation is complete:

Initialisation begins within 15 seconds and is complete when the glass roof and sun guard are fully closed.

Adjusting

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Safe seating position

A sitting position that suitably reflects the requirements of the occupants is essential for relaxed driving with minimum fatigue.

In an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Comply with the notes in the following chapters:

- ▷ Seats, see page 83.
- ▷ Seat belts, see page 86.
- ▷ Head restraints, see page 89.
- ▷ Airbags, see page 155.

Seats

Safety notes

WARNING

Adjusting the seat during a journey could cause the seat to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when at a standstill.◀

WARNING

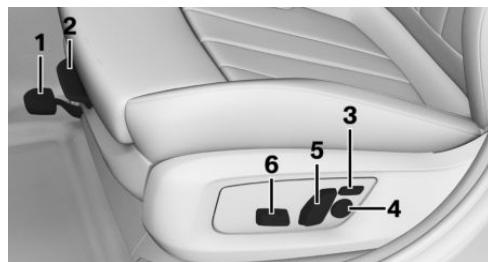
If the seat backrest is angled back too far, the protective effect of the seat belt will no longer be guaranteed. There is a danger of slipping under the seat belt in the event of an accident. There is a danger of injury or even death. Adjust the seat before starting the journey. Adjust the seat backrest to the most upright position possible, and do not change it during the journey.◀

WARNING

Risk of entrapment when moving the seats. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Before performing the setting, make sure that the movement area of the seat is clear.◀

Partly electrically adjustable seats

Overview



- 1 Forward/back
- 2 Thigh support
- 3 Backrest width
- 4 Lumbar support
- 5 Backrest angle
- 6 Height, seat angle

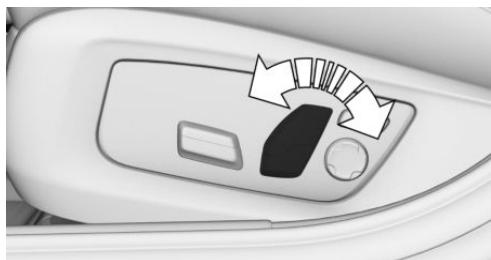
Forward/back



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

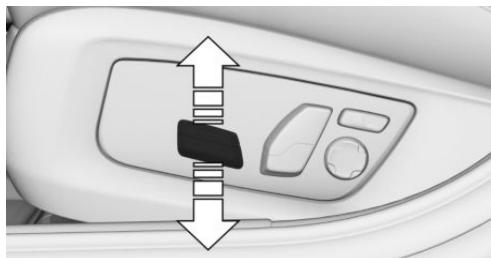
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Backrest angle



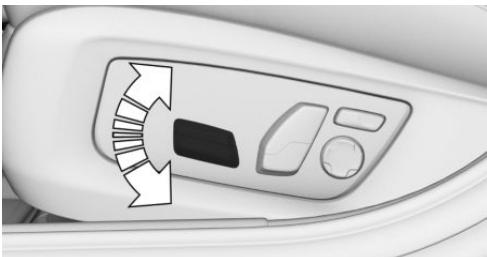
Tip the switch forwards or backwards.

Height



Press the switch up or down.

Seat angle



Tilt the switch up or down.

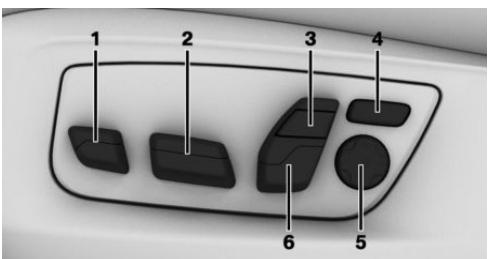
Electrically adjustable seats

General

The driver's seat adjustment is saved for the currently used profile. When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, this position is called up automatically if the function for this has been activated, see page 74.

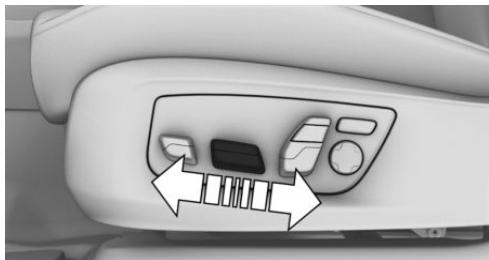
The current seat position can be saved with the memory function, see page 94.

Overview



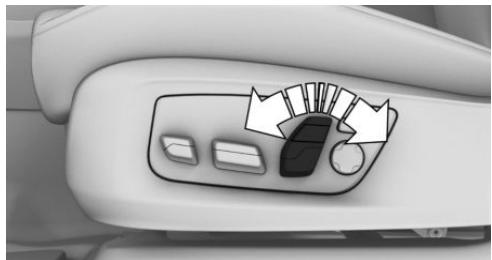
- 1 Thigh support
- 2 Forward/back, height, seat angle
- 3 Shoulder support
- 4 Backrest width
- 5 Lumbar support
- 6 Backrest tilt, head restraint

Forward/back



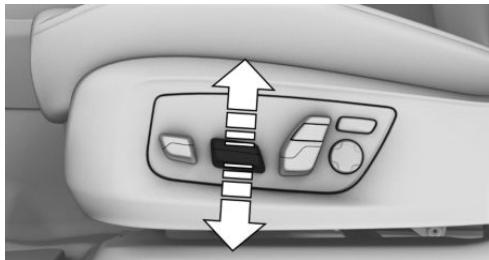
Press the switch forwards or backwards.

Backrest angle



Tip the switch forwards or backwards.

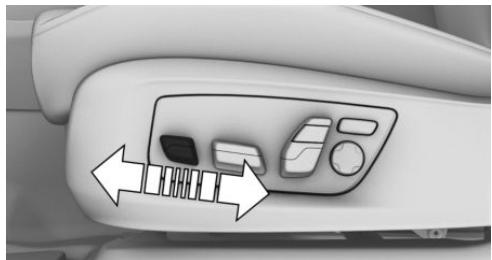
Height



Press the switch up or down.

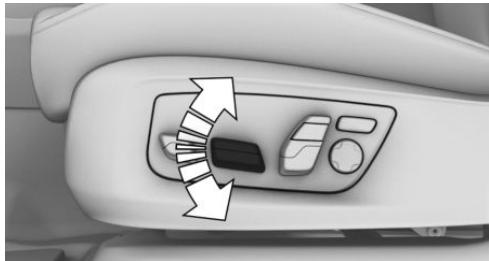
Thigh support

Multifunction seat



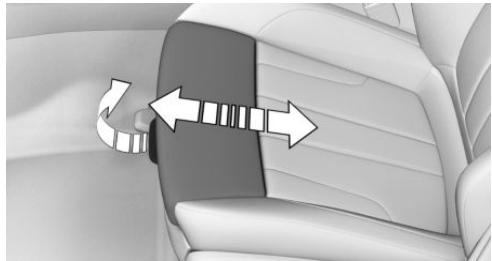
Press the switch forwards or backwards.

Seat angle



Tilt the switch up or down.

Sport seat



Pull the lever on the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support forwards or backwards.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the backrest can be changed in such a way that the lumbar region, the lordosis, is supported. The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported to encourage an upright posture.

Adjusting



- ▷ Press the button at the front/rear:
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the button at the top/bottom:
The curvature is shifted upwards/downwards.

Backrest width

Principle

Adjusting the backrest width can improve lateral support when taking corners.

General

To change the width of the backrest, the side cushions of the backrest can be adjusted.

Temporarily, the backrest width opens completely to facilitate getting into and out of the vehicle.

Adjusting



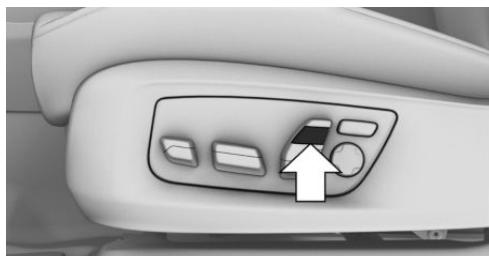
- ▷ Press the button at the front:
Backrest width is reduced.
- ▷ Press the button at the rear:
Backrest width is increased.

Shoulder support

Principle

The shoulder support supports the back in the shoulder region. When adjusted correctly, it ensures a relaxed seating position, and reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

Adjusting



- ▷ Press the button at the front:
The shoulder support is tilted forwards.
- ▷ Press the button at the rear:
The shoulder support is tilted backwards.

Seat belts

Number of seat belts and belt buckles

For the safety of the vehicle occupants, the vehicle is equipped with five seat belts. However, they can only provide effective protection when worn correctly.

The two outer belt buckles on the rear seats are intended for those sitting on the left and right.

The inner belt buckle on the rear seats is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General

Before a journey, always make sure that all occupants have fastened their seat belts. The air bags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The air bags are not a substitute for the seat belts.

The belt anchorage is suitable for adults of any stature if the seat is adjusted correctly.

Safety notes



WARNING

Never restrain more than one person with each seat belt, otherwise the protective effect of the seat belt is no longer guaranteed. There is a danger of injury or even death. Only restrain one person with each seat belt. Do not allow infants and children to travel on the lap of another occupant. Instead, secure the infant or child in a child restraint system intended for this purpose.◀



WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts can be restricted or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts correctly.◀



WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the body's skeleton and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, or lie against pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Do not route the lap section of the belt across the abdomen.

Do not modify seat belts, belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors and belt anchor points and ensure that they are kept clean. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Do not allow the seat belt webbing to come into contact with polishes, oils and chemicals and particularly battery acid. It may be safely cleaned with mild soap and water. The seat belt strap should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. Seat belts should not be worn with seat belt straps

twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is illegal to carry an infant or a child on the occupant's lap.

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.◀



WARNING

No modifications or additions should be made by the user that will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.◀



WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts may be restricted or nullified in the following situations:

- ▷ The seat belts or belt buckles are damaged, dirty or have been modified in another way.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors have been modified.

Seat belts can be damaged in an accident without the damage necessarily being apparent. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not modify seat belts, belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors and belt anchor points; also, keep them clean. After an accident, have the seat belts inspected at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

Correct seat belt use

- ▷ Place the seat belt tightly over the pelvis and shoulder, close to the body and without twisting.
- ▷ Make sure that the seat belt is positioned low at the hip in the area of the pelvis. The seat belt must not press on the abdomen.
- ▷ The seat belt must not be rubbed on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be trapped.

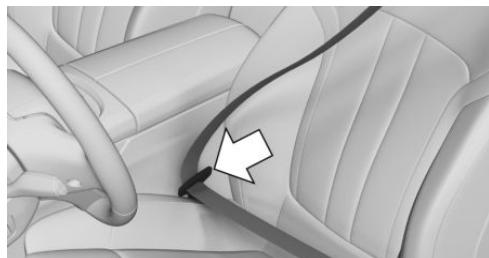
- ▷ Avoid bulky clothing.
- ▷ Keep the seat belt taut by occasionally pulling upwards on the upper section.

Adjustment for automatic retracting seat belts

- ▷ Pull the seat belt tongue diagonally across the body and push it into the belt buckle until it audibly engages into place.
- ▷ It is important to adjust the belt length correctly. To adjust the lap belt and check whether the belt tongue has engaged correctly in the buckle, pull upwards on the shoulder section of the belt until the lap belt fits tightly.
- ▷ The diagonal shoulder strap adjusts automatically to allow freedom of movement.
- ▷ To release the seat belt, press the button on the buckle.

Fastening the seat belt

1. When fastening the seat belt, guide the seat belt slowly from the bracket.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue in the belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.



If fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are automatically tensioned when driving off.

Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.

3. Guide the seat belt back up to the reel mechanism.

Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat

General

The seat belt reminder is activated when the seat belt on the driver's side is not fastened.

For some country versions, the seat belt reminder is also active if the front passenger seat belt is not fastened and heavy objects are on the front passenger seat.

Display in the instrument cluster



A Check Control message is shown. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

General

The seat belt reminder is automatically activated every time the engine starts.

The seat belt reminder will also be activated if a rear seat belt is unfastened during the journey.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated after the engine starts.

Symbol	Description
	Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.
	Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

Safety function

In critical driving situations, for example full braking, the front seat belts are tensioned automatically.

If the situation passes without an accident, the belt tension is loosened again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt by pressing the red button in the belt buckle. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

Front head restraints

General

The current head restraint position can be saved with the memory function, see page 94.

Safety notes

WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protection as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, fit the removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its centre supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the spacing so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.◀

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraints are moving. There is a danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is free.◀

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a danger of injury.

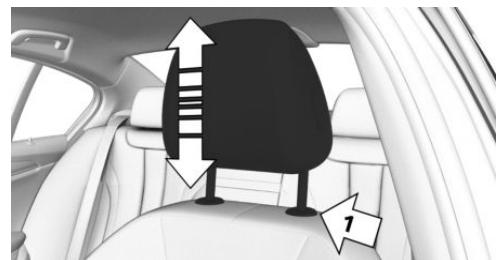
- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.◀

Active head restraint

In the event of a severe rear-end collision, the active head restraint automatically reduces the distance to the head.

Check the active head restraint if it has been subjected to an accident or is damaged, and have it renewed if necessary.

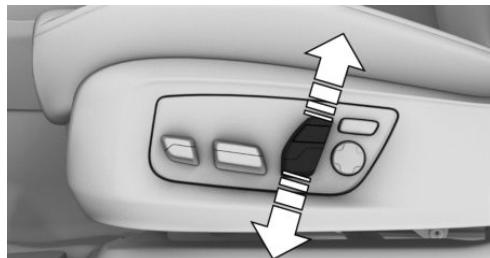
Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- ▷ Downwards: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Upwards: push head restraint upwards.

After setting the height, move the head restraint up or down slightly, making sure it engages properly.

Adjusting the height: electric head restraints



Press the switch up or down.

Adjusting the distance to back of head: manual head restraints



- ▷ Back: press the button and slide the head restraint towards the rear.
- ▷ Forward: pull the head restraint forward.

After setting the distance, move the head restraint forwards or backwards slightly, making sure it engages properly.

Adjusting the distance to back of head: electric head restraints

The head restraint is moved automatically on adjusting the shoulder support.

Adjusting the side sections



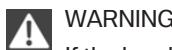
Fold the side sections forwards to increase lateral support in the rest position.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Safety notes



WARNING

If the head restraints are removed or incorrectly adjusted, they cannot provide protection as intended and head and neck injuries may result. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Before a journey, fit the removed head restraints on all occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its centre supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the spacing so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the back-rest tilt as needed.◀



WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when the head restraints are moving. There is a danger of injury. When moving the head restraint, make sure that the area of movement is free.◀



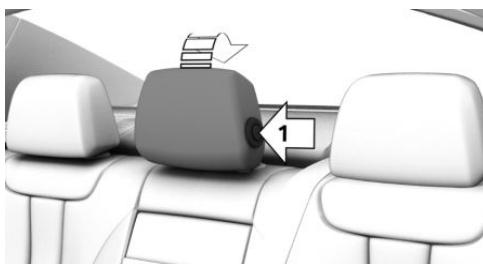
WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a danger of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.◀

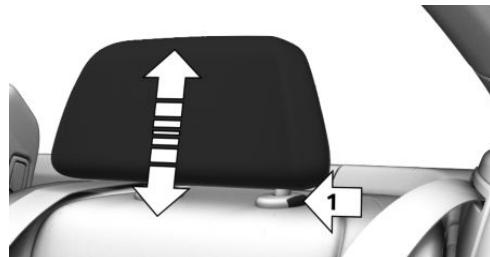
Folding down the middle head restraint

The middle head restraint can be folded back to improve the view to the back. Only fold down the head restraint if no one will be sitting on the middle seat.



- ▷ Backward: press button, arrow 1, and fold back the head restraint.
- ▷ Forward: fold head restraint forward until the head restraint engages.

Adjusting the height



The outer head restraints can be adjusted in height.

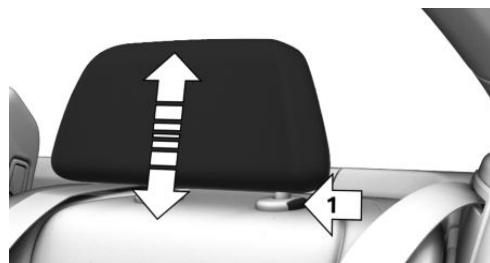
- ▷ Downwards: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.
- ▷ Upwards: push head restraint upwards.

After setting the height, move the head restraint up or down slightly, making sure it engages properly.

Removing

With through-loading system:

The outer head restraints can be removed. Only remove the head restraint if no-one is intending to sit on the seat in question.



1. Fold down the corresponding rear backrest, see page 269.
2. Raise the head restraint until resistance is felt.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

Installing

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

General

The mirror setting is saved for the currently used driver profile. When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, this position is called up automatically if the function for this has been activated, see page 74.

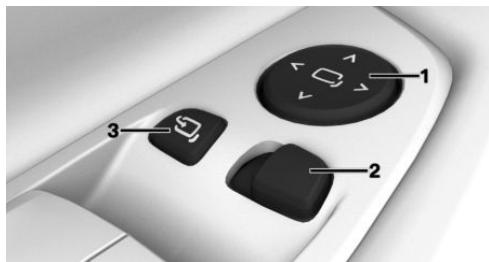
The current exterior mirror position can be saved with the memory function, see page 94.

Safety note

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to road users behind the vehicle could be incorrectly estimated, for example when changing lane. There is a danger of accidents. Look over your shoulder to estimate the distance from the following traffic.◀

Overview



- 1 Adjusting
- 2 Selecting a mirror, automatic parking function
- 3 Folding in and out

Electrical adjustment



Press the button.

The selected mirror moves in response to the button movement.

Selecting a mirror



To switch to the other mirror:

Push the switch.

Malfunction

In the event of an electrical fault, press the edges of the mirror glass to adjust the mirror.

Folding in and out



NOTE

Due to the vehicle's width, it could sustain damage in car washes. There is a danger of damage to property. Before washing, fold the mirrors in manually or with the button.◀



Press the button.

Folding in is possible up to a speed of approx. 20 km/h, 15 mph.

Folding the mirrors in and out is useful in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ In narrow streets.

Folded-in mirrors automatically fold out when the vehicle reaches a speed of approx. 40 km/h, approx. 25 mph.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatically dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the rear-view mirror, see page 93, are used for control.

Automatic parking function, exterior mirror

Principle

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on front passenger side is tilted downwards. This improves the view of the kerb or other obstacles near the ground, for example when parking.

Activating

-  Push the switch to the driver's mirror position.
- Engage selector lever position R.

When towing a trailer, the automatic parking function is switched off.

Deactivating

- 
- Push switch to the front passenger's mirror position.

Rear-view mirror

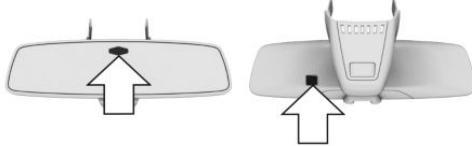
General

The rear-view mirror is dimmed automatically.

The function is controlled by photocells:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Overview

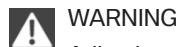


Operating requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not obstruct the zone between the rear-view mirror and the windscreen.

Steering wheel

Safety note



Adjusting the steering wheel while driving may cause the steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is at a standstill.◀

Manual gearbox: electric steering wheel lock

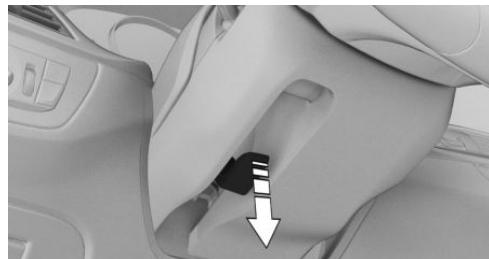


If steering wheel lock is activated, the vehicle cannot be steered. There is a danger of accidents. Switch on the standby state prior to moving the vehicle.◀

The steering wheel locks automatically when the driver door is opened.

Switch on standby state to unlock.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



- Fold the lever downwards.
- Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.

3. Swing the lever back up.

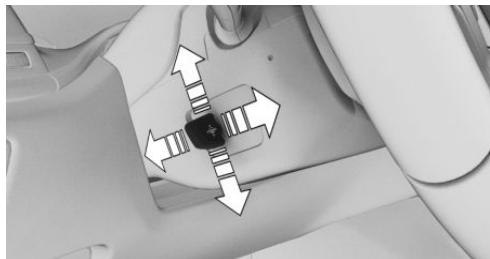
Electrical steering wheel adjustment

General

The steering wheel setting is saved for the currently used driver profile. When the drive-ready state is switched on, the position is called up automatically if the function, see page 74, for this has been activated.

The current steering wheel position can be saved with the memory function, see page 94.

Adjusting



Press the switch to adjust the steering wheel to the correct fore/aft position and height for your seating position.

Easy entry/exit

The steering wheel temporarily moves to its highest position to facilitate entry and exit.

Steering wheel heating

Overview



 Steering wheel heating

Switching on/off



Press the button.

A Check Control message is shown.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes following a temporary stop, the steering wheel heating is activated automatically if the function was switched on at the end of the last journey.

Memory function

Principle

With the memory function, the following settings can be saved and called up if required:

- ▷ Seat position.
- ▷ Exterior mirror position.
- ▷ Steering wheel position.
- ▷ Height of the Head-Up Display.

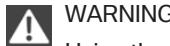
General

For each driver profile, see page 71, two memory slots can be assigned with different settings.

The following settings are not saved:

- ▷ Backrest width.
- ▷ Lumbar support.

Safety notes



WARNING

Using the memory function while driving may cause the seat or steering wheel to move unexpectedly. You could lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Only call up the memory function when the vehicle is at standstill.◀



WARNING

Risk of entrapment when moving the seats. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Before performing the setting, make sure that the movement area of the seat is clear.◀

Overview



The memory buttons are on the front doors.

Saving

1. Set the desired position.
2. **SET** Press the button. The lettering in the button is illuminated.
3. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the lettering is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Recalling

The saved position is called up automatically.

Press the desired button 1 or 2.

The operation is cancelled when you press a seat adjustment switch or press one of the memory buttons again.

Adjusting the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time during the journey.

Massage function

Principle

Depending on the programme, the massage function helps to relax the muscles and improve blood flow, and is able to avoid feelings of fatigue.

General

Eight different massage programs can be selected:

- ▷ Pelvic activation.
- ▷ Upper-body activation.
- ▷ Whole-body activation.
- ▷ Back massage.
- ▷ Shoulder massage.
- ▷ Lumbar massage.
- ▷ Upper-body training.
- ▷ Whole-body training.

Overview



Massage function

Switching on



Press the button once for each intensity level.

This highest intensity level is selected if the three LEDs are illuminated.

Switching off



Press and hold the button until the LEDs are extinguished.

Setting the massage programme

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select the desired seat.
5. "Seat massage"
6. Select the desired setting.

Seat heating

Overview

Front



Seat heating

Rear



Seat heating

Switching on



Press the button once for each temperature level.

Three bars on the climate display indicate the maximum level.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, the seat heating is automatically activated with the last temperature set.

If ECO PRO is activated, see page 285, the heating power is reduced.

Switching off



Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate display no longer illuminates.

Seat heating distribution

The heat distribution between the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be varied.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. Select a menu item:
 - ▷ "Seat heating"
 - ▷ "Seat and steering wheel heating"
 - ▷ "Seat climate control"
 - ▷ "Seat climate / steer. wheel heating"
5. If applicable, select the desired seat.
6. Press and turn the Controller to adjust the seat heating distribution.

Active seat ventilation

Principle

The seat and backrest surfaces are cooled using integrated fans.

The ventilation function cools the seat if the vehicle interior is uncomfortably hot or if continuous cooling is required when the weather is hot.

Overview



Active seat ventilation

Switching on



Press the button once for each ventilation level.

Three bars on the climate display indicate the maximum level.

After a short time, the system automatically switches down one level.

Switching off



Press and hold the button until the bar display on the climate display no longer illuminates.

Individual activation

Principle

Some heating and cooling functions can be activated automatically depending on the outside temperature.

General

The outside temperature from which the functions are to be activated automatically can be set using iDrive.

Depending on the equipment version, the following functions can be activated automatically:

- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Steering wheel heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes after a temporary stop, the functions are automatically activated with the most recent settings.

Operating requirements

- ▷ The seat belt of the corresponding seat is fastened.
- ▷ The outside temperature exceeds or falls below the set outside temperature in the first 2 minutes after drive-ready state has been switched on.
- ▷ The outside temperature exceeds or falls below the set outside temperature after the individual activation settings have been changed.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. Select a menu item:
 - ▷ "Steering wheel heating"

- ▷ "Seat heating"
 - ▷ "Seat and steering wheel heating"
 - ▷ "Seat climate control"
 - ▷ "Seat climate / steer. wheel heating"
5. Select the desired seat.
6. Select the menu item of the desired function.
7. Set the outside temperature from which the function is to be activated.
8. If applicable, set the desired level.

Carrying children safely

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

systems appropriate for their age, weight and stature. Children older than 12 years must be secured with a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system is no longer appropriate due to their age, weight and stature.

Safety note

WARNING

Children less than 150 cm, 5 ft in height cannot wear the seat belt correctly without using additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of the seat belts can be restricted or may even fail completely if the seat belts are worn incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury or even death. Children smaller than 150 cm, 5 ft in height must be secured in suitable child restraint systems.◀

Important considerations

Safety note

WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

Children always in the rear seats

General

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 12 years old or less than 150 cm, 5 ft in height are only allowed to be transported in the rear using child restraint

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Children on the front passenger seat

General

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side air bags on the passenger side are deactivated. Front passenger air bags can only be deactivated with the key switch for front passenger air bags, see page 157.

It is not possible to deactivate the front passenger air bags. For this reason, do not carry children on the front passenger seat, but in suitable child restraint systems in the rear.

Safety note

WARNING

Active front passenger air bags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are triggered. There is a danger of injury. Make

sure that the front passenger air bags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◀

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Suitable seats

Information about which child restraint systems can be used on the seats in question if the child restraint systems are attached with a

seat belt in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard:

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF-a)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle – b, c)
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months	X	U, L	U, L	U
0+	Up to 13 kg	Up to 18 months	X	U, L	U, L	U
I	9 – 18 kg	Up to 4 years	X	U, L	U, L	U
II	15 – 25 kg	Up to 7 years	X	U	U, L	U
III	22 – 36 kg	7 years or more	X	U	U, L	U

U: suitable for child restraint systems in the Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.

L: suitable for child restraint systems in the Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the list of vehicle models from the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

X: not suitable for child restraint systems in the Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.

a) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if necessary, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.

b) Only occupy the outer seats if the belt buckles are easily accessible.

c) The seat is not suitable for child seats with a support stand.

Fitting child restraints

General

Appropriate child restraint systems for every age and weight class are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another

qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Comply with the operating and safety notes from the manufacturer of the child restraint system when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

Safety notes

WARNING

If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, their protective function may be restricted or may fail completely. A child might not be adequately restrained, for example, in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres.

There is a danger of injury or even death. If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, have them checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop and renewed if necessary.◀

WARNING

If the seat adjustment or child seat installation is incorrect, the child restraint system may have limited stability or may not be stable at all. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all the relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.◀

For Australia/New Zealand: installation of child restraints

Please note the following warning because your vehicle has been equipped with a front air bag for the front passenger seat that cannot be deactivated:

 It is recommended not to use any kind of child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

! Extreme hazard

Do not use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.◀

Not for Australia/New Zealand: On the front passenger seat

Deactivating air bags

WARNING

Active front passenger air bags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are triggered. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the front passenger air bags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◀

Before fitting a child restraint on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side air bags on the passenger side are disabled.

Deactivating the front passenger air bags with key switch, see page [157](#).

Rearward-facing child restraints

! DANGER

Active front passenger air bags can fatally injure a child in a rearward-facing child restraint system if they are triggered. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that the front passenger air bags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◀



Follow the information on the front passenger sun visor.

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Seat position and height

Before installing a universal child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go, if possible, and bring it up to medium height. This seat position and height achieves the best possible routing of the belt and protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located ahead of the child seat's belt guide, carefully move the front passenger seat forwards until the best possible belt guidance is achieved.

Backrest width

With adjustable backrest width: before fitting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, fully open the backrest width. Do not change the backrest width from this point on and do not call up a memory position.

ISOFIX child seat mountings

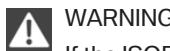
General

Note for Australia: ISOFIX child seats are not permitted for road use in Australia at the time of printing of this handbook. However, also since a change of the respective regulations is expected in the future, lower ISOFIX anchorages are supplied in line with applicable ADRs also for Australia.

Comply with the operating and safety notes from the manufacturer of the ISOFIX child restraint system when selecting, attaching and using child restraint systems.

Brackets for lower ISOFIX anchors

Safety note



WARNING

If the ISOFIX child restraint systems are not engaged correctly, the protective effect of the ISOFIX child restraint systems may be restricted. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure the lower anchor point has engaged correctly and the ISOFIX child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest.◀

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the brackets for lower ISOFIX anchor points.



The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located behind the marked covers.

Before fitting ISOFIX child restraints

Pull the seat belt away from the area of the child seat mountings.

Fitting ISOFIX child restraint systems

1. Install the child restraint system, see manufacturer's instructions.
2. Make sure that both ISOFIX anchors are locked correctly in place.

Mounts for the upper ISOFIX retaining strap

Safety notes

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective effect may be reduced. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed to the upper attachment strap over sharp edges, and that it is not twisted.◀



Depending on the equipment version, there are two or three mounting points for the upper retaining strap of ISOFIX child restraint systems.

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, for example braking manoeuvre or accident. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.◀

NOTE

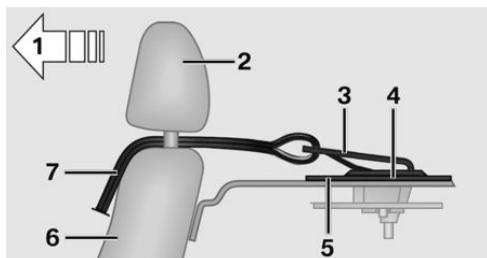
The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only intended for these retaining straps. The mounting points can be damaged if other objects are attached. There is a danger of damage to property. Only attach child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◀

Mounting points



The symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point
- 5 Rear parcel shelf
- 6 Seat backrest
- 7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Open the cover of the mounting point.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint mounts.
4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting point.

5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it firmly down.
6. Lower and lock the head restraint in place as necessary.

Suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems

The following ISOFIX child restraints may be used on the seats designated as appropriate for this purpose. The corresponding size class

and size category are denoted by a letter or ISO reference on a plate on the child seat.

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category – a)	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF– b)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle
Carrycot			F - ISO/L1 G - ISO/L2	X X	X X	X X	X X
0	Up to 10 kg	Approximately 9 months	E - ISO/R1	X	X	IL	X
0+	Up to 13 kg	Approximately 18 months	E - ISO/R1 D - ISO/R2 C - ISO/R3	X X X	X X X	IL IL IL	X X X
I	9 - 18 kg	Up to approximately 4 years	D - ISO/R2 C - ISO/R3 B - ISO/F2 B1 - ISO/F2X A - ISO/F3	X X X X X	X X X X X	IL IL IL, IUF IL, IUF IL, IUF	X X X X X

a) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat, or remove it.

b) Only if equipped with ISOFIX child seat mountings.

IL: suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in Semi-Universal category if the vehicle and the seat are listed in the vehicle type list of the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category – a)	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF– b)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle
-------	-----------------	-----------------	---------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------	-------------------

IUF: suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight class.

X: the seat is not approved or equipped with mounting points for the ISOFIX system.

i-Size child restraint systems

General

i-Size is a regulation for child restraint systems, which is used for the approval of child restraint systems.



If this symbol is seen in the vehicle, the vehicle has been approved in accordance with i-Size. The symbol shows the mounts for the system's lower anchors.



The symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

Suitable i-Size seats

Information on the suitability of the different vehicle seats for the installation of child restraint systems suitable for i-Size or meeting i-

Size requirements - in accordance with standard ECE-R 129:

Group	Front passenger seat, airbag ON	Front passenger seat, airbag OFF	Rear seats, outer 2nd seat row	Rear seat, middle 2nd seat row
-------	---------------------------------	----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

i-Size X X i-U X

i-U, suitable for rearward and forward-facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X: not suitable for i-Size child restraint systems.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Recommended child seats

Appropriate child restraint systems for every age and weight class are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the following child restraint systems:

- ▷ BMW Baby Seat Group 0+.
- ▷ BMW Junior Seat Group 1.
- ▷ ISOFIX base.
- ▷ Römer KidFix XP.

For Australia/New Zealand: Child restraints

General

In accordance with ADR 34/02, provisions have been made to allow installation of a child restraint at each rear seating position.

The anchoring hooks which belong to the upper restraining strap of the child restraint - AS 1754, can be applied immediately to the relevant mounting.

Please refer strictly to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint system.

Each seating position is fitted with a head rest.



Depending on the equipment fitted in the vehicle, there are two outer mounting points or three other mounting points for child restraints with tether straps.

Safety notes

WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle. After using the child restraints, the anchor fittings may need to be folded down.◀

WARNING

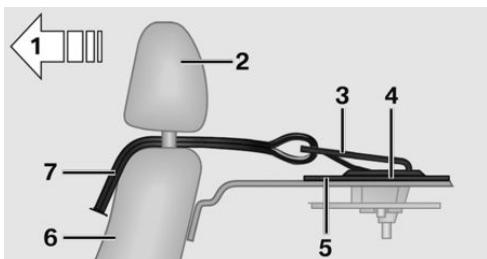
If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective effect may be reduced. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed to the upper attachment strap over sharp edges, and that it is not twisted.◀

Mounting points



The symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

Routing the retaining strap



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point
- 5 Rear parcel shelf
- 6 Seat backrest
- 7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Open the cover of the mounting point.
2. Push the head restraint up or remove it.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the head restraint mounts.

On the middle seat, guide the strap over the head restraint as needed.

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the mounting point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it firmly down.
6. Push head restraint down if necessary and lock it in place.

Securing doors and windows in the rear

General

In certain situations, for example when carrying children, it may be advisable to secure the rear doors and windows.

Doors



Push up the locking levers on the rear doors.

The door in question can now only be opened from the outside.

Safety switch for the rear



Press the button on the driver door.

Various functions are disabled and cannot be operated in the rear. Safety switch, see page 78.

Driving

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Start/stop button

Principle



The drive-ready state, see page 19, is switched on and off by pressing the start/stop button.

Steptronic transmission: the drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the start/stop button while the brake pedal is depressed.

Manual gearbox: the drive-ready state is switched on if the brake pedal is depressed when the start/stop button is pressed.

Pressing the start/stop button again switches the drive-ready state back off and the standby state, see page 19, is switched on.

Drive-ready state

Safety notes



DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odour-

less. In enclosed spaces, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.◀

NOTE

Repeated start attempts or starting several times in quick succession means that fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a danger of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.◀

Switching on drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the start/stop button.

The starting process is activated automatically for a short time and stops as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster are illuminated for different lengths of time.

Manual gearbox

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the clutch and engage idle position.
3. Press the start/stop button.

The starting process is activated automatically for a short time and stops as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster are illuminated for different lengths of time.

Diesel engine

With the engine cold and at temperatures below 0 °C, approximately 32 °F the starting operation can be delayed slightly due to automatic preheating.

A Check Control message is shown.

Petrol engine

Following switch-on with the engine cold, it takes approx. 1 minute for full drive power to be made available.



WARNING

Following switch-on with the engine cold, drive power is reduced. The vehicle does not accelerate in the usual way. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. ◀

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is switched on, the revolution counter shows the current engine speed.

Switching off drive-ready state

Steptronic transmission

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.
The engine is switched off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Manual gearbox

1. Press the Start/Stop button when the vehicle is at standstill.
The engine is switched off.
2. Engage first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Auto Start Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start Stop function helps you to save fuel. The system stops the engine when stationary, for example in a traffic jam or at traffic lights. The drive-ready state remains switched on. For driving off, the engine starts automatically.

General

Each time the engine is started via the start/stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is switched to standby. The function is activated from a speed of around 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph.

Depending on selected drive mode, see page 125, the system is activated or deactivated automatically.

Stopping the engine

Operating requirements

Steptronic transmission

The engine is automatically shut down when stationary under the following conditions:

- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Brake pedal remains pressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or vehicle is kept stationary by Automatic Hold.
- ▷ Driver's seat belt buckled or driver door closed.

Manual gearbox

The engine is automatically shut down when stationary under the following conditions:

- ▷ Gearbox in neutral and clutch pedal not pressed.
- ▷ Driver's seat belt buckled or driver door closed.

Steptronic transmission: manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle came to a stop, it can be switched off manually:

- ▷ Rapidly press the brake pedal from the current position.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position P.

If all the operating requirements have been met, the engine is shut down.

Air conditioning system when the vehicle is parked

The air flow rate of the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is not running.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General



READY

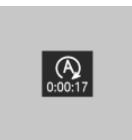
The display in the revolution counter indicates that the Auto Start Stop function is ready for automatically starting the engine.



A START STOP

The display indicates that the preconditions for an automatic engine stop are not met.

Total time for switched-off engine



ECO PRO, see page 285, drive mode: with the corresponding equipment, the total time during which the engine is shut down by the Auto Start Stop function is displayed during an automatic engine stop. After refuelling, the total time is automatically reset.

Functional restrictions

The engine is not shut down automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ On steep downward gradients.
- ▷ Brake not pressed strongly enough.
- ▷ High outside temperature and operation of the automatic air conditioning.
- ▷ Interior not heated or cooled to the desired temperature.
- ▷ Where there is a risk of condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- ▷ Engine or other parts not at operating temperature.
- ▷ Engine cooling is required.
- ▷ Sharp steering angle or steering operation.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At high altitudes.
- ▷ Bonnet is unlocked.
- ▷ Park Assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever position in N or R.
- ▷ After reversing.
- ▷ Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Engine start

Operating requirements

Steptronic transmission

For driving off, the engine automatically starts under the following conditions:

- ▷ By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ With activated Automatic Hold: press the accelerator pedal.

Manual gearbox

For driving off, the engine automatically starts under the following conditions:

- ▷ By pressing the clutch pedal.

Driving off

After starting the engine, accelerate as normal.

Safety function

After an automatic shut down, the engine will not restart automatically, if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ Driver's seat belt unbuckled and driver door open.
- ▷ Bonnet has been unlocked.

Several indicator lamps illuminate for various lengths of time.

The engine can only be started using the start/stop button.

System limits

Even if you do not want to drive off, the engine restarts automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ Very high temperature in the interior when the cooling function is switched on.
- ▷ Very low temperature in the interior when the heating is switched on.
- ▷ Where there is a risk of condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.

- ▷ The driver applies lock to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: shift from selector lever position D to N or R.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: shift from selector lever position P to N, D or R.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ Start of an oil level measurement.

Intelligent Auto Start Stop function

Depending on the equipment version and country version, the vehicle has various sensors to record the traffic situation. This enables the intelligent Auto Start Stop function to adapt to various traffic situations and, where necessary, behave in an anticipatory manner.

For example, in the following situations:

- ▷ If a situation is detected in which the duration of the stop is likely to be very short, the engine is not stopped automatically. Depending on the situation, a message is shown on the Control Display.
- ▷ If a situation is detected in which the vehicle should drive off immediately, the stopped engine is started automatically.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Manually deactivating/activating the system

Principle

The engine is not switched off automatically.

During an automatic engine stop, the engine is started.

Using the button



Press the button.

Steptronic transmission: via selector lever position

The Auto Start Stop function is also deactivated in selector lever position M/S.

Via the driver experience switch

The Auto Start Stop function is also deactivated in the SPORT drive mode of the drive experience switch.

Display

- ▷ LED illuminates: Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.
- ▷ LED is extinguished: Auto Start Stop function is activated.

Parking the vehicle during automatic engine stop

General

With automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example in order to leave it.

Steptronic transmission

1. Press the start/stop button.
 - ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
 - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
 - ▷ Selector lever position P is automatically engaged.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Manual gearbox

1. Press the start/stop button.
 - ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
 - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
2. Engage first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

General

In certain situations the Auto Start Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for example if the absence of the driver is detected.

Malfunction

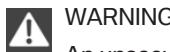
The Auto Start Stop function no longer shuts down the engine automatically. A Check Control message is shown. It is possible to keep driving. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Safety notes



WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.

- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.◀

WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

Overview



(P) Parking brake

Engaging

When the vehicle is stationary

- (P)** Pull the switch.
The LED is illuminated.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated red. The parking brake is engaged.

While the vehicle is in motion

Use during the journey serves as an emergency brake:

Pull and hold the switch. Vehicle brakes strongly for as long as the switch is pulled.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated red, a signal sounds and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is shown.

If the vehicle is braked to approximately 3 km/h, 2 mph, the parking brake is engaged.

Releasing

Releasing manually

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2. S **(P)** teptronic transmission: press the switch with the brake pressed or selector lever position P engaged.

(P) Manual transmission: press button with the brake pressed.

LED and indicator lamp turn off.

Parking brake is released.

Automatic release

The parking brake is automatically released on driving off.

LED and indicator lamp turn off.

Automatic Hold

Principle

This system provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake, for example in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

On upward gradients, rolling back is prevented when driving off.

General

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is applied automatically:

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ The driver door is opened with the vehicle at a standstill.
- ▷ The parking brake is used to brake to a standstill during the journey.

Display



The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

Safety notes

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.◀

WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

NOTE

Automatic Hold applies the parking brake when the vehicle is stationary, and prevents the vehicle from rolling away in car washes. There is a danger of damage to property. Deactivate Automatic Hold before driving into the car wash.◀

Overview



AUTO H Automatic Hold

Establishing operational readiness of Automatic Hold

1. Switch on drive-ready state.

- AUTO H** Press the button.
LED is illuminated.

AUTO H The indicator lamp illuminates green. Automatic Hold is ready to operate.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last selected setting is retained.

Automatic Hold holds the vehicle

Functional readiness is established and the driver door is closed.

When the brake is pressed, for example when stopped at traffic lights, the vehicle is automatically secured to prevent it from rolling away.



The indicator lamp illuminates green.

Driving off

To drive off, press the accelerator pedal.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator lamp extinguishes.

Automatic activation of the parking brake

The parking brake is automatically applied when the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold and the drive-ready state is switched off or the vehicle is exited.



The indicator lamp changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not applied automatically if the drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was still rolling. Automatic Hold is switched off in this case.

Switching off function readiness



Press the button.

The LED is extinguished.



The indicator lamp extinguishes.

Automatic Hold is switched off.

If the vehicle is being kept stationary by Automatic Hold, depress the brake pedal as well to switch off.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions:

After getting out, secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, for example with a chock.

After a power failure

To re-establish the functional capability of the parking brake after a power failure:

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Pull the switch with the brake pedal depressed or selector lever position P engaged and then press it.

The procedure can take a few seconds. Any sounds that occur are normal.



The indicator lamp no longer illuminates as soon as the parking brake is once again operational.

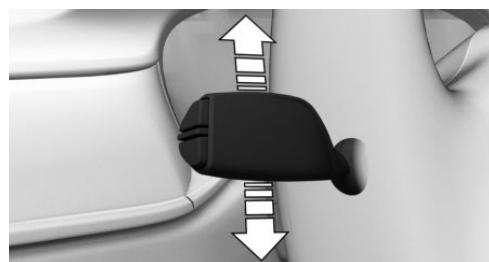
Turn indicators, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Turn indicator

Turn indicator in exterior mirror

Do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving or while operating the turn indicators or hazard warning lights to ensure that the turn indicators in the exterior mirrors are well recognisable.

Indicating



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

Triple turn signal

Briefly press the lever up or down.

The duration of the triple turn signal can be set.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

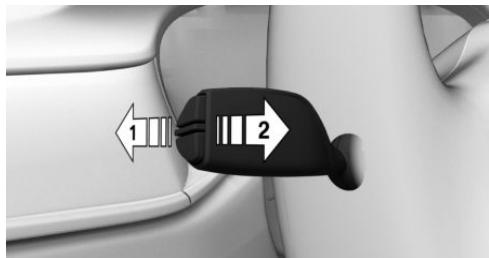
The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Indicating a turn briefly

Press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Push the lever forwards or pull it back.



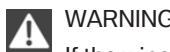
- ▷ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Wiper system

General

Do not use wipers with a dry windscreens, otherwise the wiper blades will wear or become damaged more quickly.

Safety notes



WARNING

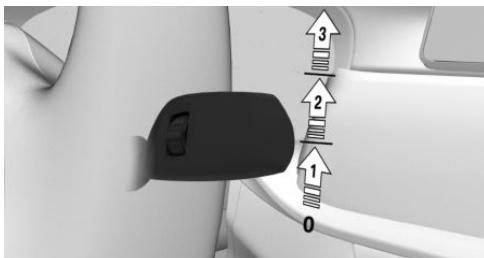
If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreens, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreens, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreens when switching on.◀



NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreens, switching on can cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a danger of damage to property. Defrost the windscreens before switching on the wipers.◀

Switching on



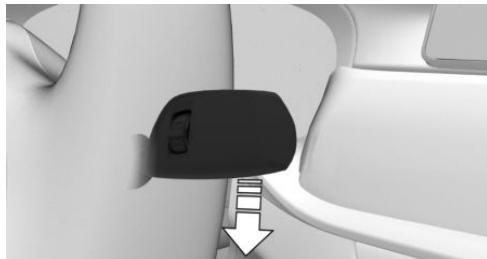
Press the lever upwards until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Rest position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to intermittent operation.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.
- When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.

If a journey is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when the journey is re-

sumed, the wipers continue operating at the previously set level.

Switching off and flick-wiping



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press lever downwards until the home position is reached.
- ▷ Flick-wiping: press lever downwards from the home position.

The lever returns to the home position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the rain intensity.

General

The sensor is mounted on the windscreen, directly in front of the rear-view mirror.

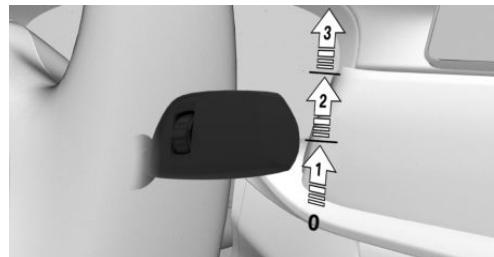
Safety note



NOTE

In car washes, the wipers may inadvertently start moving if the rain sensor is activated. There is a danger of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.◀

Activating



Press the lever upwards from the home position once, arrow 1.

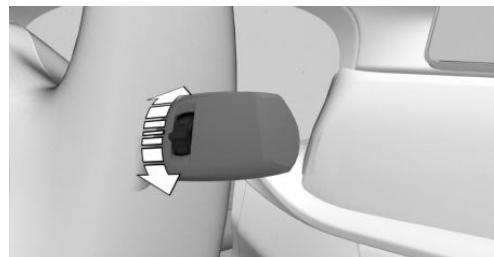
Wiping is started.

The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

Deactivating

Press the lever back into the home position.

Setting the sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the knurled wheel to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Upwards: high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Downwards: low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windscreen and headlight washer

Safety notes



WARNING

At low temperatures, the washer fluid can freeze onto the windscreen and restrict visibility. There is a danger of accidents. Only use the washer systems if there is no possibil-

ity of the washer fluid freezing. Use anti-freeze if required.◀

NOTE

If the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot operate as intended. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not use the washer system with the washer fluid reservoir empty.◀

To clean the windscreen



Pull the lever.

Fluid from the washer fluid reservoir is sprayed onto the windscreens and the wipers are operated briefly.

When the vehicle's lights are switched on, the headlights are also cleaned simultaneously at practical intervals.

Windscreen washer jets

The windscreens washer jets are automatically heated when standby state is switched on.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded away from the windscreens.

General

This is important, for example for replacing the wiper blades or folding them out in the event of frost.

Safety notes

WARNING

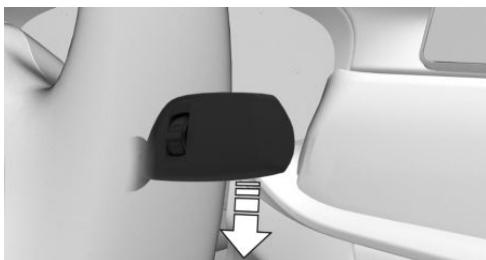
If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreens, parts of the body may become trapped or the vehicle may be damaged. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreens, and that the wipers are in contact with the windscreens when switching on.◀

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windscreens, switching on can cause the wiper blades to tear off and the wiper motor to overheat. There is a danger of damage to property. Defrost the windscreens before switching on the wipers.◀

Folding out the wipers

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press the button on the wiper lever down and hold until the wipers stop in an approximately vertical position.



- Lift wipers completely away from the windscreen.



Fold in the wipers

After folding the wipers in, the wiper system must be reactivated.

- Fold in the wipers completely onto the windscreen.
- Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.
- The wipers move back to the rest position and are operational once again.

Washer fluid

General

All washer jets are supplied from one tank. Use a mixture of tap water and screenwash concentrate for the windscreen washer, if necessary with the addition of anti-freeze.

Recommended minimum fill level: 1 litre, approximately 1.7 Imp. pints.

Safety notes

WARNING

Some anti-freezes can contain toxic substances, and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and fatal injury. Comply with the notes on the containers. Keep anti-freezes away from sources of combustion. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.◀

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite on contact with hot parts of the engine, and catch fire. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down. Then fully close the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.◀

NOTE

Additives containing silicone added to the washer fluid for their water beading effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washer system. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not add any additives containing silicone to the washer fluid.◀

NOTE

Mixing different screenwash concentrates or anti-freezes can result in damage to the washer system. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not mix different screenwash concentrates or anti-freezes. Comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers.◀

Overview



The reservoir for the washer fluid is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

Using undiluted screenwash concentrate or anti-freeze made of alcohol can lead to incorrect indications at low temperatures below -15 °C/+5 °F.

Manual gearbox

Safety notes

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

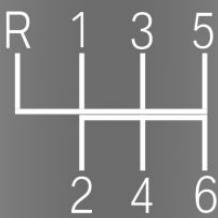
Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.◀

NOTE

When shifting into a lower gear, high engine speeds can damage the engine. There is a danger of damage to property. Push the shift lever to the right while shifting into the 5th or 6th gear.◀

Schematic diagram



- ▷ 1 – 6: forward gears
- ▷ R: reverse gear

Shifting gears

General

Depending on the engine version, the engine speed is automatically adjusted as required

during a gear shift for a harmonious and dynamic gear change.

Reverse gear

Engage this position only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance, move the shift lever firmly to the left towards the left and engage the reverse gear with a gear shift movement forwards.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power, for example in a car wash, or be pushed.

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press the clutch and change out of a forward gear or reverse.
3. Releasing the parking brake.

Steptronic transmission

Principle

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the opportunity of changing gear manually if required.

Safety note

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.

- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.◀

Selector lever positions

D drive position

Selector lever position for all normal driving. All gears for forward driving are selected automatically.

R Reverse

Only engage selector lever position R when the vehicle is stationary.

N neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle can be pushed or can roll without power from the engine, for example in car washes, see page 122.

P Park

Selector lever position for parking the vehicle, for example. In selector lever position P, the transmission blocks the drive wheels.

Only engage selector lever position P when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ After switching off drive-ready state, if selector lever position R, D or M/S is engaged.
- ▷ If, while the vehicle is at a standstill and selector lever position D, M/S or R is engaged, the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the driver door is opened and the brake is not depressed.
- ▷ After switching off standby state, if selector lever position N is engaged.

Engaging selector lever positions

General

Apply the brakes until you are ready to drive off, otherwise the vehicle will move when a drive position is selected.

Operating requirements

It is only possible to shift from selector lever position P to another selector lever position with drive-ready state switched on and the brake pedal depressed.

Engaging selector lever positions D, N, R

A selector lever lock prevents the following incorrect operation:

- ▷ Inadvertent shifting to selector lever position R.
- ▷ Inadvertent change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.
- 1. Press and hold the button to cancel the selector lever lock.



2. With the driver's seat belt fastened, briefly press the selector lever in the desired direction, possibly overcoming a resistance

point. The selector lever returns to the middle position when released.



Engaging selector lever in position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for example in a car wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing the brake.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, switch off Automatic Hold, see page 113.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Touch the selector lever lock and engage selector lever position N.
6. Switch off drive-ready state.

The standby state then remains switched on and a check-control message is shown. The vehicle will be able to roll.



NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not switch off standby state in car washes.◀

Irrespective of standby state, selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If there is a fault, it may not be possible to change the selector lever position.

Unlock the transmission lockout electronically if necessary, see page 124.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance.

Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the regular full-throttle position; resistance will be felt.

Sport program M/S

Principle

In the sport programme, the gear shift points and gear shift times are configured for more sporty driving. For example, the transmission shifts up later and the gearshift times are shorter.

Activating the sport programme



Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.

The gear selected appears on the instrument cluster, for example S1.

The sport programme of the gearbox is activated.

Exiting sport programme

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

Manual operation M/S

Principle

The gears can be changed manually in manual operation.

Activating manual operation

1. Press the selector lever from selector lever position D to the left, arrow 1.



2. Press the selector lever forwards or pull it backwards, arrows 2.

Manual operation becomes active and the gear is shifted.

The gear selected appears on the instrument cluster, for example M1.

Shifting gears

- ▶ To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.
- ▶ To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.

In certain situations, the transmission continues to shift automatically, for example when engine speed limits are reached.

Steptronic sport transmission: preventing automatic upshift in manual operation M/S

When SPORT drive mode, see page 126, is selected, the Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically shift up in manual operation M/S when certain engine speed limits are reached.

On corresponding BMW M drive configurations, this function is active independently of the drive mode.

In addition, there is no down shift for kick-down.

Exiting manual operation

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles

Principle

Shift paddles on steering wheel enable fast gearshifting without taking hands off steering wheel.

General

Gearshift

Gear shifting is only carried out at the appropriate engine RPM and vehicle speed.

Short-term manual operation

In selector lever position D, operating a shift paddle causes the system to switch to manual operation temporarily.

The gearbox reverts to automatic operation from manual operation after a certain period of time of moderate driving without acceleration or gear shifts using the shift paddles.

Changing to automatic operation is possible as follows:

- ▷ Pull and hold right shift paddle.
- ▷ In addition to briefly pulling right shift paddle, briefly pull left shift paddle.

Permanent manual operation

In selector lever position S, operating a shift paddle causes the system to switch permanently to manual operation (mode).

Steptronic sport transmission

In the corresponding gearbox version, operating the kick-down and the left shift paddle at the same time allows you to change down to the lowest possible gear. This is not possible in short-term manual operation.

Shifting gears



- ▷ Change up: pull right shift paddle briefly.

- ▷ Change down: pull left shift paddle briefly.
- ▷ Pull and hold left shift paddle to shift to the lowest possible gear.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, followed by the gear currently in use.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Unlocking the transmission lockout electronically

General

Unlock the transmission lockout electronically to manoeuvre the vehicle out of a danger area.

Unlocking is possible if the starter can turn the engine.

Before the transmission lockout is released, apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Apply the brakes and keep them applied.
2. Press the start/stop button. The starter must be heard to start turning. Press and hold the start/stop button.
3. With your free hand, press the button on the selector lever, arrow 1, push the selector lever to selector lever position N and hold it there, arrow N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is shown.



4. Release the start/stop button and selector lever.
5. Release the brake as soon as the starter stops.
6. Manoeuvre the vehicle out of the danger area and then secure it against rolling away.

For more information, see chapter Tow-starting and towing, see page [348](#).

Launch Control

Principle

When the ambient conditions are dry, Launch Control permits optimised acceleration on a road surface that offers plenty of grip.

General

Use of Launch Control causes premature component wear, as the function subjects the vehicle to very high stresses and loads.

Do not use Launch Control when running in, see page [274](#).

When starting with Launch Control, do not turn the steering wheel.

Operating requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted journey of at least 10 km, approx. 6 miles.

Starting with Launch Control

1. Switch on drive-ready state.
2.  Press the button.
TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.
3. Engage selector lever position S.
4. Press the brake firmly with the left foot.
5. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance at the full-throttle position and hold, kick-down.
A flag symbol is shown in the instrument cluster.
6. The starting engine speed is adjusted. Release the brake within 3 seconds.

Using again during a journey

Once Launch Control has been used, the transmission requires approximately 5 minutes to cool down before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adapts to the ambient conditions when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, re-activate Dynamic Stability Control, DSC as soon as possible.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Drive experience switch

Principle

The drive experience switch influences the driving dynamics characteristics of the vehicle. The vehicle can be adapted depending on the situation using various driving modes.

General

The following systems are influenced, for example:

- ▶ Engine characteristics.
- ▶ Steptronic transmission.
- ▶ Dynamic Damper Control.
- ▶ Adaptive Drive.
- ▶ Active Roll Stabilisation.
- ▶ Adaptive M suspension.
- ▶ M Dynamic Professional
- ▶ Integral Active Steering.
- ▶ Display in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Cruise Control.
- ▶ Backrest width for comfort seats.

The COMFORT or ECO PRO drive mode is automatically selected when drive-ready state is switched on.

Overview



Displays in the instrument cluster



The selected drive mode is shown in the instrument cluster.

Drive modes

Button	Drive mode	Configuration
	SPORT	INDIVIDUAL
	SPORT	
	PLUS	
	COMFORT	
	ECO PRO	INDIVIDUAL
	ADAPTIVE	

Drive modes in detail

COMFORT

Principle

Balanced configuration between dynamic and consumption-optimised driving.

Switching on

Press the button until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

Principle

Dynamic configuration for greater agility.

Switching on

Press the button until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

SPORT INDIVIDUAL

Principle

Individual settings can be made in SPORT INDIVIDUAL drive mode.

Configuring

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving Experience Control"
4. "Configure SPORT INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Damping"
 - ▷ "Steering"
 - ▷ "Engine"
 - ▷ "Transmission"
 - ▷ Manual gearbox: "Gear Shift Assistant"
When changing down, the engine speed is adapted for the gear change.
 - ▷ "Seat support for dynamic driving"

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Reset SPORT INDIVIDUAL to default setting:

"Reset to SPORT STANDARD".

SPORT PLUS

Principle

Dynamic configuration for the greatest agility with optimised suspension and adapted drive.

Switching on

 Press button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO

Principle

Consumption-optimised configuration.

Switching on

 Press the button until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Principle

Individual settings can be made in ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL drive mode.

Configuring

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving Experience Control"
4. "Configure ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the default setting:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD".

ADAPTIVE

Principle

Balanced drive mode with a configuration that automatically adapts to the driving situation and driving style.

Using the navigation system, upcoming route stages are also taken into account.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Switching on

 Press the button. ADAPTIVE is displayed in the instrument cluster.

INDIVIDUAL configuration

General

The individual configuration of the drive mode is saved for the currently used driver profile.

The configuration set last is directly activated when the drive mode is called up again.

Activating the configuration of the drive mode

Press the button of the desired drive several times.

Displays

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

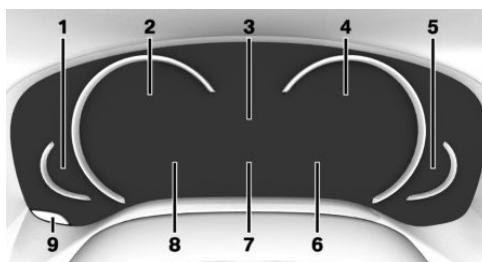
Instrument cluster

General

Depending on the equipment, changes to the displays in the instrument cluster can be deactivated via iDrive.

The displays in the instrument cluster can sometimes differ from the illustrations in this Owner's Handbook.

Overview



- 1** Fuel gauge [134](#)

Instrument cluster with extended functionality: range [135](#)

- 2** Speedometer

- 3** Time [135](#)

Outside temperature [135](#)

Displays of the Driver Assistance Systems

Service requirements [136](#)

- 4** Instrument cluster with extended functionality: revolution counter [134](#)

Instrument cluster with extended functionality: ECO PRO displays [285](#)

- 5** Engine temperature [135](#)

- 6** Navigation display

Gear indicator

Status of drive experience switch [125](#)

- 7** Check Control [130](#)

On-board computer [141](#)

- 8** Displays of the Driver Assistance Systems

Speed Limit Info [138](#)

Instrument cluster without extended functionality: range [135](#)

- 9** Reset kilometres [141](#)

Instrument cluster with extended functionality: setting the operating mode

Principle

Depending on the equipment version, the instrument cluster can also be set to three different operating modes as well as the drive modes.

Adjusting

Via iDrive:

- "My Vehicle"

- "iDrive settings"

- "Displays"

- "Instrument cluster"

- Select the desired setting.

- ▷ "STANDARD": all displays in the instrument cluster are active.
- ▷ "REDUCED": the displays in the instrument cluster are reduced to the minimum necessary.
- ▷ "INDIVIDUAL": all displays in the instrument cluster are active. Individual displays can be selected separately.

Setting INDIVIDUAL

- ▷ "Driving mode display": when the drive mode is changed to ECO PRO or SPORT, the instrument cluster automatically changes to the corresponding display.
- ▷ "Speed limit exceeded": if the speed detected by Speed Limit Info is exceeded, the exceeded area in the speedometer is marked with a red band.
- ▷ Instrument cluster with extended functionality:
"Magnifier function": the current speed is shown in large format in the speedometer.

Instrument cluster without extended functionality: selecting displays in the instrument cluster

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ With the Business navigation system:
"Navigation": display the arrow view for the navigation in the instrument cluster.
 - ▷ "Traffic signs": display Speed Limit Info.

Check Control

Principle

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the monitored systems.

General

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

If applicable, the text message shown in the Control Display is accompanied by an additional acoustic signal.

Indicator and warning lamps

Principle

Indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster show the status of some functions in the vehicle, and indicate when there is a malfunction in monitored systems.

General

Indicator and warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

When the drive-ready state is switched on, the functionality of some lights is checked and they illuminate briefly.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder



The driver's side seat belt is not fastened. For some country versions: front passenger seat belt is not fastened or objects are detected on the front passenger seat.

Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Seat belt reminder for rear seats



Seat belt on the corresponding rear seat is not fastened.

forces. The vehicle is stabilised. Decrease speed and adjust driving style to the road conditions.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Immediately have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

DSC, see page 191.

Airbag system



Airbag system and belt tensioner may be faulty.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated, or Dynamic Traction Control DTC activated



DSC is deactivated or DTC is activated.

DSC, see page 191, and DTC, see page 192.

Parking brake



The parking brake is engaged.

Releasing the parking brake, see page 113.

Runflat indicator RPA



The runflat indicator reports a loss of tyre inflation pressure in a tyre.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.

Runflat indicator, see page 318.

Brake system



Brake system malfunctioning. Continue driving at moderate speed.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM



The indicator lamp illuminates: the Tyre Pressure Monitor is reporting a low tyre inflation pressure or a flat tyre. Note the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator lamp flashes and then illuminates continuously: no flat tyres or loss of tyre inflation pressure can be detected.

► Fault due to systems or devices with the same frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Brake System, ABS



Braking force boost may be faulty.

Avoid sudden braking. Take into account that the braking distance will be longer.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking

- In the case of tyres with special approval: TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is fitted: have it checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if necessary.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page [311](#).

Steering system

-  Steering system may be faulty.
Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Emissions

-  Engine function malfunctioning.
Have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Socket for on-board diagnosis, see page [335](#).

Rear fog light

-  Rear fog light is switched on.
Rear fog light, see page [151](#).

Green lights

Seat belt reminder for rear seats

-  Seat belt on the corresponding rear seat is fastened.

Turn indicator

-  The turn indicator is switched on.
If the indicator lamp flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn signal light has failed.

Turn indicators, see page [115](#).

Side lights, driving lights

-  The side lights or driving lights are switched on.

Side lights / low-beam headlights, automatic driving lights control, see page [147](#).

Lane Departure Warning

-  Indicator lamp is illuminated: system is switched on. At least one lane marking has been detected and warnings can be issued.

Lane Departure Warning, see page [174](#).

Front fog lights

-  Front fog lights are switched on.
Front fog lights, see page [151](#).

High-beam assistance

-  High-beam assistance is switched on.
The high-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

High-beam assistance, see page [150](#).

Automatic Hold

-  Automatic Hold is activated. The vehicle is held automatically when at a standstill.

Automatic Hold, see page [113](#).

Blue lights

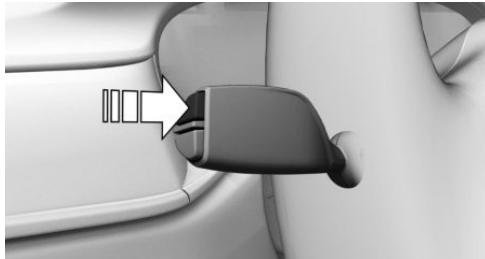
High-beam headlights



The high-beam headlights are switched on.

High-beam headlights, see page 116.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed permanently and remain until the fault has been repaired. If there are a number of malfunctions simultaneously, the messages are displayed in succession.

The messages can be hidden for approximately 8 seconds. They are then displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Some Check Control messages are automatically hidden after approximately 20 seconds. The Check Control messages remain saved and can be displayed again.

Displaying Check Control messages saved in the memory

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Check Control"
4. Select a text message.

Display

Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or saved.

Text messages

Text messages and symbols in the instrument cluster explain the meaning of a Check Control message and the indicator and warning lights.

Supplementary text messages

You can call up additional information via Check Control, for example the cause of the fault and any action required.

The supplementary text is automatically shown in the Control Display for urgent messages.

Additional assistance

It is possible to select additional assistance depending on the Check Control message.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the required text message.
5. Select the desired setting:
 - ▷ "Call BMW Accident Assistance"
Contact the BMW Group's Mobile Service.
 - ▷ "Service request"
Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
 - ▷ "BMW Roadside Assistance"
Contact breakdown assistance.
 - ▷ "Owner's Handbook"

Display additional information on the Check Control message in the integrated Owner's Handbook.

Messages displayed at the end of a journey

Certain messages displayed when driving are displayed again when the drive-ready state is switched off.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

General

The angle of the vehicle may cause the display to fluctuate.

Notes on refuelling, see page 294.

Instrument cluster without extended functionality: display



An arrow next to the petrol pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Instrument cluster with extended functionality: display



An arrow next to the petrol pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

The current range is displayed as a number.

Revolution counter

It is vital to avoid engine speeds in the red warning zone. In this zone, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

Shift Lights

Principle

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, the shift lights on the revolution counter indicate the maximum shift point at which the best possible acceleration can be achieved.

Operating requirements

Shift Lights are displayed when the SPORT or SPORT PLUS drive programme is activated.

Switching on Shift Lights

Steptronic sport transmission:

1. Select SPORT or SPORT PLUS using the drive experience switch.
2. Activate manual mode M of the gearbox.

Manual gearbox:

Select SPORT or SPORT PLUS using the drive experience switch.

Display



- ▷ Current engine speed is shown in the revolution counter.
- ▷ Arrow 1: yellow buttons lighting up successively indicate the increase in revs.

- ▷ Arrow 2: orange buttons lighting up successively indicate when an upshift is due.
- ▷ Arrow 3: buttons illuminate red. Latest point to upshift.

When the maximum permitted engine speed is reached, the entire display flashes. When the maximum engine speed is exceeded, the fuel supply is limited to protect the engine.

Standby state and drive-ready state

OFF

OFF in the revolution counter indicates that the drive-ready state is switched off and the standby state is switched on.

READY

The letters READY in the revolution counter indicate that the Auto Start Stop function is ready for automatic engine starting.

For more information, see Idle state, standby state and drive-ready state, see page 19.

Engine temperature

Display



- ▷ Cold engine: the pointer is located at a low temperature value. Drive with moderate engine speed and vehicle speed.
- ▷ Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or the bottom half of the temperature display.
- ▷ Hot engine: the pointer is located at a high temperature value. A Check Control message is also displayed.

Checking coolant level, see page 332.

Outside temperature

General

If the display drops to +3 °C/+37 °F or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is shown.

There is an increased risk of black ice.

Safety note



WARNING

Even at temperatures above +3 °C/+37 °F, there may be an increased risk of black ice, for example on bridges or on shaded roads. There is a danger of accidents. At low temperatures, adjust the driving style to the weather conditions.◀

Time

The time is shown in the instrument cluster. Setting the time and time format, see page 37.

Range

Principle

The range shows what distance can still be covered with the current amount of fuel in the tank.

General

The estimated range available with the remaining fuel is permanently displayed in the instrument cluster.

A Check Control message is displayed briefly if the remaining range is low. If a dynamic driving style is adopted, for example fast cornering, engine function is not always ensured.

If the range drops below approximately 50 km, approximately 30 miles the Check Control message is continually displayed.

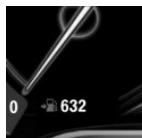
Safety note



NOTE

If the range drops below 50 km, approximately 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. Engine function is no longer ensured. There is a danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time.◀

Instrument cluster without extended functionality: display



The current range is displayed as a number in the lower area of the speedometer.

Instrument cluster with extended functionality: display



The current range is displayed as a number next to the fuel gauge.

Service requirements

Principle

The function shows the current service requirements and related maintenance jobs.

General

The distance to be driven or time to the next maintenance is displayed briefly after switching on the drive-ready state in the instrument cluster.

The current service requirements can be read out from the remote control by a service advisor.

Some information on service requirements can also be shown on the BMW display key.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More detailed information on the scope of maintenance can be displayed on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"
4. Select an entry to display more detailed information.

Symbols

Symbol	Description
	No servicing is currently needed.
	Maintenance or an inspection required by law is due soon.
	Servicing is overdue.

Entering deadlines

Enter deadlines for prescribed statutory vehicle inspections.

Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"
4. "Vehicle inspection"

5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.
7. Confirm.

The entered date is saved.

Automatic Service notification

Data on the service status or on statutory inspections for the vehicle is transmitted to the Service partner automatically when a service or inspection is imminent.

It is possible to check when the Service Partner was notified.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Teleservice Call"

Service history

Principle

Maintenance that has been performed can be displayed on the Control Display. The function is available as soon as a maintenance visit has been documented in the vehicle data.

General

Have maintenance work performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. The maintenance work carried out is recorded in the vehicle data, see page [334](#).

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
 2. "Vehicle status"
 3. "Service requirements"
 4. "Service history"
 5. Select an entry to display more detailed information.
- Performed maintenance is shown.

Symbols

Sym- bols	Description
	Green: maintenance has been carried out on time.
	Yellow: maintenance has been carried out with a delay.
	Maintenance has not been carried out.

Shift point indicator

Principle

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General

Depending on equipment and country version, the shift point indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and on vehicles equipped with the manual gearbox.

Manual gearbox: displays

Information on up or down shifting are displayed in the instrument cluster.

For vehicles without shift point indicator, the gear engaged is shown.

Example	Description
	Most efficient gear is engaged.
	Shift to a more efficient gear.

Steptronic transmission: displays

Information on up or down shifting are displayed in the instrument cluster.

For vehicles without shift point indicator, the gear engaged is shown.

Example Description



Most efficient gear is engaged.



Shift to a more efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info with overtaking restriction display

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently detected speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, valid additional signs, for example wet conditions.

General

The camera in the area of the interior rear-view mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead signs.

Road signs with additional instructions, for example applicable in wet weather, are taken into account and correlated with information in the vehicle, such as the rain sensor. The road sign and corresponding additional symbols are then displayed in the instrument cluster or ignored, depending on the situation. Some additional symbols are taken into account in the evaluation of the speed limit, but are not displayed in the instrument cluster.

The system considers the information saved in the navigation system and also displays the speed limits present on unmarked sections of road.

Speed limits for towing a trailer are not shown.

Overtaking restriction display

Principle

Overtaking restriction signs and end of restriction signs that are detected by the camera are indicated by corresponding symbols in the instrument cluster.

General

The system only considers no passing restrictions and ends of restrictions that are indicated by means of signs.

Nothing will be displayed in the following situations:

- ▷ In countries in which no passing is primarily shown by road markings.
- ▷ On routes without signage.
- ▷ In the case of railway crossings, lane markings and other situations which indicate a no passing restriction but which are not sign-posted to this effect.

No passing restrictions for towing a trailer are not shown.

Safety note

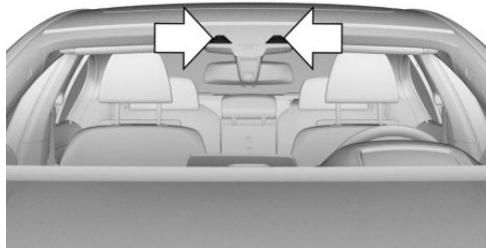


WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. ◀

Overview

Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

Displaying Speed Limit Info

General

Depending on the equipment, Speed Limit Info is displayed via the operating mode of the instrument cluster or via iDrive.

Display via operating mode of the instrument cluster

The Speed Limit Info displays are shown or hidden depending on the operating mode of the instrument cluster.

Speed Limit Info is displayed in the following operating modes: "STANDARD" or "INDIVIDUAL".

Speed Limit Info is not displayed in the following operating mode: "REDUCED".

Set operating mode of the instrument cluster, see page 129.

Display via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"

4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "Traffic signs"

Display

General

The Speed Limit Info is shown in the instrument cluster and, if applicable, in the Head-Up Display.

Supplementary signs and overtaking restrictions are displayed together when Speed Limit Info is switched on.

Depending on the equipment version, an additional symbol with distance information may also be displayed outside built-up areas to indicate that a change in speed limit is ahead.

Speed Limit Info



Present speed limit.



Speed Limit Info unavailable.



No passing restriction.



End of no passing restriction.

Wrong-way driving warning

Depending on the equipment version, the system uses navigation data and road signs, for example no entry, roundabout or keep right/left signs, as the basis for detecting whether the vehicle is driving the wrong way on motorways, roundabouts and one-way streets.

A warning is shown in the instrument cluster and, where applicable, in the Head-Up Display and an acoustic signal sounds as soon as a road is entered in the wrong direction of travel.

System limits

The function may be restricted in the following situations, for example, and it might provide incorrect information or, depending on the equipment version, issue a false wrong-way driving warning or no warning:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ If signs are fully or partially obscured by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ If the vehicle is moving too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ In the case of bright oncoming light or strong reflections.
- ▷ When the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, etc.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Possible incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system or road data are incorrect.
- ▷ In the case of speed limits that depend on the time of day or day of the week.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ If there are deviations in relation to the navigation, for example due to changes in the road routing.

- ▷ In the case of electronic road signs.
- ▷ When overtaking buses or trucks with road sign stickers.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If signs are detected that apply to a parallel road.
- ▷ In the case of country-specific signs or road layouts.

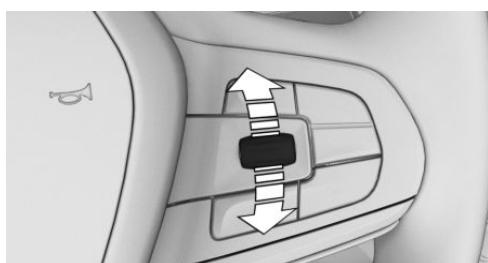
Selection lists

General

Depending on the equipment installed, the following can be operated and displayed via the buttons and knurled wheel on the steering wheel and the displays in the instrument cluster and Head-Up Display:

- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Telephone redial.

Activating the list and entering a setting



Depending on equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

1. Turn the knurled wheel and select the required setting.
2. Press the knurled wheel.

Display



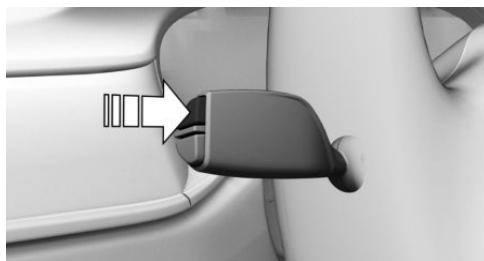
Depending on equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustration.

On-board computer in the instrument cluster

Principle

The on-board computer shows various vehicle-related data, such as average values, in the instrument cluster.

Calling up information



Press the button on the turn indicator lever.

Information is displayed in the instrument cluster. Further information is displayed by repeated pressing.

Overview of the information

The following information can be displayed using the on-board computer:

- ▷ Kilometres and trip odometer.
- ▷ Arrival time and distance to destination.

When route guidance is activated in the navigation system.

- ▷ Consumption display.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption and average speed.

Selecting information for the on-board computer

It is possible to select whether some items of information from the on-board computer can be called up in the instrument cluster:

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. "On-board computer"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Detailed information

Odometer and trip distance recorder

Display/reset kilometres

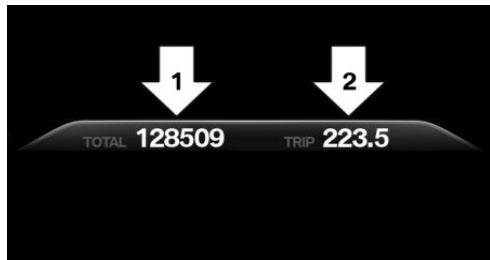


- ▷ Press the knob to display the trip distance.

When drive-ready state is switched off, the total distance covered and trip distance are displayed.

- ▷ Keep the knob pressed down to reset the trip distance.

Display



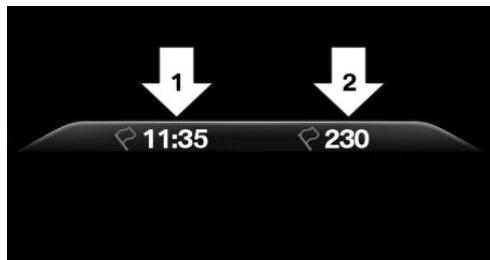
- ▷ Odometer, arrow 1.
- ▷ Trip distance recorder, arrow 2.

Arrival time and distance to destination

General

The expected arrival time and remaining distance to the destination are displayed if a destination was entered in the navigation system before starting the journey.

Display



- ▷ Arrival time, arrow 1.
- ▷ Distance to destination, arrow 2.

Consumption display

Principle

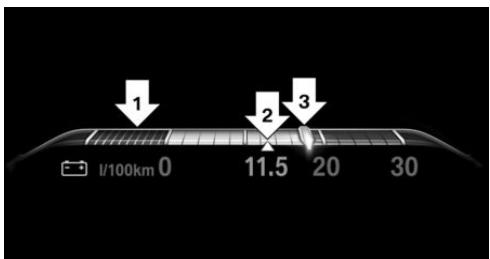
Energy recuperation involves converting the kinetic energy of the vehicle into electrical energy in overrun mode. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be lowered.

The current fuel consumption indicates how much fuel is currently being used. It is possible to check the economy and environmental compatibility of your driving style.

General

The energy recuperation and current fuel consumption can be displayed on the on-board computer in the form of a bar display.

Display



- ▷ Energy recuperation, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption, arrow 2.
- ▷ Current fuel consumption, arrow 3.

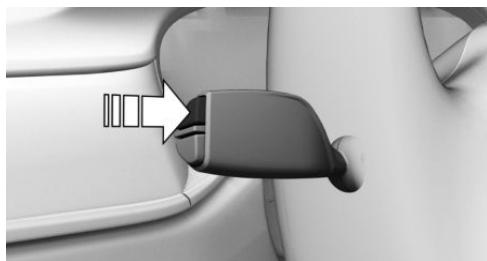
Average speed and average fuel consumption

General

The average speed and average consumption are calculated on the route travelled since the on-board computer was last reset.

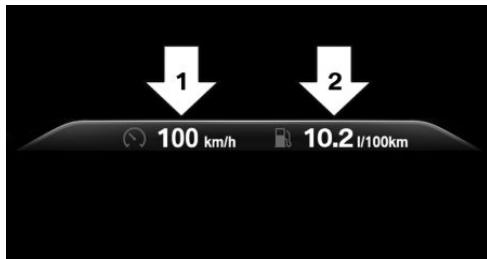
The calculation of average speed ignores any stationary periods where the engine was switched off manually.

Resetting average values



Press and hold the button on the turn indicator lever.

Display



- ▷ Average speed, arrow 1.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption, arrow 2.

On-board computer on the Control Display

Principle

The on-board computer shows various vehicle-related data, such as average values, on the Control Display.

General

Two types of on-board computer are available on the Control Display:

- ▷ "On-board computer": average values such as the consumption are displayed. The values can be reset individually.

- ▷ "Trip computer": values provide an overview of a particular route, and can be reset as often as required.

Calling up the on-board computer or trip computer

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "On-board computer" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the on-board computer

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "On-board computer"
4. "Consumption" or "Speed"
5. "OK"

Resetting the Trip computer

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip computer"
4. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left.
 - ▷ "Reset": all values are reset.
 - ▷ "Reset automatically": all values are reset if the vehicle is at a standstill for approximately 4 hours.
5. If necessary, "OK"

Sport displays

General

On the Control Display the current values for performance and torque are shown if the vehicle is appropriately equipped.

Displays

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Sport displays"

Speed warning

Principle

A speed limit can be set which triggers a warning when it is reached.

General

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below 5 km/h/3 mph.

Displaying, setting or altering the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Warning at:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Speed warning"
5. Press the Controller.

Setting the current speed as the speed warning

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Select current speed"
5. Press the Controller.

Vehicle status

General

The status can be displayed or actions performed for some systems.

Calling up the vehicle status

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"

Overview of the information

- ▷ "Flat Tyre Monitor": status of the run-flat indicator, see page 318.
- ▷ "Tyre Pressure Monitor": status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 311.
- ▷ "Engine oil level": electronic oil level check, see page 328.
- ▷ "AdBlue": BMW Diesel with BluePerformance, see page 297.
- ▷ "Check Control": Check Control messages are stored in the background and can be shown on the Control Display. Displaying of saved Check Control messages, see page 133.
- ▷ "Service requirements": display of the service requirements, see page 136.
- ▷ "Teleservice Call": Teleservice Call.

Head-Up Display

Principle

The system projects important information, such as the speed, into the driver's field of vision.

The driver can register this information without having to divert attention from the road.

General

Follow the instructions on cleaning the Head-Up Display, see page 355.

Overview



Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed in the Head-Up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list in the instrument cluster.

- ▷ Driver Assistance Systems.

Some of this information is only shown briefly when needed.

Selecting the view

Various views are available in the Head-Up Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "STANDARD": all displays in the Head-Up Display are active.
 - ▷ "REDUCED": the displays in the Head-Up Display are reduced to the minimum necessary.
 - ▷ "INDIVIDUAL": all displays in the Head-Up Display are active. Individual displays such as Check Control messages can be selected individually.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Selecting displays in the Head-Up Display

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "INDIVIDUAL"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Adjusting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient light.

The base setting can be adjusted manually.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The brightness of the Head-Up Display can also be adjusted with the instrument lighting if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Adjusting the height

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the Controller until the desired height is obtained.
7. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

The height of the Head-Up Display can also be saved with the memory function, see page 94.

Adjusting the rotation

The image of the Head-Up Display can be rotated around its axis.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Rotation"

6. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached.
7. Press the Controller.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the display on the Head-Up Display can be affected by the following:

- ▷ Certain seat positions.
- ▷ Objects placed on the Head-Up Display cover.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters.
- ▷ Wet road.
- ▷ Unfavourable lighting conditions.

If the picture is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Special windscreen

The windscreen constitutes part of the system.

The shape of the windscreen enables a sharp image to be projected.

A film in the windscreen prevents double images occurring.

For this reason, it is highly recommended for the special windscreen to be renewed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if required.

Lights

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Overview

Switch in the vehicle



The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Lights off. Automatic driving lights control. Daytime driving lights.
	Side lights.
	Automatic driving lights control. Adaptive light functions.
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.
	Parking light, right.
	Parking light, left.

Side lights, low-beam headlights and parking light

General

Switch position: , ,

If the driver door is opened when drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lights are switched off automatically.

Side lights

Switch position:

The vehicle is illuminated all round.

You should not leave the side lights on for extended periods of time, since the vehicle bat-

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog light.
	Front fog lights.
	Night Vision, see page 170.

ter could discharge and it may no longer be possible to switch on the drive-ready state.

Low-beam headlights

Switch position: 

The low-beam headlights illuminate if the drive-ready state is switched on.

Parking lights

When parking the vehicle, it is possible to switch on a parking light on one side.

Button	Function
	Parking light, right on/off.
	Parking light, left on/off.

Welcome lights and headlight courtesy delay feature

Welcome lights

General

Depending on the equipment version, the exterior lights of the vehicle can be individually adjusted.

Activating/deactivating

Switch position:  , 

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.

▷ "Welcome lights"

Individual light functions are switched on for a limited time.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General

If the high-beam headlights are activated with standby state switched on, the low-beam headlights remain on for a certain amount of time.

Setting the duration

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Home lights"
6. Select the desired setting.

Automatic driving lights control

Principle

Depending on ambient brightness, the system switches the low-beam headlights on or off automatically, for example in a tunnel, at twilight and in rain or snow.

General

The headlights may also come on when the sun is sitting low in a blue sky.

Activating

Switch position:  , 

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

System limits

The automatic driving lights control is no substitute for your individual judgement of when it is necessary to switch on the lights.

The sensors are unable, for instance, to recognise fog or hazy weather. In such situations, switch on the lights manually to avoid any safety risk.

Daytime driving lights

General

Switch position: 

The daytime driving lights illuminate if the drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating

In some countries daytime driving lights are compulsory, in which case the daytime driving lights cannot be deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Dynamic ECO light function

General

The brightness of the low-beam headlights is reduced, depending on the speed and distance from the vehicle in front.

Activating

Switch position: 

Activating ECO PRO drive mode, see page 127.

Adaptive light functions

Principle

Adaptive light functions enable dynamic illumination of the road.

General

The adaptive light functions consist of one system or multiple systems depending on the equipment version:

- ▷ Adaptive Headlights, see page 149.
- ▷ Variable light distribution, see page 149.
- ▷ Cornering light, see page 150.
- ▷ Roundabout light, see page 150.

Activating

Switch position: 

The adaptive light functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Headlights

The beams from the headlights follow the road ahead in response to the steering angle and other parameters.

So as not to dazzle oncoming vehicles, the Adaptive Headlights do not swivel to the opposite side of the road when stationary.

If the headlights are converted, see page 152, Adaptive Headlights may only function to a limited extent.

Variable light distribution

Principle

The variable light distribution enables even better illumination of the carriageway.

General

The light distribution is automatically adapted to the speed.

If equipment includes a navigation system, the light distribution is automatically adapted depending on the navigation data and speed.

City light

The illuminated area of the low-beam headlights is extended on the sides.

Motorway beam pattern

The illumination width of the low-beam headlights is expanded.

Cornering light

In sharp turns up to a specified speed, for example in hairpin bends or when turning off, a cornering light is added that illuminates the inside area of the bend.

The cornering light is activated automatically depending on the steering angle or use of the turn indicators.

The cornering light may be activated automatically when driving in reverse, irrespective of the steering angle.

Roundabout light

Shortly before driving onto a roundabout, the cornering light on both sides is switched on.

The edge of the road is better illuminated.

Shortly before leaving a roundabout, the cornering light on both sides is switched off again.

Adaptive headlight beam throw adjustment

The adaptive headlight beam throw adjustment compensates for acceleration and braking manoeuvres to prevent on-coming traffic from being dazzled and to ensure optimum illumination of the road.

High-beam assistance

Principle

The high-beam assistance detects other road users in advance and activates or deactivates the high beam depending on the traffic situation.

General

High-beam assistance ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on when the traffic situation allows. The high-beam headlights are not switched on by the system in the low speed range.

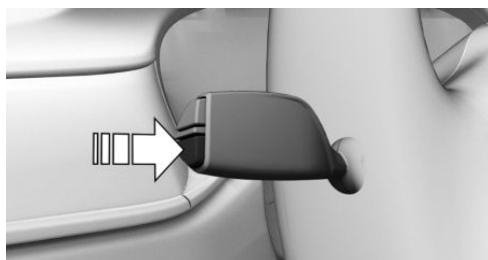
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate lighting, for example in built-up areas.

The high-beam headlights can be switched on and off at any time as usual.

If the vehicle is equipped with dazzle-free high-beam assistance, the high-beam headlights are not switched off for oncoming vehicles; instead, the areas of the beam that would otherwise dazzle the oncoming traffic are masked off. In this case, the blue indicator lamp continues to illuminate.

If the headlights are converted, see page 152, high-beam assistance may only function to a limited extent.

Activating/deactivating



Switch position:

Press the button on the turn indicator lever.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The system will switch automatically between low-beam and high-beam headlights.



The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates if the high beam is switched on by the system.

The high-beam assistance is deactivated by manually switching the high beams on and off, see page 116.

To reactivate high-beam assistance, press the button on the turn indicator lever.

System limits

High-beam assistance cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgement of when to use the high-beam headlights. Therefore activate the dipped headlights manually if the situation requires it.

In the following situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be impaired and your intervention may be required:

- ▷ During extremely unfavourable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists or horseback riders or carts, and when trains or ships are close to the road, or when animals are crossing the road.
- ▷ On narrow bends, on steep hilltops or in depressions, when there is crossing traffic or if the view of oncoming vehicles on a motorway is obstructed.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns or where there are high reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.

Fog lights

Front fog lights

Principle

The fog lights work alongside the low-beam headlights to illuminate a wider area of the roadway.

Operating requirements

Before the fog lights are switched on, the side lights or low-beam headlights must be switched on.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The green indicator lamp illuminates if the fog lights are switched on.

If automatic driving lights control, see page 148, has been activated, the low-beam headlights illuminate automatically when the front fog lights are switched on.

Guiding fog lights

Switch position: 

The light distribution of the low-beam headlights is adapted to the foggy conditions up to a speed of 110 km/h, approx. 68 mph.

Rear fog light

Operating requirements

Before the rear fog light is switched on, the low-beam headlights or the fog lights must be switched on.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The yellow indicator lamp illuminates if the rear fog light is switched on.

If automatic driving lights control, see page 148, has been activated, the low-beam

headlights switch on automatically when the rear fog light is switched on.

Left-hand/right-hand traffic

General

When driving in countries where vehicles drive on the opposite side of the road to your vehicle's country of registration, you will need to prevent your headlights from dazzling oncoming vehicles.

LED headlights, Adaptive Headlights

General

Light distribution of the headlights prevents the dipped-beam headlights from dazzling other road users even when driving in a country where vehicles drive on the other side of the road to your vehicle's country of registration.

Adaptive Headlights

When driving in countries which drive on the other side of the road to your vehicle's country of registration, do not drive with the switch in position  . Otherwise, the variable light distribution may result in a blinding effect.

Adaptive LED headlights

Switching over the headlights

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Right-hand/left-hand traffic"
6. Select the desired setting.

System limits

The high-beam assistance may only function to a limited extent.

The availability of the adaptive light functions might be restricted.

Instrument lighting

Operating requirements

The brightness can only be adjusted when the side lights or the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Adjusting



The brightness can be set using the knurled wheel.

Interior light

General

Depending on equipment, the interior light, the footwell lights, door entry lighting, ambient lighting and loudspeaker lighting are controlled automatically.

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Interior light



Reading lights

Switching the interior light on/off



Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press and hold the button for approximately 3 seconds.

The interior light in the rear can be switched on and off independently. The button is located on the roof lining in the rear.

Switching the reading lights on/off



Press the button.

Depending on the equipment version, there are reading lights located at the front and in the rear beside the interior light.

Ambient lighting

General

Depending on the equipment, the lighting for some of the interior lights can be set.

If the ambient light was deactivated using iDrive, it is not switched on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Switching on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Ambient light"

The selected setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Selecting the colour scheme

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Colour"
6. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

Dimmed during the journey

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Dimmed for night driving"

The lighting in the interior is dimmed for certain lights during journeys in the dark.

The selected setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Bowers & Wilkins Diamond Surround Sound System

General

Some speakers in the vehicle are illuminated. The brightness can be set individually.

The loudspeaker lighting is switched off when the loudspeakers are muted.

Switching on/off

The loudspeaker lighting is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Bowers & Wilkins"

The selected setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Adjusting the brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lights"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

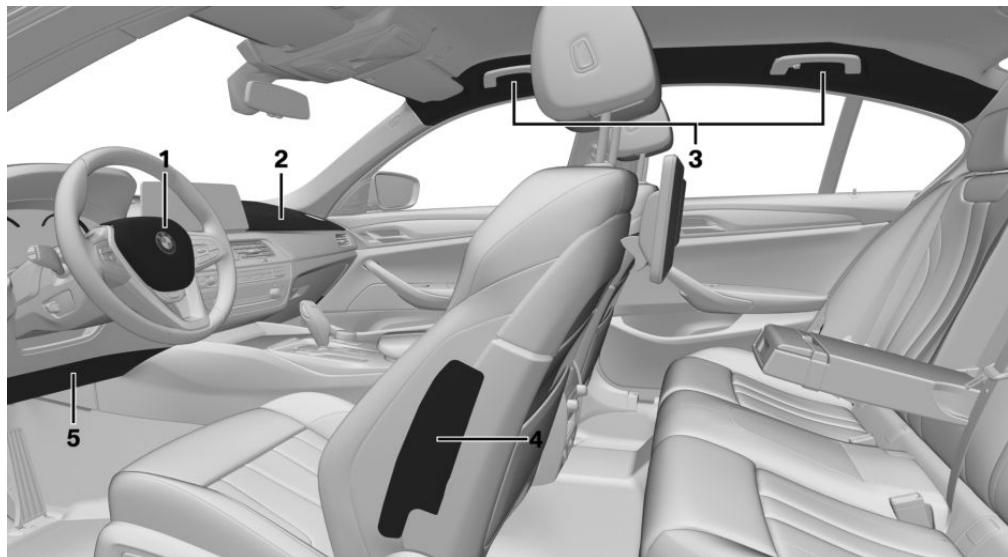
Safety

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on

account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Air bags



- 1 Front airbag, driver
 - 2 Front airbag, front passenger
 - 3 Head airbag
- 4 Side airbag
 - 5 Knee airbag

Front air bags

Front air bags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision where the protection of the seat belts alone would no longer be sufficient.

Side airbag

In a side-on crash, the side airbag supports the body at the side in the chest and pelvic area.

Head air bag

The head air bag supports the head in the event of a side-on crash.

Knee airbag

Depending on the equipment version:

The knee airbag supports the legs in the event of a head-on collision.

Protective effect

General

Air bags are not activated in every collision, for example in minor accidents and rear-end collisions.

Notes on achieving optimum airbag effectiveness

WARNING

If the seat position is wrong or the deployment area of the airbag is restricted, the airbag system cannot provide the intended protection, or may cause additional injuries when it deploys. There is a danger of injury or even death. Observe the following to achieve optimum protective effect:◀

- ▶ Keep your distance from the air bags.
- ▶ Always grip the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Place your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injury to hands or arms when the airbag deploys.
- ▶ Make sure that the front-seat passenger is sitting correctly, in other words with feet or legs in the footwell, not resting them on the dashboard.
- ▶ Make sure that vehicle occupants keep their head away from the side airbag.
- ▶ Do not position any other persons, animals or objects between the air bags and persons.
- ▶ Keep the dashboard and windscreen in the area of the passenger's side free, for example do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for navigation devices or mobile telephones.

- ▶ Do not attach anything to the airbag covers with adhesive; never cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▶ Do not use the front airbag cover on the front passenger's side as a tray.
- ▶ Covers, seat covers, cushions or other objects not specifically suitable for seats with integral side air bags must not be fitted to the front seats.
- ▶ Do not hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests.
- ▶ Do not modify individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and seats.
- ▶ Do not dismantle the airbag system.

Even if all these notes are complied with, depending on the circumstances in which an accident occurs, certain injuries as a result of contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out.

The noise caused by the deployment of an airbag may lead to temporary hearing loss for vehicle occupants sensitive to noise.

Operational readiness of the air bag system

Safety notes

WARNING

Individual components of the airbag system can be hot after airbag deployment. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.◀

WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental deployment of the airbag system. If there is a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended in an accident, in spite of the accident being of the appropriate severity. There is a danger of injury or even death. Have the airbag system tested, repaired or removed and dis-

posed of by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

Display in the instrument cluster



When the drive-ready state is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster briefly illuminates in order to show the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioners.

Malfunction



- ▷ The warning lamp does not illuminate after the drive-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ Warning lamp is permanently illuminated. Have the system checked.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Key switch for front passenger air bags

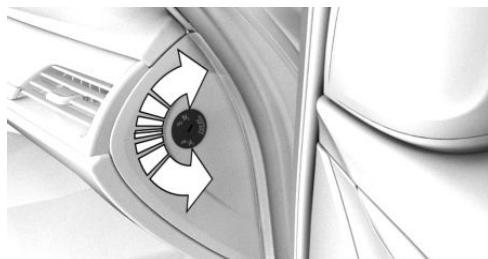
Principle

When a child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, the front and side air bags on the front passenger side can be deactivated using the key switch for front passenger air bags.

General

The front and side air bags for the front passenger can be deactivated and reactivated using the integrated key from the remote control.

Overview



The key switch for front passenger air bags is located on the outside of the dashboard.

Deactivating the front passenger air bags



1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the OFF position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the air bags are deactivated.

The front passenger air bags are deactivated. The driver's air bags remain active.

If a child restraint system is no longer fitted in the front passenger seat, reactivate the front passenger air bags so that they are triggered as intended in the event of an accident.

The airbag status is displayed on the indicator lamp on the roof lining, see page 158.

Activating the front passenger air bags



1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the ON position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the end position so that the air bags are activated.

The front passenger air bags are reactivated and can deploy correctly if the need arises.

Indicator lamp for front passenger air bags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger air bags in the roof lining shows the operating status of the front passenger air bags.

After switching on the drive-ready state, the light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the air bags are activated or deactivated.

Display	Function
PASSENGER ON AIR BAG	If the front passenger airbag is activated, the indicator lamp illuminates for a short period and then extinguishes.
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF	When front passenger air bags are deactivated, the indicator lamp remains illuminated.

Active pedestrian protection

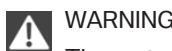
Principle

With the active pedestrian protection system, the bonnet is raised if the vehicle's front end collides with a pedestrian. Sensors underneath the bumper are used for detection.

General

When the pedestrian protection system is triggered, it creates deformation space underneath the bonnet for the subsequent head impact.

Safety notes



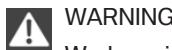
WARNING

The system can trigger inadvertently if contact is made with individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not touch individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks.◀



WARNING

Changes to the pedestrian protection system can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the pedestrian protection system. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not modify individual components of the pedestrian protection system or its wiring in any way. Do not dismantle the system.◀



WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the system. If there is a malfunction, the system might not trigger as intended in an accident, in spite of the accident being of the appropriate severity. There is a danger of injury or even death. Have the system tested, repaired or removed and disposed of by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀



WARNING

If the system has triggered or is damaged, its functions will be restricted, or will no longer work at all. There is a danger of injury or even death.

If the system has triggered or is damaged, have it checked and renewed at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀



NOTE

Opening the bonnet when the pedestrian protection system has triggered can result in damage to the bonnet or the pedestrian protection. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not open the bonnet after the Check Control message is displayed. Have a check performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

System limits

The active pedestrian protection system is only triggered at speeds between approximately 30 km/h, approximately 18 mph and 55 km/h, approximately 34 mph.

For safety reasons, the system may also trigger in rare instances where impact with a pedestrian cannot be excluded beyond all doubt, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ Collision with objects such as a skip or a boundary post.
- ▷ Collision with animals.
- ▷ Stone impact.
- ▷ Driving into a snow drift.

Malfunction



A Check Control message is shown.

The system has been triggered or is faulty.

Immediately drive at moderate speed to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist work-

shop to have the system checked and repaired.

Intelligent Safety

Principle

Intelligent Safety enables Driver Assistance Systems to be operated centrally.

General

Depending on equipment, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems which can help to avoid the risk of a collision.

- ▷ Front-end collision warning with light braking function, see page 161.
- ▷ Avoidance assistant, see page 165.
- ▷ Person warning with City light braking function, see page 167.
- ▷ Night Vision with person and animal recognition, see page 170.
- ▷ Lane Departure Warning, see page 174.
- ▷ Lane Change Warning, see page 177.
- ▷ Side collision warning, see page 181.
- ▷ Road priority warning, see page 185.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a dan-

ger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

Switching on/off

Several Intelligent Safety Systems are active automatically at the start of each journey. Several Intelligent Safety Systems are active depending on the last setting.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

 Press the button:
The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.
If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.
"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the currently used driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

 Press the button repeatedly. The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions, for example setting for warning time.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button:
All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Front-end collision warning with light braking function

Principle

The system can help avoid accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision and brakes automatically, as necessary.

General

The system is controlled by a camera.

If radar sensors are fitted, the front-end collision warning is additionally controlled by the radar sensor of the Cruise Control.

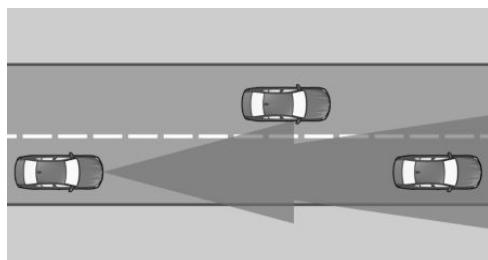
Junction warning if radar sensors are fitted: an additional warning is given at junctions and T-junctions if there is a risk of collision with crossing traffic.

The front-end collision warning is also available if the Cruise Control is disabled.

When deliberately approaching a vehicle, the front-end collision warning and braking intervention are activated later to avoid unjustified system responses.

The system will provide a warning from approximately 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph, in two stages of any possible risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Detection range



Objects detected by the system are taken into account.

Junction warning: vehicles that cross the vehicle's direction of travel can also be detected by the system as soon as these vehicles enter the detection range of the system.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a danger of accidents.

Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◀

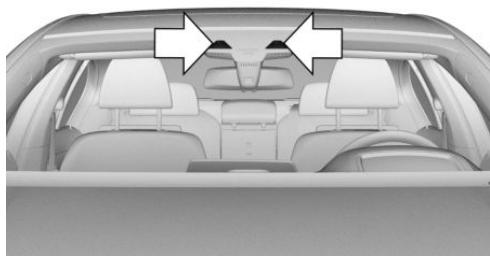
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

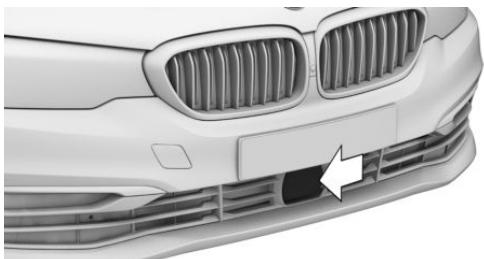
Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

With Active Cruise Control: radar sensor



The radar sensor is in the lower area of the front bumper.

Keep the radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the currently used driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Collision warning"
5. Select the desired setting.

The selected time is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.
	Crossing traffic warning: Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning in the case of vehicles crossing your own direction of travel.
	Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Advance warning

An advance warning is shown, for example if a danger of collision is anticipated or there is a very short distance to a vehicle ahead.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an advance warning.

Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is shown in the event of an immediate collision risk if the vehicle approaches another object with high differential speed.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an advance warning. If necessary, the system can assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

Brake intervention, City braking function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene actively. When the brake is operated during a warning, the maximum braking force is applied.

This requires the brake pedal to be depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly.

The system can also assist by braking the vehicle automatically if there is a risk of a collision.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a stop.

Manual gearbox: when the vehicle is braked to a stop, the engine may shut off.

Brake intervention takes place up to approximately 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

Braking can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The detection of objects can be restricted. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional restrictions.

With radar sensor and Active Cruise Control: brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene actively. When the brake is operated during a warning, the maximum braking force is applied. This requires the brake pedal to be depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly.

In addition, the system may also support with automatic braking if there is the risk of a collision.

The vehicle can be braked until it comes to a stop.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

At speeds above approx. 210 km/h, 130 mph, the braking intervention takes the form of a brief jolt. There is no automatic deceleration.

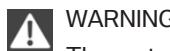
Braking can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Junction warning: if vehicles are crossing, there is no brake intervention.

The detection of objects can be restricted. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional restrictions.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

Upper speed limit

At speeds over approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph, the system is temporarily disabled. As soon as the speed drops back below this value, the system reacts once again according to its settings.

Junction warning: the system reacts to crossing vehicles if your own speed is below approx. 65 km/h, approx. 40 mph.

Detection range

The detection ability of the system is limited.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

It is possible that the following are not detected, for example:

- ▷ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.
- ▷ With junction warning: crossing vehicles if their speed is higher than your own.

Functional restrictions

The function may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreens in front of the rear-view mirror is dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: if the radar sensors are soiled or covered.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ When there is sustained glare effect due to oncoming light, for example the sun is low in the sky.

Sensitivity of the warnings

The greater the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings will be displayed. As a result, there may be an increased number of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

Avoidance assistant

Principle

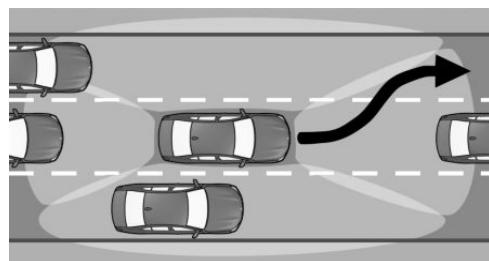
The system supports the driver in certain situations when there is a need to avoid something, for example obstacles that appear suddenly.

General

The system issues warnings and intervenes to provide support if there is a possibility to per-

form an evasive manoeuvre to the side. Sensors monitor and detect the space around the vehicle. The system then utilises the detected free space to perform the avoidance manoeuvre by steering the vehicle safely and precisely in the direction specified by the driver.

Detection range



Objects detected by the system are taken into account.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

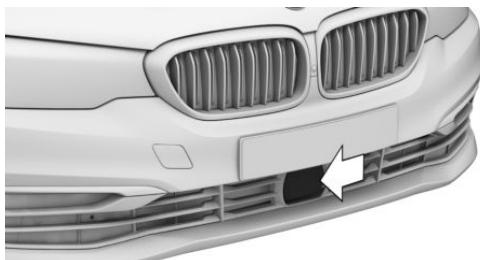
WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



Front bumper in middle.



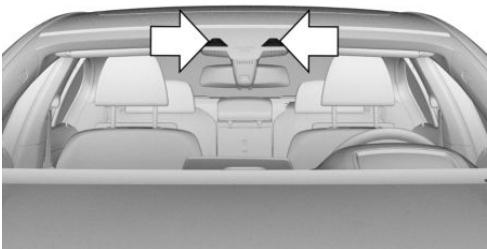
Front bumper at side.



Rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Front-end collision warning with braking function, see page 161, is switched on.
- ▷ The sensors detect adequate space around the vehicle.

Switching on/off

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Warning with avoidance assistance

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Brake and increase the distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Acute warning with avoidance assistance

An acute warning is shown in the event of an immediate collision if the vehicle approaches an object with high differential speed.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an advance warning. The system provides support for the driver's evasive manoeuvres if there is a risk of collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

Detection range

The detection ability of the system is limited.

For this reason, the system may fail to respond or only respond after a delay.

It is possible that the following are not detected:

- ▷ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends.

- ▷ When Driving Stability Control Systems are limited or deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreens in front of the rear-view mirror is dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: if the radar sensors are soiled or covered.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ When there is sustained glare effect due to oncoming light, for example the sun is low in the sky.

Person warning with City light braking function

Principle

The system can help to avoid accidents with pedestrians.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision with pedestrians in the urban speed range and provides assistance with a braking function.

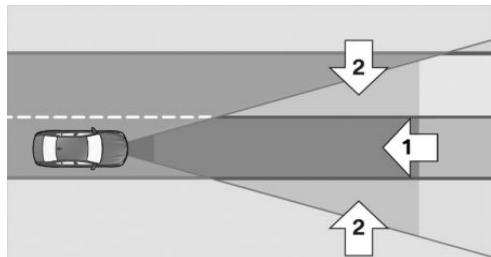
General

The system is only active at speeds between approximately 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph, up to approximately 65 km/h, approximately 40 mph.

Persons are taken into account if they are located within the detection range of the system.

The system is controlled by the camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.

Detection range



The detection zone in front of the vehicle consists of two parts:

- ▷ Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Extended zone, arrow 2, to the right and left of central area.

There is a risk of collision if persons are in the central zone. A warning is only given of persons in the extended zone if they are moving towards the central zone.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◀

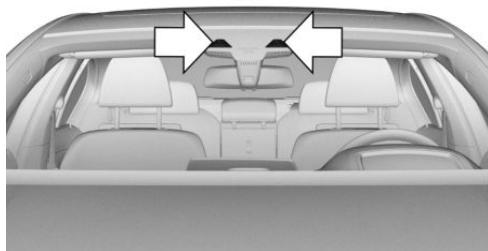
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the currently used driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Warning with braking function

Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.



A red symbol is displayed and an acoustic warning sounds.



Alternatively, with the corresponding equipment, a red warning triangle illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Take action yourself immediately, by braking or swerving.

Brake intervention

The warning prompts the driver to intervene actively. When the brake is operated during a warning, the maximum braking force is applied. This requires the brake pedal to be depressed sufficiently quickly and firmly.

In addition, the system can support with brake intervention if there is the risk of a collision.

At low speeds, the vehicle can be braked to a stop.

Manual gearbox: when the vehicle is braked to a stop, the engine may shut off.

The brakes are only applied if driving stability has not been impaired, for example by deactivation of Dynamic Stability Control DSC.

Braking can be discontinued either by depressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

The detection of objects can be restricted. Take into account the detection range limits and the functional restrictions.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

Detection range

The detection capacity of the camera is limited.

As a result, the system may fail to give warnings or may give warnings late.

It is possible that the following are not detected, for example:

- ▶ Partially concealed pedestrians.
- ▶ Pedestrians who are not detected as such, because of the viewing angle or outline.
- ▶ Pedestrians outside the detection range.
- ▶ Pedestrians less than approximately 80 cm, 32 in tall.

Functional restrictions

The function may be available on a limited basis in some situations, for example:

- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ On sharp bends.
- ▶ If vehicle stability control systems are deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreens in front of the rear-view mirror is dirty or covered.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.

- ▶ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▶ When there is sustained glare effect due to oncoming light, for example the sun is low in the sky.
- ▶ In the dark.

Night Vision with person and animal recognition

Principle

Night Vision with person and animal recognition is a night vision system.

An infrared camera records the area in front of the vehicle and warns of people and animals on the road. Warm objects with a shape similar to human beings or animals are detected by the system. The thermal image can be shown in the Control Display as needed.

Depending on equipment, the detected objects are illuminated with the Dynamic Marker Light, see page 173, for better detection.

General

Thermal image



The heat radiated by objects in the camera's field of view is shown.

Warm objects are shown light and cold objects dark.

The recognition depends on the temperature differential in relation to the background and on the natural heat radiation of the object. Ob-

jects with a low temperature difference in relation to the environment or low heat radiation can only be detected to a limited degree.

For safety reasons, from speeds of approximately 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph, and in low ambient light, the image is only shown when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

A still image is intermittently displayed for a fraction of a second.

Person and animal recognition



The object detection and warning system only operates in the dark.

Warm objects with a shape similar to human beings and sufficient heat radiation are detected.

The system also detects animals of a certain size, such as deer.

Image on the Control Display with thermal image switched on:

- ▷ Persons detected by the system: in light yellow.
- ▷ Animals detected by the system: in dark yellow.

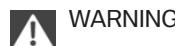
Detection range of object detection, under good ambient conditions:

- ▷ Person recognition: up to approximately 100 m, 330 ft.
- ▷ Recognition of larger animals up to approximately 150 m, 490 ft.
- ▷ Recognition of animals of average size: up to approximately 70 m, 230 ft.

Environmental influences can restrict the availability of object detection.

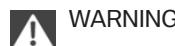
If the vehicle systems detect that the vehicle is in a built-up area, animal detection is temporarily switched off.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle

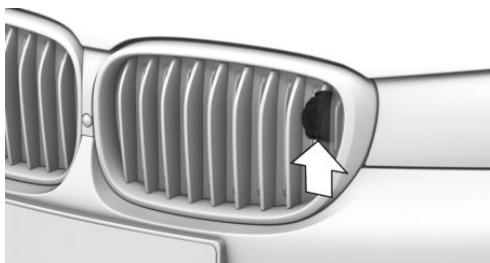


Intelligent Safety



Thermal image

Camera



At low outside temperatures, the camera is automatically heated.

With the vehicle's lights switched on, the camera lens is cleaned at certain intervals when the windscreen washer system, see page 117, is operated.

Switching on

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey in the dark.

Switching on the thermal image

In addition to the warning function, the thermal image of the Night Vision camera can be displayed on the Control Display. This function has no effect on object detection.



Press the button.

The camera image is displayed on the Control Display.

Adjusting the thermal image

When the thermal image is switched on, it is possible to adjust the brightness and contrast.

Via iDrive:

1. Select brightness or contrast.
 - ▷ ☼ "Brightness".
 - ▷ ☽ "Contrast".
2. Set the desired value.

Warning function

Display

Symbol	Meaning
	Person warning.
	Animal warning.
System illuminates red.	Advance warning.
Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds.	Acute warning.
	With the corresponding equipment, a red warning triangle illuminates or, alternatively, flashes in the instrument cluster.

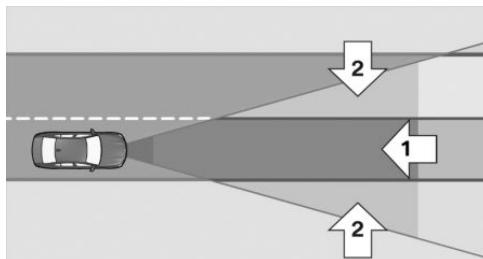
The displayed symbol may vary and shows the side of the carriageway on which the person or animal has been detected.

Warning in the case of persons or animals in danger

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person or animal, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Although the shape and heat radiation are evaluated, false alarms cannot be ruled out.

Warning zone in front of the vehicle



The warning zone for the person warning consists of two parts:

- ▷ Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Extended zone, arrow 2, to the right and left of central area.

For animal warnings, no distinction is made between the central or extended zone.

The entire zone follows the direction of the vehicle according to the steering angle and changes with vehicle speed. As vehicle speed increases, the range becomes longer and wider, for example.

Advance warning

Advance warning for persons is displayed if a person is detected in the central zone directly in front of the vehicle or to the right and left in the extended zone.

Advance warning for animals is displayed if an animal is detected in front of the vehicle.

In the event of an advance warning, brake or take evasive action.

Acute warning

Acute warning is displayed if a person or an animal is detected in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle.

In the event of an acute warning, immediately brake or take evasive action.

Display in the Head-Up Display

The warning is displayed simultaneously in the Head-Up Display and in the instrument cluster.

Dynamic Marker Light

General



In addition to the warning, detected objects are illuminated with the Dynamic Marker Light.

The Dynamic Marker Light is available from a speed of approx. 20 km/h, 12 mph.

The object is illuminated until it is no longer in the warning zone.

The indicator lamp for the high-beam headlights is illuminated when the Dynamic Marker Light is activated.

The Dynamic Marker Light is a component of the LED headlights.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Light switch in position:
- ▷ Low-beam headlights or high-beam headlights are illuminated.
- ▷ No light sources or illuminated road users in the warning zone.

Activating/deactivating

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Dynamic Marker Light"

Switching off temporarily

Operate the headlight flash while the Dynamic Marker Light is illuminated. The Dynamic Marker Light is switched off for the current warning.

System limits

Basic limits

The function may be available on a limited basis in some situations, for example:

- ▷ On steep crests or dips and on tight bends.
- ▷ If the camera is dirty or damaged
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ At very high outside temperatures.

Limits of person and animal recognition

In some situations, it is possible that persons are recognised as animals and animals as persons.

Small animals are not detected by object recognition, even if they can be clearly seen in the image.

Detection may be limited in the following circumstances, for example:

- ▷ Where persons or animals are partly or wholly concealed, in particular their head.
- ▷ Where persons are not standing upright, for example if they are lying down.
- ▷ Cyclists on non-conventional cycles, for example recumbent cycles.
- ▷ If the system has been physically damaged, for example after an accident.

Lane Departure Warning

Principle

The Lane Departure Warning issues a warning if the vehicle leaves its lane on a road with lane markings.

General

This camera-based system warns once a minimum speed has been reached.

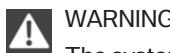
The minimum speed is country-specific and is displayed in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The strength of the steering wheel vibration can be adjusted. The timing of this warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not issue a warning if the driver indicates before leaving the driving lane.

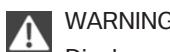
Vehicles with side collision warning: if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system intervenes not only by vibrating but also with a brief active steering intervention. The system thereby helps to keep the vehicle in lane.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to estimate the course of the road and traffic situation. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. In the event of a warning, do not move the steering wheel with unnecessary force.◀



WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Operating requirements

The lane markings must be detected by the camera in order for the Lane Departure Warning to be active.

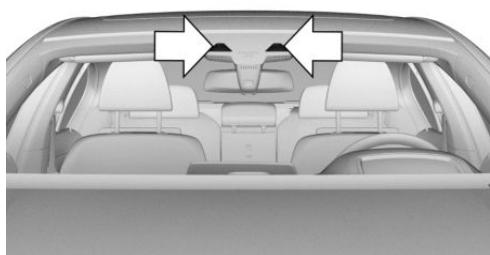
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The Lane Departure Warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the currently used driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
--------	--------



Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.



Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.



Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the frequency of the warnings

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Lane departure warning"
5. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Always": the system issues a warning whenever a hazardous situation is detected.
 - ▷ "Reduced": depending on the situation, some warnings are suppressed, for example during overtaking manoeuvres without using turn indicators or when deliberately crossing driving path lines on bends.
 - ▷ "Off": no warnings are given.

The selected setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Steering wheel vibration"
4. Select the desired setting.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems, and saved for the currently used driver profile.

Vehicles with side collision warning: steering intervention on/off

Steering intervention can be separately switched on and off for Lane Change Warning or Lane Departure Warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"

3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Steering intervention"

The selected setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Display in the instrument cluster



The symbol is illuminated green: at least one lane marking has been detected and warnings can be issued.

Warning function

When leaving the lane

If the vehicle leaves the lane and the lane marking is detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

If the turn indicator is set before changing lanes, no warning is issued.

With side collision warning

If a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 210 km/h, 130 mph, the system intervenes not only by vibrating but also with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps to keep the vehicle in lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

When towing a trailer

There is no steering intervention when the trailer socket is in use, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier.

Cancellation of the warning

The warning is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after approximately 3 seconds.
- ▷ On returning to the correct lane.
- ▷ When braking heavily.

- ▷ On indicating.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.

- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

System limits

Safety note

WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

Functional restrictions

The function may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

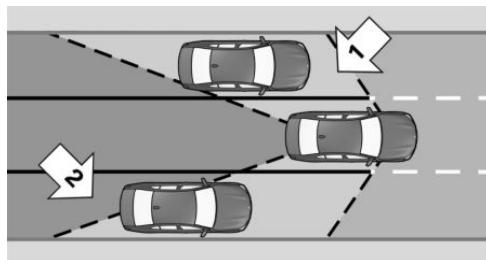
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ With missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous boundary lines, for example in areas where there are road works.
- ▷ If boundary lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the boundary lines are not white.
- ▷ If boundary lines are obscured.
- ▷ If the vehicle is moving too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ When there is sustained glare effect due to oncoming light, for example the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreens in front of the rear-view mirror is dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.

Lane Change Warning

Principle

The Lane Change Warning detects vehicles in the blind spot, or if vehicles are approaching from behind in the adjacent lane. A warning is issued in various gradations in these situations.

General



From a minimum speed, two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle.

The minimum speed is shown in the menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems.

The system indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot, arrow 1, or are approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The light in the exterior mirror illuminates at a dimmed level.

Before changing lanes with the turn indicator switched on, the system issues a warning in the above situations.

The light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Vehicles with side collision warning: at speeds between 70 km/h, approximately 45 mph, and 210 km/h, approximately 130 mph, the system

can respond with a brief active steering intervention and thus help to return the vehicle to its lane.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The Lane Change Warning is reactivated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the currently used driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

 Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button Status

 Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.

 Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

 Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

The setting is accepted for all Intelligent Safety Systems, and saved for the currently used driver profile.

Vehicles with side collision warning: steering intervention on/off

Steering intervention can be separately switched on and off for Lane Change Warning or Lane Departure Warning.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Steering intervention"

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror



Advance warning

The dimmed light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in the blind spot or are approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

If the turn indicator is set while a vehicle is in the critical area, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

The warning is terminated when the turn signal is cancelled or the other vehicle has left the critical area.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Lane change warning"
5. Select the desired setting.
"Off": no warning is output for this setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Adjusting the strength of the steering wheel vibration

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Steering wheel vibration"
4. Select the desired setting.

With side collision warning

At speeds between 70 km/h, approx. 45 mph, and 210 km/h, approx. 130 mph, if there is no response to vibration of the steering wheel and the lane marking is crossed, the system responds with a brief active steering intervention. The steering intervention helps to return the vehicle to its lane. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

Flashing of the light

When the vehicle is unlocked, the system performs a self-test by flashing the light.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

Upper speed limit

At speeds over approx. 250 km/h, approx. 155 mph, the system is temporarily disabled.

At speeds below approx. 250 km/h, 155 mph, the system once again responds according to the setting.

Functional restrictions

The function may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than that of your own speed.
- ▶ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▶ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▶ If the bumper is dirty, iced over or covered, for example by stickers.

- ▶ When a projecting load is being transported.

In vehicles with side collision warning, the steering intervention may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ If there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous boundary lines, for example in areas where there are road works.
- ▶ If boundary lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▶ If the boundary lines are not white.
- ▶ If boundary lines are obscured.
- ▶ If the vehicle is moving too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▶ When there is sustained glare effect due to oncoming light, for example the sun is low in the sky.
- ▶ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is dirty or covered.
- ▶ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▶ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▶ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

The system cannot be switched on when the trailer socket is occupied, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Warning displays

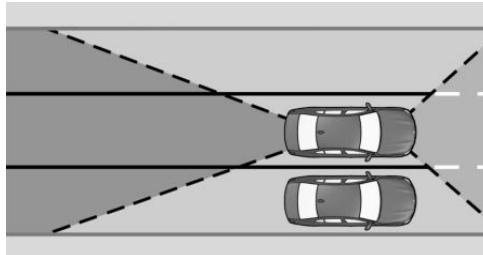
Depending on the selected setting for warnings, for example the warning time, it is possible for more warnings to be displayed. As a result, there may be an increased number of premature warnings about critical situations.

Side collision warning

Principle

The system helps to avoid potential side collisions.

General



In the speed range from approximately 70 km/h, approximately 45 mph to approximately 210 km/h, approximately 130 mph, four radar sensors in the bumpers monitor the area adjacent to the vehicle.

A front camera detects the position of the lane markings.

If another vehicle is detected adjacent to the vehicle, for example with the potential of a side collision, the system helps the driver to avoid a collision with a steering intervention.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incor-

rectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Operating requirements

The lane markings must be detected by the camera in order for the side collision warning to be active.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



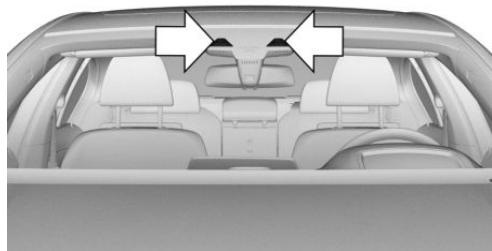
Front bumper.



Rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The side collision warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the currently used driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.

Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.

Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.

Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Warning function

Light in the exterior mirror



If there is a risk of collision

In the event of imminent collision danger, the light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel starts vibrating. If the speed of the approaching vehicle is very much higher than that of your own vehicle. Steering intervention can be felt at the steering wheel, and can be overridden manually at any time.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

Functional restrictions

The function may be restricted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than that of your own speed.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced over or covered, for example by stickers.

- ▷ When a projecting load is being transported.
- ▷ If there are missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous boundary lines, for example in areas where there are road works.
- ▷ If boundary lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ If the boundary lines are not white.
- ▷ If boundary lines are obscured.
- ▷ If the vehicle is moving too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ When there is sustained glare effect due to oncoming light, for example the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.

A Check Control message is displayed in the event of limited functionality.

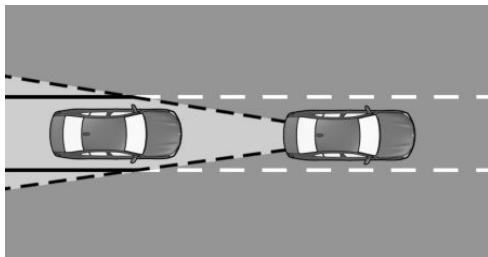
The system cannot be switched on when the trailer socket is occupied, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier. A Check Control message is shown.

Prevention of rear collision

Principle

The system reacts to vehicles approaching from behind.

General



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

If a vehicle is approaching from behind at appropriate speed, the system responds as follows:

- ▷ The hazard warning lights are switched on to warn the traffic behind if there is potential for a rear collision.
- ▷ Active Protection, see page 188: if a collision appears unavoidable, pre-crash functions are triggered.

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

The system is deactivated in the following situations:

- ▷ When reversing.
- ▷ If the trailer socket is occupied, for example when operating with a trailer or bicycle carrier.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

System limits

The function may be restricted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the speed of the approaching vehicle is significantly higher than that of your own speed.
- ▷ If the approaching vehicle is travelling slowly.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced over or covered, for example by stickers.
- ▷ When a projecting load is being transported.

Road priority warning

Principle

The system provides support in situations where the signs indicate that the driver must give way.

A warning is given if a right-of-way is about to be violated in the following traffic situations, for example:

- ▷ At a junction.
- ▷ At a T-junction.
- ▷ On a slip road.
- ▷ At a roundabout.

General

The system uses a camera to evaluate the road signs.

The navigation system forwards information regarding the route to the system.

The system warns in the road speed range of 10 km/h, approx. 6 mph to 65 km/h, approx. 40 mph in two stages:

- ▷ Advance warning: visually by means of a warning symbol in the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Acute warning: visually by means of a warning symbol in the instrument cluster and with an additional acoustic signal.

The timing of the warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation and the set warning time.

The following road signs are taken into account for the road priority warning:

Sign	Meaning
	Give way signs: These signs trigger an advance warning.
	Stop signs: These signs trigger an advance warning and an acute warning.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

Displays and warnings do not relieve you of personal responsibility. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued or are issued too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Operating requirements

The road priority situation must be unambiguously indicated with road signs.

It may not be possible to use the system in all countries.

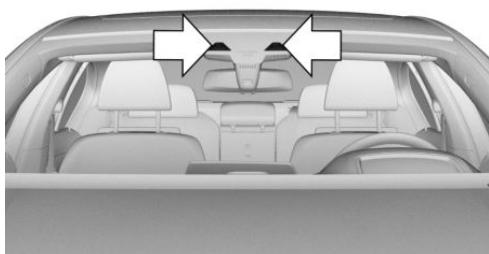
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety

Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The road priority warning is activated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on the last time the engine was stopped.

Switching on/off manually

Press the button.

The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown.

If all Intelligent Safety Systems were switched off, all systems are now switched on.

"Configure INDIVIDUAL": depending on equipment, the Intelligent Safety Systems can be configured individually. The individual settings are activated and saved for the currently used driver profile. As soon as a setting is changed in the menu, all settings in the menu are activated.



Press the button repeatedly.

The setting switches between the following:

"ALL ON": all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on. Basic settings are activated for the sub-functions.

"INDIVIDUAL": the Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on according to the individual settings.

Some Intelligent Safety Systems cannot be switched off individually.



Press and hold the button.

All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Button	Status
	Button illuminates green: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
	Button illuminates orange: some Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.
	Button does not illuminate: all Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.

Setting the warning time

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"

3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Give way warning"
5. ▷ "Early"
- ▷ "Medium"
- ▷ "Late": only acute warnings are displayed.
- ▷ "Off": no warnings are displayed.

Select the desired setting.

The selected setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Warning function

Advance warning

If there is a risk that road priority is about to be ignored, one of the following signs appears in the instrument cluster:

Sign	Meaning
	Give way.
	Stop.

In the event of an advance warning, brake or take evasive action.

Acute warning

If there is a serious risk that road priority is about to be ignored, an acoustic signal sounds and the following sign is displayed in the instrument cluster:

Sign	Meaning
	Stop.

In the event of an acute warning, immediately brake or take evasive action.

Display in the Head-Up Display

Depending on the equipment version, the warning is displayed in the Head-Up Display at the same time as in the instrument cluster.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

No Warning

The system provides no warning in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In road priority situations without 'Give Way' or 'Stop' signs.
- ▷ At junctions with active light signal systems, for example traffic lights.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ If the road signs are ambiguous.
- ▷ If the road signs are fully or partially covered or soiled.
- ▷ If the road signs are poorly visible or twisted.

- ▷ If the road signs are too small or too large.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ At steep crests/hilltops or dips.
- ▷ In tight bends.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windscreens in front of the rear-view mirror is dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the camera has overheated and been temporarily switched off due to excessively high temperatures.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ When there is sustained glare effect due to oncoming light, for example the sun is low in the sky.
- ▷ In the case of navigation data that is invalid, outdated or not available.

Dynamic brake lights

Principle

The brake lights flash to warn road users behind your vehicle that you are performing an emergency braking manoeuvre. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General



- ▷ Normal braking: brake lights illuminate.
- ▷ Heavy braking: brake lights flash.

- Shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated.
- To switch off the hazard warning lights:
- ▷ Accelerate.
 - ▷ Press the hazard warning lights button.

Active Protection

Principle

In critical driving or collision situations, Active Protection prepares the vehicle occupants and the vehicle for a potential imminent accident.

General

Active Protection consists of different Pre-Crash functions which may vary depending on the equipment installed.

The system detects critical driving situations which could potentially lead to an accident. Such situations include:

- ▷ Full braking.
- ▷ Severe understeering.
- ▷ Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of some systems can lead to triggering of Active Protection within the limits of the system:

- ▷ Front-end collision warning with braking function: automatic brake application.
- ▷ Front-end collision warning with braking function: braking force assistance.
- ▷ Night Vision with person and animal recognition: braking force assistance.
- ▷ Prevention of rear collision: detection of potential rear collisions.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility. Critical situations cannot be detected reliably or in good time.

due to limitations of the system. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Function

If fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are automatically tensioned when driving off.

In critical accident situations, the following individual functions become active as required:

- ▷ Automatic pre-tensioning of the front seat belts.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the windows, leaving just a small gap.
- ▷ Automatic closing of the glass roof, including the sun guard.
- ▷ With comfort seat in the front: automatic positioning of the backrest of the front passenger seat.

If the critical driving situation passes without an accident occurring, the front seat belts are released again.

If the belt tension does not loosen automatically, stop the vehicle and unfasten the seat belt using the red button on the buckle. Fasten the seat belt again before continuing your journey.

All other systems can be restored to the desired setting.

PostCrash – iBrake

Principle

The system can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill in certain accident situations without the involvement of the driver. The risk of a further collision and its consequences can thereby be reduced.

At a standstill

After the vehicle has come to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a standstill more quickly.

To do this, for a short time the braking pressure applied when stepping on the brake pedal must be higher than the braking pressure achieved by the automatic braking function. The automatic braking process is interrupted as a result.

Cancelling automatic braking

In certain situations, it may be necessary to cancel automatic braking, for example for an evasive manoeuvre.

Cancel automatic braking:

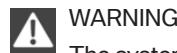
- ▷ By depressing the brake pedal.
- ▷ By depressing the accelerator pedal.

Attentiveness assistant

Principle

The system can detect decreasing attentiveness or tiring of the driver on long monotonous journeys, for example on motorways. In this situation, it is recommended that you take a break.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess your physical condition. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or may not be detected in good time. There is a danger of accidents. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.◀

Function

The system is switched on every time drive-ready state is switched on.

After commencement of the journey, the system is adapted to the driver so that an decrease in attention or fatigue can be detected.

This process considers the following criteria:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for example, steering.
- ▷ Driving conditions, for example, time of day, duration of drive.

The system is active from approx. 70 km/h, 43 mph and can also display a recommendation to take a break.

Recommendation to take a break

Switching on/off, adjusting

The attentiveness assistant is automatically active every time drive-ready state is switched on and can thus display break recommendations.

Break recommendations can also be switched on or off and adjusted via iDrive.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Attentiveness Assistant"
4. Select the desired setting.
 - ▷ "Off": no break recommendation is issued.
 - ▷ "Standard": the break recommendation is issued with a defined value.
 - ▷ "Sensitive": the break recommendation is issued earlier.

Display

If the driver's attention drops or she/he becomes tired, a note is shown on the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

The following settings can be selected during the display:

- ▷ "Do not ask again"
- ▷ "Places to stop"
- ▷ "Remind me later"

The break recommendation is repeated after 20 minutes.

After a break, another break recommendation cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes at the earliest.

System limits

The function may be restricted in situations such as the following and an incorrect warning, or no warning at all, may be output:

- ▷ If the time is set incorrectly.
- ▷ When the speed is predominantly below approx. 70 km/h, 43 mph.
- ▷ If a sporty driving style is adopted, for example sharp acceleration or fast cornering.
- ▷ In active driving situations, for example frequent lane changes.
- ▷ In poor road conditions.
- ▷ In strong crosswinds.

The system is reset approximately 45 minutes after the vehicle is stopped, for example when taking a break during a long motorway journey.

Driving Stability Control Systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Anti-lock Brake System, ABS

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied.

Steering control is retained even in the event of full braking, thereby enhancing active road safety.

ABS is ready to operate each time the engine is started.

Brake assist

When the brake pedal is depressed quickly, the system automatically applies maximum braking power assistance. With full braking, this keeps the braking distance as short as possible. It also makes full use of the advantages offered by the Anti-lock Brake System ABS.

The pressure on the brake should be maintained for the duration of the full-braking process.

Adaptive brake assist

In conjunction with Active Cruise Control, this system ensures that the brake responds even more quickly when braking in critical situations.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The system provides support when driving off on upward gradients.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle in place by depressing the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

The vehicle is held for approximately 2 seconds after the foot brake has been released.

Depending on the vehicle's load or when towing a trailer, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC

Principle

The system reduces engine output and applies the brakes on individual wheels, helping, within the limits imposed by the laws of physics, to keep the vehicle safely on course.

General

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- ▷ Loss of traction at the rear which can lead to oversteer.

- Loss of grip of the front wheels which can lead to understeer.

To assist driving stability, re-activate DSC as soon as possible.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently in an appropriate manner in all traffic conditions. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with a roof rack, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with a roof load.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Deactivate/activate DSC

General

Driving stability during acceleration and cornering is restricted if DSC is deactivated.

Deactivating DSC



Hold the button down until DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Activating DSC



Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamps are extinguished.

Display

In the instrument cluster

DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster when DSC is deactivated.

Indicator and warning lamps



If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC is deactivated.



If the indicator lamp is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces.

If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DSC has failed.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC

Principle

DTC is a variant of Dynamic Stability Control DSC and is optimised for forward momentum.

In particular road conditions, for example roads on which snow has not been cleared or unconsolidated ground, the system ensures maximum forward momentum but with somewhat limited driving stability.

General

Activating DTC provides maximum traction. Driving stability during acceleration and cornering is limited.

Activating DTC may be useful in the following situations:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ If the vehicle has to be rocked out of or started in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- ▷ Driving with snow chains.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF

Activate/deactivate DTC

Activating DTC



Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.

Deactivating DTC



Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light are extinguished.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster

When DTC is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Indicator and warning lamps



If the indicator lamp is illuminated: DTC has been activated.

Automatic programme change

In certain situations, there is an automatic switch to "DSC ON":

- ▷ If Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC is activated.
- ▷ On a braking intervention by the Intelligent Safety Systems.
- ▷ In the event of a flat tyre.

xDrive

Principle

xDrive is the four-wheel drive system of the vehicle. The interaction between xDrive and Dynamic Stability Control DSC further optimises traction and driving dynamics. xDrive distributes the drive forces variably between the front and rear axles according to the driving situation and road surface conditions.

Integral Active Steering

Principle

Integral Active Steering is a combination of a variable steering ratio and rear-wheel steering.

The variable steering ratio amplifies the steering angle when manoeuvring, thus making the steering more direct. The rearwheel steering increases manoeuvrability at low speeds by turning the rear wheels slightly in the opposite direction to the front wheels.

At higher speeds, the rear wheels are turned in the same direction as the front wheels. This results in, for example better directional stability and a more harmonious change of direction.

In critical driving situations, for example over-steer, Integral Active Steering can stabilise the vehicle through selective steering of the rear wheels before the driver intervenes.

General

The system offers various configurations.

Drive mode	Integral Active Steering
COMFORT	Comfortable, for optimum travel comfort
ECO PRO	
SPORT	Dynamic, for higher agility

The different configurations are assigned to the different drive modes of the drive experience switch, see page [125](#).

Operation with snow chains

Rear-wheel steering is deactivated when snow chains, see page [311](#), are installed.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, the driver will be required to turn the steering wheel further, whilst at high speeds, the vehicle responds more sensitively to steering wheel movements.

The stabilising function may be deactivated.

Drive cautiously and think well ahead.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Driver Assistance Systems

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Manual Speed Limiter

General

The system enables speeds of 30 km/h/20 mph and above to be set as a speed limit. Below the set speed limit, the vehicle can be driven without restriction.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	System on/off.
	Rocker switch: Changing the speed limit, see page 195.

Operation

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit.

When switching on when at a standstill or driving at low speed, 30 km/h/20 mph is set as the speed limit.

The speedometer marker is set to the corresponding speed.

When activating the speed limit it is possible that Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be switched on and the drive mode switched to COMFORT.

Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

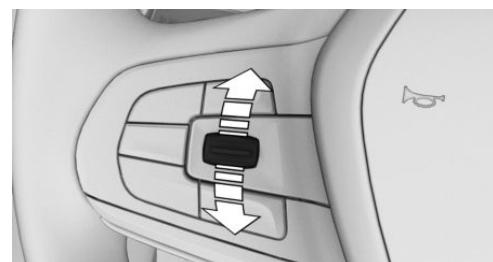
- ▷ When switching the engine off.
- ▷ When switching on Cruise Control.
- ▷ When activating some programs using the drive experience switch.

The displays turn off.

Interrupting

The system is interrupted when reverse gear is engaged or the transmission is in neutral.

Change speed limit



Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed limit is set.

- ▷ Every time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the speed limit changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

If the set speed limit has been reached or unintentionally exceeded, for example when driving downhill, there is no active brake intervention.

If you set a speed limit while driving which is below the current speed, the vehicle coasts down to the set speed limit.

Vehicles with Active Cruise Control ACC and Speed Limit Assist, see page 206: a change in the speed limit detected by Speed Limit Assist can be adopted for the Speed Limiter as a new speed limit.

Exceeding the speed limit

The system gives a warning if the travelling speed exceeds the set speed limit.

You can intentionally exceed the speed limit. There is no warning in such a case.

To exceed the set speed limit intentionally, fully depress the accelerator pedal.

The limit automatically becomes active again as soon as the current speed falls below the set speed limit.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning

 If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster flashes for as long as you exceed the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- ▷ A signal sounds if you inadvertently exceed the set speed limit.
- ▷ If the speed limit is reduced to below the driven speed during the journey, the warning sounds after a little time.
- ▷ If you intentionally exceed the speed limit by fully pressing the accelerator pedal, no warning is given.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▷ Green marker: system is active.
- ▷ Orange/white marker: system is interrupted.
- ▷ No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lamp



- ▷ If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.
- ▷ If the indicator lamp is flashing: set speed limit is exceeded.
- ▷ Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.

Status display



The display of the set speed limit is hidden after a short time.

Cruise Control

Principle

This system allows a desired speed to be set using the buttons on the steering wheel. The desired speed is then maintained by the system. To do this, the system automatically accelerates and brakes as necessary.

General

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas, for example acceleration in ECO PRO drive mode is less pronounced.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently in an appropriate manner in all traffic conditions. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

Using the system in the following situations may increase the risk of an accident, for example:

- ▷ On stretches of road with many corners and bends.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ If the road is icy, if there is fog or snow, if conditions are wet or on a loose road surface.

There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Only use the system if it is possible to drive at a constant speed.◀



WARNING

The desired speed can be inadvertently set or called up incorrectly. There is a danger of accidents. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise Control on/off, see page 197.
	Interrupts Cruise Control, see page 197. Resumes Cruise Control with last setting, see page 198.
	Rocker switch: Sets the speed, see page 198.

Switching Cruise Control on/off

Switching on



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the speedometer marker is set to the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The driven speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The saved desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting Cruise Control

Interrupting manually



Press the button while the system is activated.

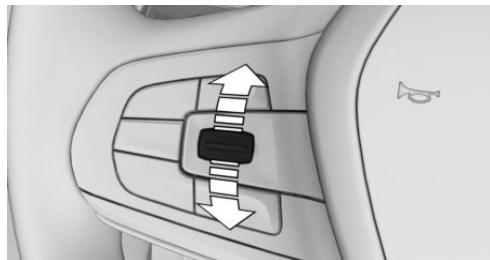
Interrupting automatically

The system interrupts automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: if the selector lever is moved out of selector lever position D.
- ▷ Manual gearbox: if the clutch is pressed for a few seconds or released with no gear engaged.
- ▷ Manual gearbox: if too high a gear has been engaged for the speed.
- ▷ If Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.
- ▷ If with the drive experience switch SPORT PLUS is activated.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



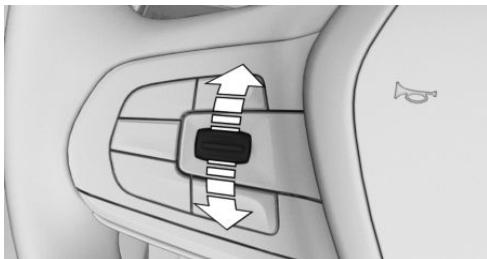
While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch.

If the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and saved as the desired speed.

The saved speed is displayed, see page 199, in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Changing speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

The maximum speed which can be set depends on the vehicle.

- ▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding up there accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without pressing the accelerator pedal.

The speed is maintained after releasing the rocker switch. Pressing beyond the resistance point accelerates the vehicle more rapidly.

Resumes Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the saved speed.

Before calling up the saved speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the saved speed is not excessive large. Otherwise, there may be inadvertent braking or acceleration.

RES
CNCL

While the system is interrupted, press the button.

Cruise Control is resumed with the saved values.

The saved speed value is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▷ Green indicator: system is active, the indicator shows the desired speed.
- ▷ Orange/white indicator: system is interrupted, the indicator shows the saved speed.
- ▷ No marker: system is switched off.

Indicator lamp



- ▷ Green indicator lamp: the system is active.
- ▷ Grey indicator lamp: the system is interrupted.
- ▷ No indicator lamp: the system is switched off.

Status display



The selected desired speed is hidden after a short time.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.



The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed has been reached.

System limits

The desired speed is also maintained on a downhill stretch. The vehicle may drive slower than the desired speed on uphill gradients if the engine power is not sufficient.

In ECO PRO drive mode, it is possible that the vehicle will drive faster or slower than the desired speed setting in some situations, for example on downward or upward gradients.

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go ACC

Principle

This system allows you to set a desired speed and a desired distance from the vehicle in front, using the buttons on the steering wheel.

When the road ahead is clear, the system maintains the desired speed by braking or accelerating the vehicle automatically, as required.

If there is a vehicle driving in front, the system adapts your own vehicle's speed in order to maintain the set distance from the vehicle ahead. The speed is adapted as far as the given situation allows.

General

A radar sensor is fitted in the front bumper and a camera on the rear-view mirror for detecting vehicles driving in front.

Depending on the vehicle setting, the characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas, for example acceleration in ECO PRO drive mode is less pronounced.

The distance can be adjusted in several stages, and is dependent on the particular speed for reasons of safety.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill and sets off again shortly afterwards, the system can comprehend this within the given context.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently in an appropriate manner in all traffic conditions. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. There is a danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels towards the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example with a chock.◀



WARNING

The desired speed can be inadvertently set or called up incorrectly. There is a danger of accidents. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

There is a danger of accidents if the speed differences differs excessively compared to other vehicles. This may occur, for example, in the following situations:

- ▷ When quickly approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ If another vehicle suddenly veers into the vehicle's own lane.

- ▷ Quickly approaching stationary vehicles.

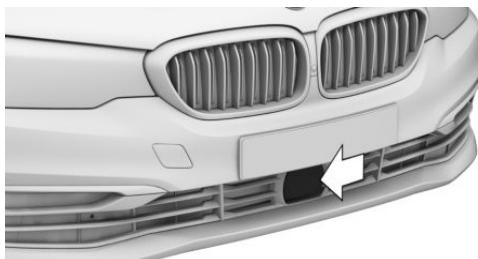
There is a danger of injury or even death. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise Control on/off, see page 201 .
	Interrupts Cruise Control, see page 201 . Resumes Cruise Control with last setting, see page 203 .
	Without steering and lane control assistant: To increases the distance, see page 203 .
	Without steering and lane control assistant: To reduce the distance, see page 203 .
	With steering and lane control assistant: Sets the distance, see page 202 .
	Rocker switch: Sets the speed, see page 202 . Speed Limit Assist: accepts the proposed speed, see page 206 .
	With steering and lane control assistant: Steering and lane control assistant including traffic-queue assistant on/off, see page 208 .

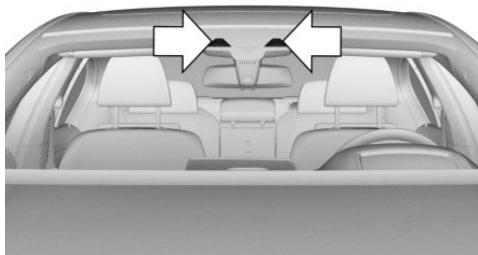
Radar sensor



The radar sensor is located on the front in the bumper.

Keep the radar sensor clean and unobstructed.

Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

Area of use

The system can be used to optimum effect on well-constructed roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 30 km/h/20 mph.

The maximum speed that can be set is 210 km/h/130 mph.

Higher speeds can be set by switching to Cruise Control without distance control.

The system can also be activated when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Switching the Cruise Control on/off and interrupting

Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the speedometer marker is set to the current speed.

Cruise Control is active. The driven speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

When switching off with the vehicle at a standstill, depress the brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The saved desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When the system is activated, press the button on the steering wheel.

To interrupt the system when the vehicle is at a standstill, depress the brake pedal at the same time.

Interrupting automatically

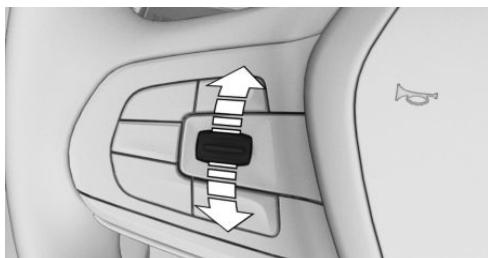
The system interrupts automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver brakes.
- ▷ If the selector lever is moved out of selector lever position D.
- ▷ If Dynamic Traction Control DTC is activated or Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC intervenes.

- If the vehicle is stationary and the seat belt is unfastened and the driver door is opened.
- If the system has not detected any objects for an extended period of time, for example on roads with little traffic and without defined boundaries.
- If the detection zone of the radar is disrupted, for example, due to contamination or heavy rainfall.
- After an extended stationary period, if the vehicle was decelerated to a standstill by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining and saving the speed



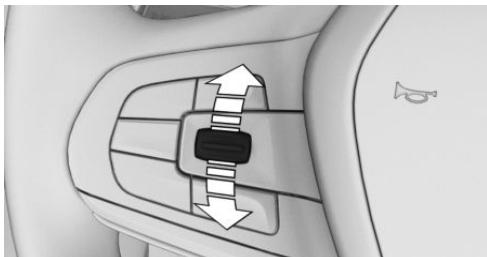
While the system is interrupted, press the rocker switch.

If the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and saved as the desired speed.

The saved speed is displayed in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster, see page 203.

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched on, if necessary.

Changing speed



Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed is set.

If the system is active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed changes to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the km/h display or the next multiple of 5 mph on the mph display in the speedometer.

Hold the rocker switch in one position to repeat the action.

Setting distance

General

The distance setting is saved for the current driver profile in use.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility. Braking may be performed too late because of system limitations. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the traffic conditions attentively at all times. Adapt the distance to traffic and weather conditions, also comply

with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.◀

Without steering and lane control assistant: to reduce the distance

 Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, see page 204, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Without steering and lane control assistant: to increase the distance

 Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, see page 204, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

With steering and lane control assistant: setting distance

 Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Resumes Cruise Control

If Cruise Control is interrupted, it can be resumed by calling up the saved speed.

Before calling up the saved speed, make sure that the difference between the current speed and the saved speed is not excessive large. Otherwise, there may be inadvertent braking or acceleration.

 While the system is interrupted, press the button.

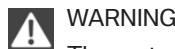
Cruise Control is resumed with the saved values.

The saved speed value is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When drive-ready state is switched off.

Switching between Cruise Control with/without distance control

Safety note



The system does not react to traffic travelling in front of you, but maintains the saved speed. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake if necessary.◀

Switching to Cruise Control without distance control

 With steering and lane control assistant: press and hold the button.

 Without steering and lane control assistant: press and hold the button.

 Press and hold the button.

To switch back to Cruise Control with distance control, press button again.

A Check Control message is displayed after switching.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer



- ▷ Green indicator: system is active, the indicator shows the desired speed.
- ▷ Orange/white indicator: system is interrupted, the indicator shows the saved speed.
- ▷ No marker: system is switched off.

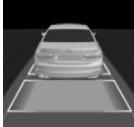
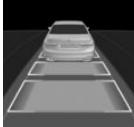
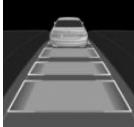
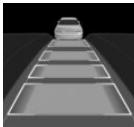
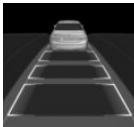
Status display



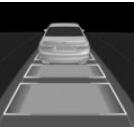
The selected desired speed is hidden after a short time.

Vehicle distance

The selected distance to the vehicle ahead is displayed.

Symbol	Description
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3 Corresponds to approximately half of the value of the speedometer reading, expressed in metres. Set when the system is switched on for the first time.
	Distance 4
	System interrupted.
	No display of the distance control because the accelerator pedal is being pressed.

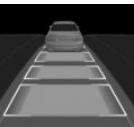
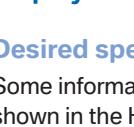
Detected vehicle

Symbol	Description
	Green symbol: Preceding vehicle detected. The system maintains the set distance to the vehicle in front.

The vehicle symbol in the distance display moves away as soon as the detected vehicle has moved off.

To accelerate, activate ACC for example by briefly pressing the accelerator pedal or rocker switch.

Indicator and warning lamps

Symbol	Description
	Vehicle symbol flashes: The requirements for operation of the system are no longer being met.
	The system was deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by pressing the brake or the accelerator pedal.
	Vehicle symbol and distance bar flash red and an acoustic signal sounds: Brake and perform an evasive manoeuvre, if necessary.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

Desired speed

Some information from the system can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.



The symbol is displayed when the set desired speed has been reached.

Distance information



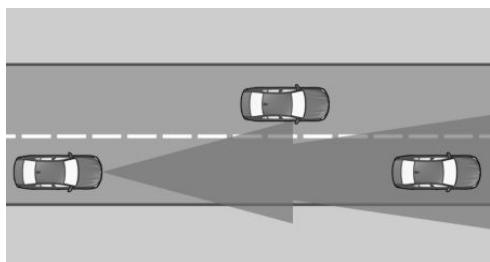
The symbol is shown if the distance from the vehicle in front is too short.

The distance information is active under the following circumstances:

- ▷ Active Cruise Control switched off.
- ▷ Display in the Head-Up Display selected, see page 145.
- ▷ Distance too close.
- ▷ Speed above approximately 70 km/h, 40 mph.

System limits

Detection range



The system's detection capability and automatic braking capacity are limited.

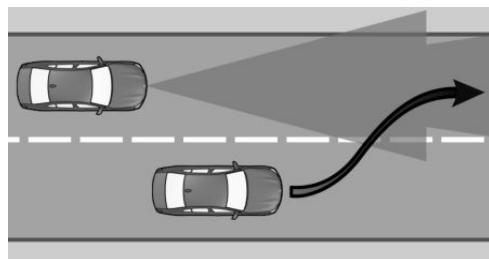
For example, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians or similar slow road users.
- ▷ For red traffic lights.
- ▷ For crossing traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming vehicles.

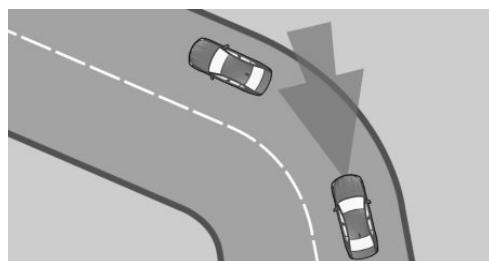
Vehicles pulling out



A vehicle driving ahead of you is only detected when it is fully in your driving lane.

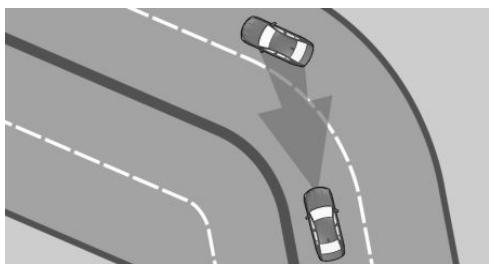
If another vehicle suddenly pulls out in front of you, the system might not be able to re-establish the selected distance of its own accord. In some circumstances, it may also not be possible to restore the selected distance if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles in front, for example when rapidly approaching a lorry. If a vehicle is clearly detected in front of you, the system prompts you to intervene by braking, and if necessary by taking evasive action.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for cornering, it will be reduced slightly in the corner. However, the system does not detect corners in advance. For this reason, moderate your speed when cornering.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise on tight bends where a vehicle driving in front will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When your vehicle is approaching a bend, the angle of the bend may cause the system to respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. If the system responds by decelerating the vehicle, you may compensate for this by accelerating briefly. When the accelerator pedal is released again, the system will resume control of the vehicle's speed.

Driving off

The vehicle cannot drive off automatically in some situations, for example:

- ▷ On steep upward gradients.
- ▷ Before bumps in the road.
- ▷ When towing a heavy trailer.

In such cases, depress accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions may apply if the weather or lighting conditions are unfavourable:

- ▷ Impaired detection of vehicles.
- ▷ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Examples of unfavourable weather or lighting conditions:

- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Snowfall.
- ▷ Slush.
- ▷ Fog.
- ▷ Oncoming light.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, inter-

vene actively, for example by braking, steering or manoeuvring.

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained on a downhill stretch. The vehicle may drive slower than the desired speed on uphill gradients if the engine power is not sufficient.

In ECO PRO drive mode, it is possible that the vehicle will intentionally drive faster or slower than the desired speed setting in some situations, for example on downward or upward gradients.

Malfunction

The system cannot be activated if the radar sensor is not correctly aligned, for example following parking damage.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system has failed.

Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The function for detecting and responding to stationary vehicles when approaching may be restricted in the following situation:

- ▷ During the camera calibration process immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ Failure or soiling of the camera. A Check Control message is shown.

Speed Limit Assist

Principle

If the systems in the vehicle, for example Speed Limit Info, detect a change in the speed limit on the route, this new speed value is proposed as the new desired speed for Active Cruise Control ACC. Cruise Control must be activated for the speed value to be adopted.

If the Manual Speed Limiter is activated, see page 195, the new speed value is proposed as the speed limit.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently in an appropriate manner in all traffic conditions. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

The desired speed can be inadvertently set or called up incorrectly. There is a danger of accidents. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Rocker switch on the steering wheel

Rocker switch	Function
	Accepts the proposed speed, see page 207.
	Rejects suggested speed, see page 207.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed Limit Assist"
4. "Speed Limit Assist"

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster if the system and the Cruise Control are switched on.

Symbol	Function
	Indicator lamp illuminates green: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted for Active Cruise Control.
	Indicator lamp illuminates green: Speed Limit Assist is active and detected speed limits can be adopted for the Manual Speed Limiter.
	Symbol is outlined in green: change in speed limit detected with immediate effect.
	Distance data behind the symbol indicates there might be a change in the speed limit up ahead.
	A green arrow shows that the new speed is higher than the set desired speed. In addition, the speedometer displays the area between the current speed and the new desired speed in green.
	A green arrow shows that the new speed is lower than the set desired speed. In addition, the speedometer displays the area between the current speed and the new desired speed in green.

Accepting the proposed speed

Briefly press the left rocker switch on the steering wheel up or down, according to the direction of the green arrow. The new speed is accepted. The green marker in the speedometer extinguishes.

Rejecting suggested speed

Briefly press the rocker switch in the opposite direction to the green arrow.

Setting the speed adjustment

It is possible to set whether the speed limit should be accepted exactly, or with a tolerance of -15 km/h, -10 mph to +15 km/h, +10 mph.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed Limit Assist"
4. "Adjust suggestion:"
5. Confirm the desired setting.

System limits

Speed Limit Assist is based on the Speed Limit Info system, meaning that the system limits of Speed Limit Info, see page 140, must also be considered.

Depending on the country, displayed speed limits may not be available for acceptance, or only available with restrictions, for example with speed information from the navigation system.

Steering and lane control assistant

Principle

The system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane. To do this, the system assists by performing steering movements, for example when cornering.

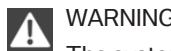
General

The system detects the position of the lane markings and the vehicle driving in front using five radar sensors and a camera.

Depending on the speed, the system orients itself using the lane markings and vehicles driving in front.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently in an appropriate manner in all traffic conditions. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

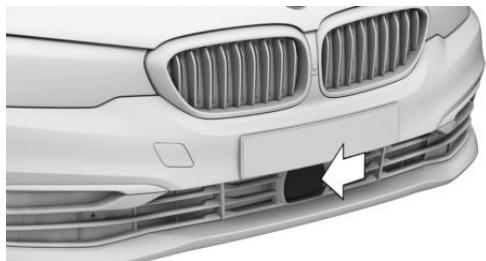
Overview

Button on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Steering and lane control assistant including traffic-queue assistant on/off, see page 209.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are in the bumpers.



Front bumper in middle.



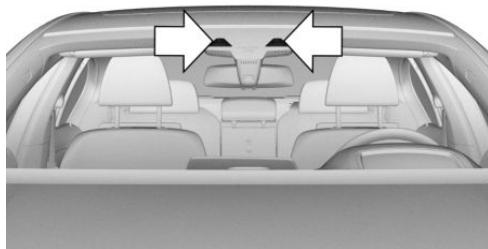
Front bumper at side.



Rear bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Camera



The camera is located on the front side of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

Operating requirements

The following operating requirements must be met for the system:

- ▷ Speed under 210 km/h/130 mph.

- ▷ The driving lane is sufficiently wide.
- ▷ Above 70 km/h, approximately 43 mph: lane demarcations are detected on both sides.
- ▷ Below 70 km/h, approximately 43 mph: lane markings on both sides or a vehicle driving in front is/are detected.
- ▷ Hands on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Sufficient corner radius.
- ▷ Driving in the centre of the lane.
- ▷ Turn indicator not activated.
- ▷ Camera calibration procedure directly after vehicle delivery is completed.

Switching on/off

Switching on

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.

-  Steering wheel symbol illuminates grey.

System is on standby and does not make any steering movements.

System activates automatically when all operating requirements are met, see page 209.

-  Steering wheel symbol illuminates green.

The system is active.

When the system switched on, the person warning with City braking function and the side collision warning are active.

Switching off

-  Press the button on the steering wheel.

The display is no longer illuminated.

The system does not execute any supporting steering movements.

Interrupting automatically

The system interrupts automatically in the following situations:

- ▶ At a speed above 210 km/h/130 mph.
- ▶ When the steering wheel is released.
- ▶ When the steering wheel is turned sharply.
- ▶ When leaving your own lane.
- ▶ When the turn indicator is activated.
- ▶ When the lane is too narrow.
- ▶ If no lane marking has been detected for a certain time and there is no vehicle driving in front.



Steering wheel symbol illuminates grey.

System is on standby and does not make any steering movements.

System activates automatically when all operating requirements are met, see page [209](#).

Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Steering wheel symbol grey: System on standby.
	Steering wheel symbol green: System is activated.
	Steering wheel symbol yellow: System interruption is imminent.
	Steering wheel symbol and lane marking green: The system is helping the driver keep the vehicle in lane.

Symbol	Description
	Steering wheel symbol green, and lane marking grey: No lane marking detected or vehicle outside of the lane marking.
	Outside of the lane marking, the system still provides steering assistance to guide the vehicle towards the centre of the lane. If no lane marking is detected, the vehicle follows the vehicle driving in front.
	Steering wheel symbol yellow: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System remains active.
	Red steering wheel symbol and an acoustic signal if applicable: Hands are not around the steering wheel. System interrupted. The system does not execute any supporting steering movements. With Active Cruise Control the system will reduce the speed if applicable.

Displays in the Head-Up Display

All the system information can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display.

Steering assistance when changing lanes

Principle

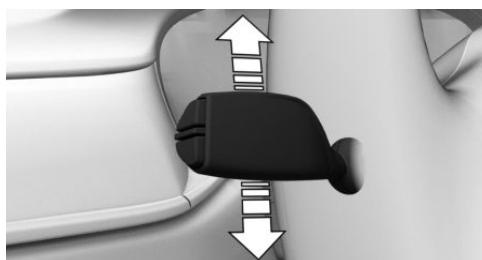
The system provides the driver with additional support when changing lanes on multi-lane roads.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Operating requirements of the steering and lane control assistant are met, see page 209.
- ▷ Driving on a road with physical barriers.
- ▷ Lane marking detected.
- ▷ Lane Change Warning and steering intervention are switched on, see page 177.
- ▷ Speed between 70 km/h, approx. 43 mph and 180 km/h, approx. 110 mph.

Changing lanes

1. Ensure that the traffic situation permits a lane change.
 2. Push and hold the turn indicator lever, see page 115, in the desired direction as far as the resistance point to indicate briefly.
- After a short period, steering assistance in the desired direction is noticeable.



After the lane change, the system helps the driver keep the vehicle in lane.

Cancelling a lane change

If the turn indicator lever is released too soon, the system helps the driver to keep in the original lane.

System limits

General

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly in certain situations.

Safety note



WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

Hands on the steering wheel

In the following situations, contact between the driver's hands and the steering wheel is not detected by the sensors:

- ▷ Driving when wearing gloves.
- ▷ Covers on the steering wheel.

Narrow lanes

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly when driving in narrow lanes, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ At road works.
- ▷ Where there are emergency lanes.
- ▷ In built-up areas.

Weather

The following restrictions may apply if the weather or lighting conditions are unfavourable:

- ▷ Impaired detection of vehicles.
- ▷ Brief interruptions when vehicles have already been detected.

Examples of unfavourable weather or lighting conditions:

- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Snowfall.

- ▶ Slush.
- ▶ Fog.
- ▶ Oncoming light.

Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or manoeuvring.

Park Distance Control PDC

Principle

PDC provides assistance when parking the vehicle. Slowly approaching an object in front of or behind the vehicle is signalled by means of:

- ▶ Acoustic signals.
- ▶ Visual display.

With Park Assistant: obstacles at the side of the vehicle detected by the Park Assistant sensors can be reported by the Flank protection, see page 215, function if necessary.

General

The ultrasonic sensors for measuring distances are located in the bumpers, and if applicable on the side of the vehicle.

The range is approximately 2 m, 6 ft depending on the obstacle and environment.

An acoustic warning sounds in the event of an imminent collision at a distance of approx. 70 cm, 27 in from the object.

In the case of objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is given sooner, at a distance of approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft.

Safety notes

WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently in an appropriate manner in all traffic conditions. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your

driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

WARNING

If the vehicle is travelling at high speed when Park Distance Control PDC is activated, there may be a delayed warning because of physical conditions. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Avoid approaching an object at speed. Avoid moving off at speed while Park Distance Control PDC is not yet active.◀

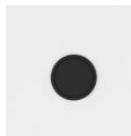
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

Ultrasonic sensors



Ultrasonic sensors of the PDC, for example in the bumpers.

Operating requirements

To ensure full functional capability:

- ▶ Do not cover sensors, for example by stickers, bicycle rack.
- ▶ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.
- ▷ When approaching detected obstacles, if the speed is below approximately 4 km/h, approximately 2.5 mph. The activation distance depends on the respective situation.

Automatic switch-on when obstacles are detected can be activated and deactivated.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Automatic PDC activation": only with corresponding equipment.
5. "Automatic PDC activation"

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Depending on the equipment version, a respective camera view is switched on additionally.

Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Switching on/off manually



Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: LED is extinguished.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when reverse gear is engaged and the Park Assistant button is pressed.

Warning

Acoustic signals

General

An intermittent sound respectively indicates the position of an object as the vehicle approaches it. For instance, if an object is identified to the rear left of the vehicle, the acoustic signal is emitted from the rear left loudspeaker.

The shorter the distance to an object the shorter the intervals become.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in, a continuous tone sounds.

If there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, and they are at a distance of less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in, an alternating continuous tone sounds.

Steptronic transmission: the intermittent tone and the continuous tone are switched off when selector lever position P is engaged.

With the vehicle at a standstill, the intermittent sound is switched off after a short period of time.

Volume control

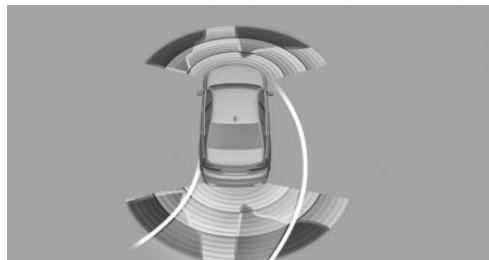
It is possible to set the ratio between the volume of the PDC acoustic signal and the volume of the entertainment source playback.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Sound"
4. "Volume settings"
5. "PDC"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Visual warning



The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are further away are already displayed before an acoustic signal is given.

The display appears as soon as PDC is activated.

The recording range of the sensors is shown in green, yellow and red.

Driving path lines are displayed for better estimation of the space required.

If the rear-view camera image is shown, it is possible to change over to PDC or, if required, to another view with obstacle markings:

"Rear view camera"

Crossing traffic warning, see page 236: depending on equipment, the PDC display also warns about vehicles approaching from the sides at the front and rear.

With Park Assistant and Steptronic transmission: emergency braking function, Active PDC

Principle

The emergency brake function of PDC initiates emergency braking in the event of imminent collision danger.

General

Due to the system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available at speeds below walking speed when driving or rolling in reverse.

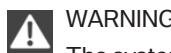
Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the braking intervention.

After emergency braking to a stop, it is possible to continue a slow approach to the obstacle. To approach, lightly depress the accelerator.

If the accelerator is depressed more firmly, the vehicle pulls away as normal. Manual braking is possible at any time.

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of PDC and Park Assistant.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively in the corresponding situations.◀

Activate/deactivate the system

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Active PDC emergency intervention"
5. "Active PDC emergency interv."

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

System limits

The system cannot be used in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ When towing a trailer.

If necessary, use iDrive to deactivate the system.

With Park Assistant: flank protection

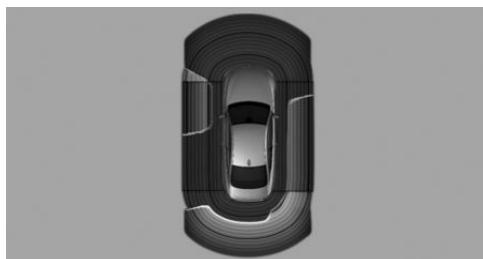
Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle.

General

The system uses the ultrasonic sensors of PDC and Park Assistant.

Display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

- ▷ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.
- ▷ Grey markings, hatched surface: no obstacles have been detected.
- ▷ No markings, black surface: the area adjacent to the vehicle has not yet been detected.

Limits of the flank protection

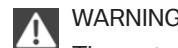
The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. The markings are shown in black after a certain time when the vehicle is stationary. The area next to the vehicle must be detected again.

Flank protection is not available when the trailer socket is occupied.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

With a trailer or when the trailer socket is in use

The rear PDC functions are switched off.



A white symbol is shown. With the respective equipment version, the recording area of the sensors is shown dark on the Control Display.

Limits of the ultrasound measurement

The detection of objects might not be possible if the limits of the physical ultrasound measurement are exceeded, such as for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ If there are small children and animals.
- ▷ If persons are wearing certain types of clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ If there is external disruption to the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ If the sensors are dirty, iced-up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ In certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ For the trailer drawbars and tow bars of other vehicles.
- ▷ For thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ For moving objects.
- ▷ For higher, protruding objects, for example projecting walls.

- ▷ For objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ For objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ For small and low objects such as boxes.
- ▷ For obstacles and people at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ For soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam.
- ▷ For plants or shrubs.
- ▷ Low objects already indicated, such as kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.
- ▷ The system does not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.

False alarms

Under the following conditions, the system can issue a warning although there is no obstacle in the detection range:

- ▷ In heavy rain.
- ▷ If the sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- ▷ If the sensors are covered with snow.
- ▷ On rough road surfaces.
- ▷ On uneven ground, for example speed bumps.
- ▷ In large, rectangular buildings with smooth walls, for example underground car parks.
- ▷ In washing bays and car washes.
- ▷ Due to dense exhaust gases.
- ▷ If the cover of the trailer tow hitch is incorrectly seated.
- ▷ Due to other ultrasonic sources, for example sweeping machines, steam-jet cleaners or neon lights.

To reduce false alarms, switch off automatic activation of PDC when obstacles are detected

if necessary, for example in automatic car washes, see page [213](#).

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.



A white symbol is shown and the recording area of the sensors is shown in dark colour on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Without Surround View: rear-view camera

Principle

The rear-view camera provides assistance when reverse parking or manoeuvring. It does this by showing an image of the area behind the vehicle on the Control Display.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively in the corresponding situations.◀

Overview

With the corresponding equipment: button in the vehicle



 Park Assistant button

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle strip of the boot lid.

Dirt can impair the quality of the picture. Clean the camera lens if required.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

With the corresponding equipment: switching on/off manually



Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▶ On: LED is illuminated.
- ▶ Off: LED is extinguished.

Park Distance Control PDC is shown on the Control Display.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when reverse gear is engaged and the Park Assistant button is pressed.

Switching the view via iDrive

With Park Distance Control PDC activated:



The image from the rear-view camera is shown.

Operating requirements

- ▶ The rear-view camera is switched on.
- ▶ The boot lid is completely closed.
- ▶ Keep the detection area of the camera clear. Projecting loads or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer socket can restrict the detection area of the camera.

Assistance functions

General

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

The assistance functions can be activated manually.

- ▶ "Parking guidance lines". Driving path lines and turning circle lines are shown, see page 218.
- ▶ "Obstacle marking".

With the corresponding equipment, the obstacles detected by Park Distance Con-

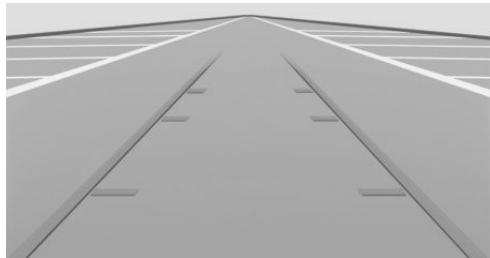
trol PDC are displayed, see page 218, by markings.

►  "Towbar zoom".

A zoomed-in image of the trailer tow hitch is displayed, see page 218.

Parking aid lines

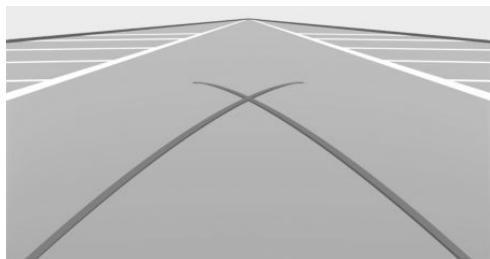
Driving path lines



The driving path lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving path lines are dependent on the steering angle and are continuously adapted to steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the camera image together with driving path lines.

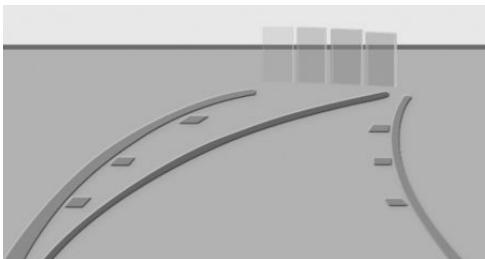
The turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Parking with the help of driving lane and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving lane line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



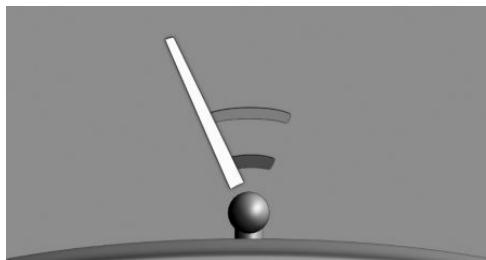
With the corresponding equipment, obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control PDC sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the image from the rear-view camera.

The colour incrementation corresponds to the markings of Park Distance Control PDC.

Zoom to trailer tow hitch

To assist with connecting up a trailer, the picture area around the trailer tow hitch can be zoomed.



Two static circle segments show the distance between the trailer and the trailer tow hitch.

A docking line which is dependent on the steering angle assists you in lining up the trailer tow hitch with the trailer.

When zooming in, remember that the view might no longer show certain obstacles.

Setting the brightness and contrast via iDrive

With rear-view camera switched on:

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.
2. ▷ ☀ "Brightness"
- ▷ ⚙ "Contrast"
3. Set the desired value.

System limits

Deactivated camera

If the camera is deactivated, for example when the boot lid is opened, the camera image is displayed as grey hatching.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

With the corresponding equipment, certain assistance functions also take into account data from Park Distance Control PDC.

Observe the notes in the chapter on Park Distance Control PDC.

The objects shown on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects based on the display.

Surround View with Park Assistant Plus

Principle

The system provides assistance with parking and manoeuvring. It does this by displaying an image of the area all around the vehicle on the Control Display.

General

Several cameras capture the area from various selectable perspectives. In addition, assistance functions, for example help lines, can be shown in the display.

The following camera perspectives can be displayed:

- ▷ Automatic camera perspective, see page 221: the system automatically shows the appropriate camera perspective depending on the particular driving situation.
- ▷ Rear-view camera, see page 221: for representing the areas behind the vehicle.
- ▷ Flank view right and left, see page 223: for representing the areas to the sides of the vehicle.
- ▷ Camera perspective movable using iDrive, see page 221.
- ▷ Panorama View, see page 224: for representing crossing traffic, for example at junctions and exits, depending on which gear is currently engaged.

Depending on the view, the vehicle surroundings or a partial area are displayed.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively in the corresponding situations.◀



Rear-view camera

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

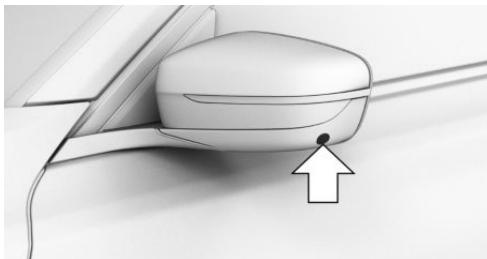


Panorama View

Cameras



Front camera



One camera is located under each exterior mirror housing.

Dirt on the camera lenses can impair the quality of the image. Clean the camera lenses if required.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.

The camera perspective appropriate for the corresponding driving situation is shown.

Switching on/off manually



Press the Park Assistant button.

- ▷ On: LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: LED is extinguished.

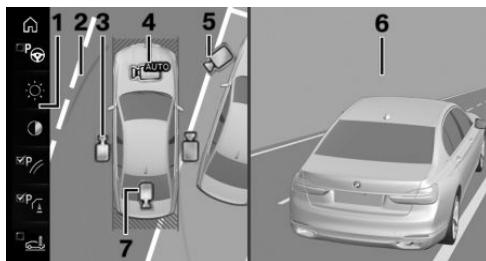
Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

Camera perspectives

Overview



- 1 Function bar
- 2 Selection window
- 3 Flank view
- 4 Automatic camera perspective
- 5 Movable camera perspective
- 6 Camera image
- 7 Rear-view camera

Selection window

In the selection window, the individual camera perspectives can be selected using iDrive.

Flank view

The flank view can be selected for the right or left vehicle side.

This view helps positioning the vehicle at the kerb or in the case of other obstacles at the side by displaying the side surroundings.

The flank view looks from the rear to the front. In the case of danger, it automatically focuses on possible obstacles.

Automatic camera perspective

The automatic camera perspective displays a steering-dependent view into the respective driving direction.

This perspective adjusts to the respective driving situation.

As soon as obstacles are detected, the view switches to a fixed presentation of the area in front or behind the bumper or, if necessary, to a flank view.

Movable camera perspective

If the movable camera perspective is selected, a circular path is shown on the Control Display.

By turning the Controller or using the touch function, defined perspectives along the circular path can be selected.

The current perspective is marked with a camera symbol.

With BMW Gesture Control: the movable camera perspective can be moved along the circular path using BMW Gesture Control, see page 31.

To leave the circular path, tilt the Controller to the side and press it or tap the active camera symbol on the touch screen.

Rear-view camera

This view shows the image of the rear-view camera.

Function bar

Assistance functions can be activated, see page 222, and settings made using the function bar.

- ▷ "Park Assist", see page 226.
- ▷ "Brightness", see page 225.
- ▷ "Contrast", see page 225.
- ▷ "Parking guidance lines", see page 222.
- ▷ "Obstacle marking", see page 222.
- ▷ "Towbar zoom", see page 223.

- ▷  "Car wash", see page 223.
- ▷  "Settings": perform settings, for example for using the activation points with Panorama View.

Assistance functions

General

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

The following assistance functions can be activated manually:

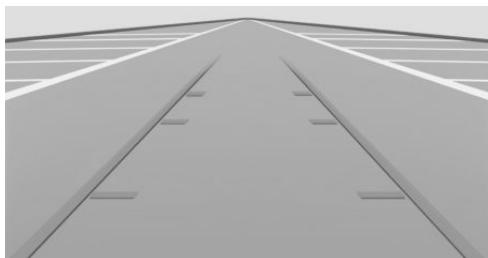
- ▷  "Parking guidance lines".
- ▷  "Obstacle marking".
- ▷  "Towbar zoom".
- ▷  "Car wash".

The following assistance functions are shown automatically:

- ▷ Flank protection, see page 223.
- ▷ Door opening angle, see page 223.

Parking aid lines

Driving path lines



The driving path lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving path lines are dependent on the steering angle and are continuously adapted to steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the camera image together with driving path lines.

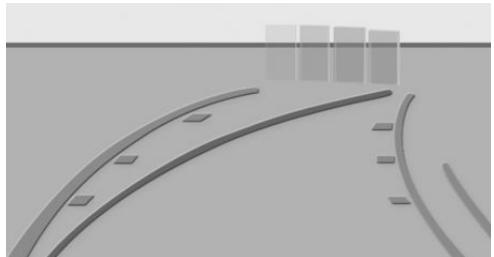
The turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

Once the steering wheel has been turned beyond a certain angle, only one turning circle line is displayed.

Parking with the help of driving lane and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line is within the boundaries of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel so that the green driving lane line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking

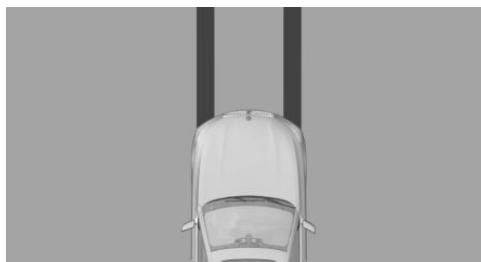


Obstacles behind the vehicle are detected by the Park Distance Control PDC sensors.

Obstacle markings can be shown in the camera image.

The colour incrementation corresponds to the markings of Park Distance Control PDC.

Washing bay view



The washing bay view provides assistance when driving into washing bays by displaying the vehicle's own tyre tracks.

Zoom to trailer tow hitch

To assist with connecting up a trailer, the picture area around the trailer tow hitch can be zoomed.



Two static circle segments show the distance between the trailer and the trailer tow hitch.

A docking line which is dependent on the steering angle assists you in lining up the trailer tow hitch with the trailer.

Displaying the trailer tow hitch via iDrive, see page 222.

When zooming in, remember that the view might no longer show certain obstacles.

Flank protection

Principle

The system warns about obstacles at the side of the vehicle.

Display



Obstacle markings are displayed at the sides of the vehicle to protect the vehicle's flanks.

- ▶ No markings: no obstacles have been detected.
- ▶ Coloured markings: warning that obstacles have been detected.

Limits of the flank protection

The system only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when driving past.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle subsequently moves. As a result, the markings in the display are no longer shown at standstill after a particular length of time. The area next to the vehicle must be detected again.

Door opening angle

Principle

If obstacle marking is activated, the system shows any fixed, stationary obstacles that are restricting the opening angle of the doors.

The system does not issue warnings about approaching road users.



Steptronic transmission: in selector lever position P, the maximum opening angles of the doors are shown.

Manual gearbox: with the vehicle stationary, the maximum opening angles of the doors are shown after a short period.

As soon as the vehicle moves, the parking assistance lines are displayed instead of the opening angles.

Limits of the display

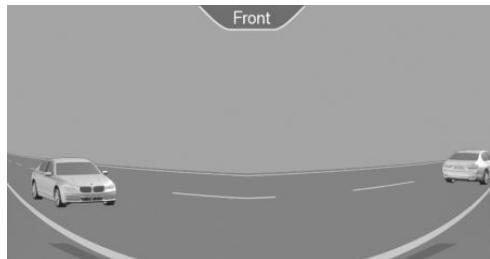
For technical reasons, the display of the area around the vehicle is distorted.

Even if the symbols for the door opening angles on the Control Display are not covering any other objects, pay attention to the following when parking beside other objects:

The perspective means that protruding objects at a higher level may be closer than they appear on the Control Display.

Panorama View

Principle



The system provides you with an advance view of crossing traffic at blind exits and junctions.

General

Road users hidden by obstacles at the side are only detected very late from the driver's seat. To improve the view, the cameras at the front and rear show traffic in the areas at either side.

Yellow lines in the screen display indicate the front and rear ends of the vehicle.

The camera image is subject to different levels of distortion in some areas, and is thus not suitable for estimating distances.

Display on the Control Display



Press the button with the engine running.

The image from the relevant camera is displayed, depending on the driving direction:

- ▷ "front": image from the front camera.
- ▷ "rear": image from the rear camera.

With the corresponding equipment, the crossing traffic warning, see page 236, can warn about approaching vehicles by means of radar sensors.

With navigation system: activation points

Principle

Positions at which the Panorama View is to be switched on automatically can be stored as activation points provided that a GPS signal is being received.

General

Up to ten activation points can be saved.

Activation points can be used for the front camera when driving forward.

Saving activation points

1. Drive to the position at which the system is to be switched on, and stop.



2. Press the button.

3. Tilt the Controller to the left.

4. "Add activation point"

The current position is shown.

5. "Add activation point"

Activation points are, if possible, saved with town/city and street, otherwise with the GPS coordinates.

Using activation points

Use of activation points can be switched on and off.



1. Press the button.

2. Tilt the Controller to the left.

3. "Settings"

4. "Panorama View, GPS-based"

5. "Panorama View, GPS-based"

Displaying activation points

1. Press the button.

2. Tilt the Controller to the left.

3. "Show activation points"

A list of all activation points is shown.

Renaming or deleting activation points

1. Press the button.

2. Tilt the Controller to the left.

3. "Show activation points"

A list of all activation points is shown.

4. Select an activation point if necessary.

5. ▷ "Rename"

- ▷ "Delete this activation point"

- ▷ "Delete all activation points"

Setting the brightness and contrast

When Surround View or Panorama View is switched on, it is possible to adjust the brightness and contrast.

Via iDrive:

1. Tilt the Controller to the left.

2. ▷ "Brightness"

- ▷ "Contrast"

3. Set the desired value.

Functional restrictions

The system can only be used to a limited extent in the following situations:

- ▷ In poor light conditions.

- ▷ With soiled cameras.

- ▷ With a door open.

- ▷ With the boot lid open.

- ▷ With the exterior mirrors folded in.

Grey hatched areas with a symbol, for example opened door, in the camera display identify areas that are currently not shown.

System limits

Non-visible areas

Due to the angle of view, the area under the vehicle cannot be seen by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

Some assistance functions also consider Park Distance Control PDC data.

Observe the notes in the chapter on Park Distance Control PDC, see page 212.

The objects shown on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects based on the display.

Malfunction

The failure of a camera is shown on the Control Display.



A yellow symbol is shown and the recording area of the failed camera is shown in black on the Control Display.

Remote 3D View

Principle

The BMW Connected App and the camera images from Surround View can be used to show the areas around the vehicle on a mobile device, for example a smartphone.

The function shows a view of the current situation.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Data transfer must be activated, see page 40.
- ▷ The BMW Connected App must be installed on the mobile device.

Switching the function on/off

Via iDrive:

1. With the standby state switched on: "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

3. "Data privacy"
4. "Remote 3D View"

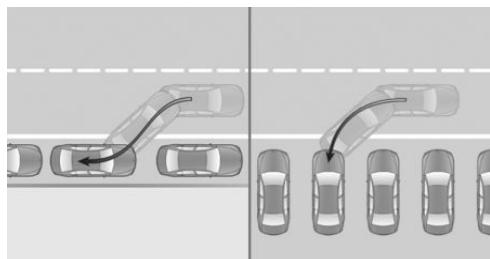
Functional restrictions

The function may be restricted or not available in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In poor light conditions.
- ▷ With soiled cameras.
- ▷ With a door or the boot lid open. Dark areas in the display indicate areas that are not detected by the system.
- ▷ With the exterior mirrors folded in.
- ▷ When other camera functions are run in the vehicle.
- ▷ If the vehicle is moving faster than at walking speed.
- ▷ It may not be possible to use the function in all countries.
- ▷ For reasons related to data protection, the function can only be run three times in two hours.

Park Assistant

Principle



The system assists with parking in the following situations:

- ▷ When parking sideways parallel to the road, parallel parking.
- ▷ When reverse parking perpendicular to the road, perpendicular parking. The system

lines up with the middle of the parking space when parking perpendicular to the road.

General

Operation

Operation of the Park Assistant is divided into three steps:

- ▷ Switching on and activating.
- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Parking.

The status of the system and the actions required are shown on the Control Display.

Ultrasonic sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

Manual gearbox

The Park Assistant calculates the ideal parking line and takes over steering during the process of parking.

Steptronic transmission

The Park Assistant calculates the ideal parking line and takes over the following functions during a parking process:

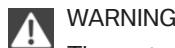
- ▷ Steering.
- ▷ Accelerating and braking.
- ▷ Changing gear.

Press and hold the Park Assistant button for the duration of the parking process. The parking process takes place automatically.

Remote Control Parking

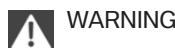
If there is a suitable forward parking space, the vehicle can be parked and unparked by remote control, see page 231.

Safety notes



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation correctly. Due to system limitations, it cannot respond independently in an appropriate manner in all traffic conditions. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



WARNING

When the trailer tow hitch is used, the Park Assistant could cause damage if its sensors are obstructed. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Do not use the Park Assistant when towing a trailer or using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.◀



NOTE

The Park Assistant may steer across kerb or up onto kerbs. There is a danger of damage to property. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

In addition, the safety notes for Park Distance Control PDC, see page 212, apply.

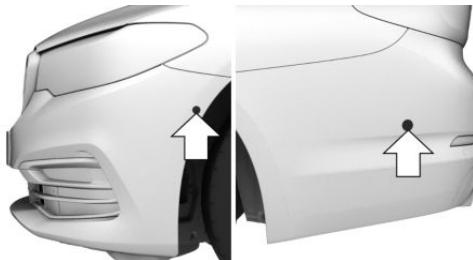
Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park Assistant button

Ultrasonic sensors



The system uses the four side ultrasonic sensors, arrows, and the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control PDC in the bumpers to measure parking spaces and distances to obstacles.

Operating requirements

Ultrasonic sensors

To ensure full functional capability:

- ▷ Do not cover the sensors, for example with stickers.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ The vehicle must be driving forwards in a straight line at speeds up to approximately 35 km/h, approximately 22 mph.
- ▷ Maximum distance to the row of parked vehicles: 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft.

Suitable parking space

General:

- ▷ Gap behind an object that is at least 0.5 m, approximately 1.7 ft long.
- ▷ Gap between two objects, each at least 0.5 m, approximately 1.7 ft long.

Parking parallel to the road:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approximately 0.8 m, approximately 2.6 ft.

- ▷ Minimum depth: approximately 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft.

Perpendicular parking:

- ▷ Minimum length of gap: own vehicle width plus approximately 0.7 m, approximately 2.3 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

Drivers must estimate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces themselves. Due to technical limits, the system is only able to gauge the depth of perpendicular parking spaces approximately.

For parking

- ▷ Doors and boot lid are closed.
- ▷ Parking brake is released.

Manual gearbox:

- ▷ You must indicate accordingly when parking into parking spaces on the driver's side.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ Driver's seat belt is fastened.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button



Press the Park Assistant button.
The LED is illuminated.

The current status of the parking space search is displayed on the Control Display.

 Park Assistant is automatically activated.

Switching on with reverse gear

Engage reverse gear.

The current status of the parking space search is displayed on the Control Display.

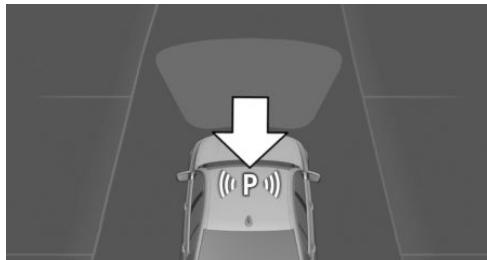
To activate:  "Park Assist"

Display on the Control Display

System is activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
P@	Grey: system not available. White: system available but not activated.
P@	System is activated.

Parking space search and status of the system



- ▷ Symbol P on the vehicle diagram: Park Assistant is activated and the parking space search is active.
- ▷ Suitable parking spaces are shown on the Control Display on the edge of the roadway next to the vehicle symbol. When Park Assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted in colour and an acoustic signal sounds. Switch the acoustic signal on/off, see page 230.
- ▷ When perpendicular or parallel parking spaces are clearly detected, the system automatically sets the appropriate parking method. A selection menu is displayed for parking spaces that are large enough for both parallel and perpendicular parking. In this case, select the desired parking method manually.



Parking process active.
Steering has been taken over.

- ▷ The parking space search is active whenever the vehicle is driving forwards at low speed, even with deactivated system. If the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown grey.

Parking with the Park Assistant

Driving into a parking space

1.  Press the Park Assistant button or engage reverse gear to switch on the Park Assistant, see page 228. Activate Park Assistant if necessary.
2. Park Assistant is activated.
2. Drive past the line of parked vehicles at a speed up to approximately 35 km/h, approximately 22 mph and at a distance of maximum 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are shown on the Control Display, see page 229.

3. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Manual gearbox:

To achieve an optimum parking position, wait for the automatic steering process after changing gear at standstill.

Steptronic transmission:

Press and hold the Park Assistant button for the duration of the parking process. At the end of the process of parking, the P selector lever position is engaged.

The end of the parking process is displayed on the Control Display.

4. Straighten up the parking position, if applicable.

Cancelling manually

You can cancel the Park Assistant at any time:

- ▷  Steptronic transmission: release the Park Assistant button during the parking process.
- ▷  Manual gearbox: press the Park Assistant button.
- ▷  "Park Assist" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

Cancelling automatically

The system automatically cancels in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or steers the vehicle.
- ▷ On snow-covered or slippery road surfaces, if necessary.
- ▷ Any obstacles difficult to get over, for example kerbs.
- ▷ With obstacles that suddenly arise.
- ▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC shows gaps that are too small.
- ▷ When a maximum number of parking attempts or parking time is exceeded.
- ▷ When changing to other functions on the Control Display.

Manual gearbox:

- ▷ When selecting gear, which does not correspond to the information on the Control Display.
- ▷ At speeds over approximately 10 km/h, approximately 6 mph.
- ▷ If turn indicator is set opposite to desired parking side.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ If the Park Assistant button is released.
- ▷ If the boot lid is open.
- ▷ When doors are open.
- ▷ If the parking brake is applied.
- ▷ When accelerating.

- ▷ If the brake pedal remains pressed for a relatively long period when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ When the driver's seat belt is unfastened. A Check Control message is shown.

Resuming

You can continue a cancelled parking process, if applicable.

To do this, reactivate the Park Assistant, see page 228, and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off manually:



Press the Park Assistant button.

Switching the acoustic signal for suitable parking spaces on/off

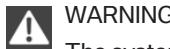
Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Park Assist"
5. "Sound if parking space detected"

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

No parking assistance

The Park Assistant does not provide assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When towing a trailer.
- ▷ In angled parking spaces.

Functional restrictions

The function may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ On uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ On steep upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- ▷ If the emergency wheel has been fitted.
- ▷ If an already measured parking space changes.
- ▷ If there are ditches or sudden drops, for example a quayside.

Limits of the ultrasound measurement

The detection of objects might not be possible if the limits of the physical ultrasound measurement are exceeded, such as for instance in the following situations:

- ▷ If there are small children and animals.
- ▷ If persons are wearing certain types of clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ If there is external disruption to the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ If the sensors are dirty, iced-up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ In certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ For the trailer drawbars and tow bars of other vehicles.
- ▷ For thin or wedge-shaped objects.

- ▷ For moving objects.
- ▷ For higher, protruding objects, for example projecting walls.
- ▷ For objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ For objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ For small and low objects such as boxes.
- ▷ For obstacles and people at the edge of the lane.
- ▷ For soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam.
- ▷ For plants or shrubs.
- ▷ Low objects already indicated, such as kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.
- ▷ The system does not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.

In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

The Park Assistant has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Remote Control Parking

Principle

In suitable forward parking spaces, for example a garage, it is possible to park forwards and drive out in reverse using remote control. In this case, the driver does not sit in the vehicle, but instead controls the parking process from outside under his/her own responsibility using the BMW display key, see page 60.

In the event of obstacles, stop the vehicle manually.

The vehicle can be moved by approximately 1.5 times its length using the BMW display key. Maximum speed is 1.8 km/h, 1.1 mph.

General

The following are components of the system:

- ▶ Park Assistant, see page 226.
- ▶ BMW display key, see page 60.
- ▶ Park Distance Control PDC, see page 212.

⚠ Button on the BMW display key: so the vehicle can move, the button on the side of the BMW display key must be pressed continuously for the duration of the parking process. In the event of obstacles, release the button to stop the vehicle manually. The vehicle stops with emergency braking in this case.

If the ultrasonic sensors detect obstacles in the parking space, or the end of the parking space, the system stops the vehicle automatically where necessary.

The driving lights are switched on for the duration of the process.

Safety notes

⚠ WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the traffic conditions and parking situation correctly. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all situations. There is a danger of accidents. Observe the traffic conditions and parking situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

⚠ WARNING

Unauthorised persons, for example children, could move the vehicle using the BMW display key without anyone being in the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. Protect the BMW display key against unauthorised use.◀

⚠ WARNING

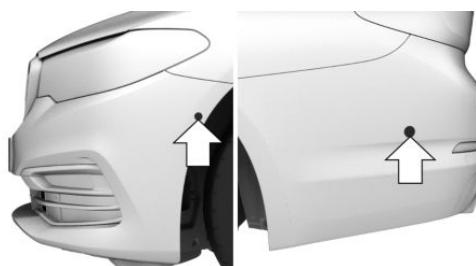
When the trailer tow hitch is used, the Park Assistant could cause damage if its sensors are obstructed. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Do not use the Park Assistant when towing a trailer or using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.◀

⚠ NOTE

The Park Assistant may steer across kerb or up onto kerbs. There is a danger of damage to property. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Ultrasonic sensors



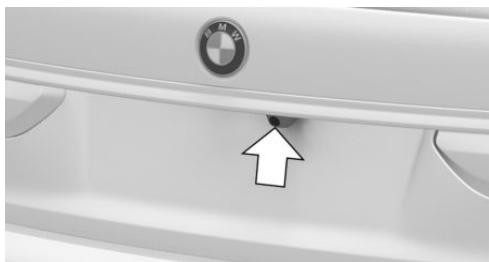
The system uses the four side ultrasonic sensors, arrows, and the ultrasonic sensors of Park Distance Control PDC in the bumpers to measure parking spaces and distances to obstacles.

Cameras

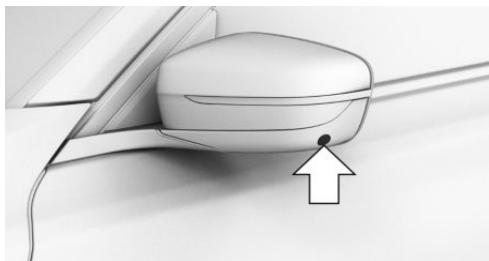
In addition to the ultrasonic sensors, four cameras detect the parking situation during Remote Control Parking.



Front camera.



Rear-view camera.



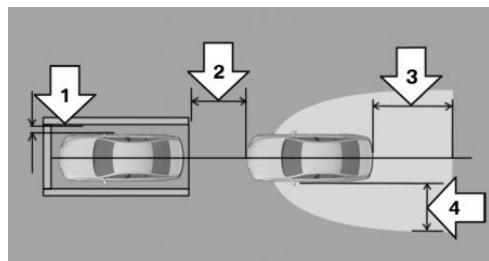
One camera is located under each exterior mirror housing.

Operating requirements

Cameras and ultrasonic sensors

- ▷ Do not cover the sensors, for example with stickers.
- ▷ Keep sensors clean and clear, and clean them if necessary.
- ▷ Keep camera lenses clean and clear, and clean them if necessary.

Suitable parking space



- ▷ It is possible to park forwards, centrally and straight in the parking space.
- ▷ Width of parking space: own vehicle width without exterior mirrors plus approximately 0.4 m, approximately 1.3 ft on each side, arrow 1.
- ▷ Distance from the parking space, max. 2 m, approximately 6.5 ft, arrow 2.
- ▷ For Remote Control Parking, the driver is outside the vehicle and is carrying the BMW display key.

Maximum distance from the vehicle:

- ▷ Behind the vehicle approximately 3–4 m, approximately 10–13 ft, arrow 3.
- ▷ To the side of the vehicle, approximately 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft, arrow 4.
- ▷ Maximum upward or downward gradient 5 %.
- ▷ No duplex garages.

Parking forwards

Driving into a parking space

When parking forwards, the system may carry out minor steering corrections.

1. Drive forwards, centrally and straight towards the parking space and stop with a

distance of at most 2 m, approximately 6.5 ft.

2. Apply the parking brake and switch off drive-ready state with the start/stop button.
3. Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle, and close the doors.
4. If necessary, switch on the display on the BMW display key, see page 60, and unlock the display lock.

On the BMW display key, switch into menu: "R/C parking"

5. Keep the button on the side of the BMW display key pressed for the duration of the parking operation.
6. Wait until function readiness is shown on the display. Follow any text messages that are displayed.
7. "ENGINE START": tap the button. The engine starts.
8. To start the parking process: touch the arrow symbol for driving forwards on the display.

Press and hold the button: the vehicle moves for as long as the button is pressed. In the event of obstacles in the driving area, release the button to stop the vehicle.

For manoeuvring: touch the arrow symbol for reversing.

9. When the parking process is complete, release the button on the side of the BMW display key. The vehicle stops.

"ENGINE STOP": tap the button. The engine is switched off.

Lock the vehicle.

The parking brake is applied and the standby state is switched off.

Cancelling, interrupting, resuming the parking process

To cancel or interrupt the parking process: release the button. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

To continue the parking process: press the button again within 30 seconds.

Reversing out of a parking space

Driving out of a parking space

When reversing, the vehicle drives straight backwards without steering.

1. If necessary, switch on the display on the BMW display key, see page 60, and unlock the display lock.
 2. Unlock the vehicle.
 3. On the BMW display key, switch into menu: "R/C parking"
 4. Keep the button on the side of the BMW display key pressed while driving out of the parking space.
 5. Wait until function readiness is shown on the display. Follow any text messages that are displayed.
 6. "ENGINE START": tap the button. The engine starts.
 7. To start driving out of the parking space: touch the arrow symbol for reversing on the display.
 Press and hold the button: the vehicle moves for as long as the button is pressed. In the event of obstacles in the driving area, release the button to stop the vehicle.
 8. Once the vehicle is out of the parking space: release the button on the side of the BMW display key. The vehicle stops.
 9. "ENGINE STOP": tap the button. The engine is switched off.
- The parking brake is applied and the drive-ready state is switched off.
- Lock vehicle as appropriate.

Cancelling, interrupting, resuming the parking process

To cancel or interrupt the parking process: release the  button. The vehicle stops with emergency braking.

To continue the parking process: press the  button again within 30 seconds.

Messages on the BMW display key



The symbol indicates that there are system messages.

System limits

Safety note



WARNING

The system may respond not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to limits of the system. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the information on the system limits and intervene actively if necessary.◀

No parking assistance

The Park Assistant does not provide assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When towing a trailer.
- ▷ In angled parking spaces.

Functional restrictions

The function may be restricted in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ On uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ On steep upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- ▷ If the emergency wheel has been fitted.
- ▷ If an already measured parking space changes.
- ▷ If there are ditches or sudden drops, for example a quayside.

Functional restrictions due to radio interference

Radio interference may impair remote control parking with the BMW display key, see page 63.

Limits of the ultrasound measurement

The detection of objects might not be possible if the limits of the physical ultrasound measurement are exceeded, such as for instance in the following situations:

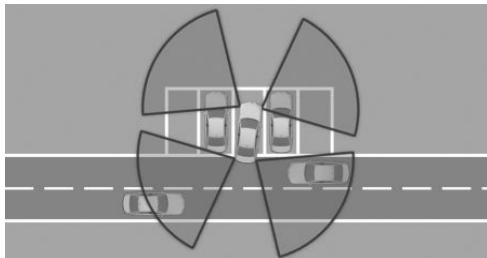
- ▷ If there are small children and animals.
- ▷ If persons are wearing certain types of clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ If there is external disruption to the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ If the sensors are dirty, iced-up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ In certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ For the trailer drawbars and tow bars of other vehicles.
- ▷ For thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ For moving objects.
- ▷ For higher, protruding objects, for example projecting walls.
- ▷ For objects with corners, edges and smooth surfaces.
- ▷ For objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ For small and low objects such as boxes.
- ▷ For obstacles and people at the edge of the lane.

- ▶ For soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam.
- ▶ For plants or shrubs.
- ▶ Low objects already indicated, such as kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.
- ▶ The system does not take into account loads projecting beyond the outline of the vehicle.

In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

Crossing traffic warning

Principle



Two radar sensors in the rear bumper monitor the area behind the vehicle.

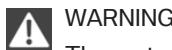
At blind exits or when reversing out of perpendicular parking spaces, the system detects other road users approaching from the side earlier than is possible from the driver's seat.

The system indicates when other road users are approaching.

The Control Display shows the corresponding display, an acoustic signal may sound and the light in the exterior mirror flashes.

With the corresponding equipment, the area in front of the vehicle is also monitored. For this purpose, two further radar sensors are located in the front bumper.

Safety note



WARNING

The system does not release you from your personal responsibility to assess the visibility conditions and traffic situation correctly. There is a danger of accidents. Adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle



 Park Assistant button

Radar sensors



The radar sensors are located in the rear bumper.



With the corresponding equipment, there are two additional radar sensors in the front bumper.

Keep the bumpers clean and unobstructed in the area of the radar sensors.

Switching on/off

Activate/deactivate the system

-  1. Press the Park Assistant button.
2. Tilt the Controller to the left.
3.  "Settings"
4. "Cross-traffic alert"
5. "Cross-traffic alert"

Switching on automatically

If the system was activated on the Control Display, it is switched on automatically as soon as Park Distance Control PDC or Panorama View is active and a gear is engaged.

The system is switched on at the rear when reverse gear is engaged.

With corresponding equipment, the system is switched on at the front when a forward gear is engaged.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If walking speed is exceeded.

- ▷ When steering and lane control assistant is active: after driving for a particular distance.
- ▷ During active parking with the Park Assistant.

Warning

Light in the exterior mirror



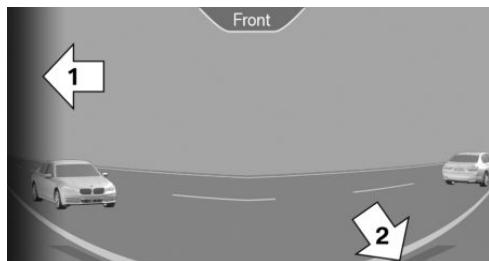
The light in the exterior mirror flashes if other vehicles are detected by the rear sensors when the vehicle is moving backwards.

Display in the Park Distance Control PDC view



In the Park Distance Control PDC view, the particular boundary area flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Display in the camera view



The particular boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera view flashes red if the sensors detect vehicles.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, indicate the bumper of your vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual display, a warning signal sounds when your own vehicle is moving in the corresponding direction.

System limits

The function may be restricted in the following situations:

- ▷ If the approaching vehicle is travelling very fast.
- ▷ In thick fog, wet conditions or snow.
- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ If the bumper is dirty, iced over or covered, for example by stickers.
- ▷ When a projecting load is being transported.
- ▷ If crossing objects are moving very slowly.
- ▷ If there are other objects in the field of view of the sensors that conceal the crossing traffic.

If the trailer socket is being used, for example when operating with a trailer or a bicycle carrier, crossing traffic warning is not available for the area behind the vehicle.

Driving comfort

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Dynamic Damper Control

Principle

The system reduces unwanted vehicle movements when a dynamic driving style is used or when driving on uneven roads.

Depending on the road condition and the driving style, this enhances driving dynamics and driving comfort.

General

The system offers various damper configurations.

The damper configurations are assigned to the different drive modes of the drive experience switch, see page 125.

Drive mode	Damper configuration
COMFORT	Balanced
ECO PRO	
SPORT	Firm
SPORT PLUS	

Adaptive Drive

Principle

Adaptive Drive is an actively controlled suspension. The system increases driving comfort at the same time as minimising body lean when cornering.

General

Information available from the navigation system or the driving style analysis, for example, is used for the active control.

In particular in ADAPTIVE drive mode, see page 127, this information influences the Dynamic Damper Control as well as the Active Roll Stabilisation, see page 239. This increases both the agility and comfort of the vehicle further.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Active Roll Stabilisation

Principle

The system reduces body lean that occurs when cornering at high speed or taking sudden evasive action.

The side incline of the vehicle is compensated by continual adjustments on the front and rear axle. Thus, the vehicle is constantly stabilised.

Agility and driving comfort are increased in all driving conditions.

General

The system offers various configurations.

The configurations are assigned to the different drive modes of the drive experience switch, see page 125.

Drive mode	Configuration
COMFORT	Comfortable
ECO PRO	
SPORT	Firm
SPORT PLUS	

M Dynamic Professional contains the following systems:

- ▷ Lowered sport suspension.
- ▷ Dynamic Damper Control.
- ▷ Active Roll Stabilisation.
- ▷ Integral Active Steering.

Adaptive M suspension

Principle

The Adaptive M suspension is a controllable sports suspension. The system reduces unwanted vehicle movements when a dynamic driving style is used or when driving on uneven roads.

Depending on the road condition and the driving style, this enhances driving dynamics and driving comfort.

General

The system offers various damper configurations.

These are assigned to the different drive modes of the drive experience switch, see page 125.

Drive mode	Damper configuration
SPORT	Firm
SPORT PLUS	Dynamically rigid
COMFORT/ECO PRO	Balanced

M Dynamic Professional

Principle

M Dynamic Professional is an actively controlled sport suspension. The system increases driving comfort at the same time as minimising body lean when cornering.

General

Information available from the navigation system or the driving style analysis, for example, is used for the active control.

In particular in the ADAPTIVE drive mode, see page 127, this information influences the Dynamic Damper Control, control of the Active Roll Stabilisation, see page 239, as well as control of the Integral Active Steering. This increases both the agility and comfort of the vehicle further.

The function may be restricted if the navigation data is invalid, outdated or not available, for example.

Air conditioning

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Interior air quality

An emissions-tested interior and the installation of microfilters and a climate-control system with functions for controlling the temperature, air flow and air recirculation have improved air quality inside the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle specification, other additional functions may also be installed, for example microfilter/activated charcoal filter, ionisation, fragrancing, automatic air conditioning with automatic air recirculation control AUC, and independent ventilation.

Automatic air conditioning

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
	Temperature, see page 242 .
	Air-conditioning mode, see page 242 .
	Maximum cooling, see page 242 .
	AUTO program, see page 243 .
	Recirculated-air mode, see page 243 .
	Air flow, manual, see page 244 .
	Air distribution, manual, see page 244 .
	SYNC Program, see page 244 .
	Defrost and demist window, see page 245 .
	Rear window heating, see page 245 .
	Active seat ventilation, see page 97 .
	Seat heating, see page 96 .
	Calls up the air conditioning menu.

Switching on/off

Switching on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ SYNC Program.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.

Switching off

If automatic air conditioning with extended functionality is fitted:

- ▷ Complete system:



Press and hold left side of driver's side button, until the system switches off.

- ▷ On the front passenger side:



Press and hold left side of button on front passenger side.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Adjusting



Turn the wheel to select the desired temperature.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Cooling function

Principle

Interior air is cooled and dried, then reheated to suit the temperature setting.

The interior can only be cooled when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

When the cooling function is switched on, the LED is illuminated.

The cooling function is switched on when the engine is running.

Depending on weather conditions, the windscreen and side windows may mist over for a short time when the drive-ready state has been switched on.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops which exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

The air flow can be adapted when the programme is active on the driver side.

AUTO program

Principle

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO program is switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, intensity AUTO program and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, see page 242, is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

A condensation sensor also controls the programme so that window condensation is avoided as much as possible.

The AUTO program is automatically switched off when the air distribution is set manually.

Intensity

With the AUTO programme switched on, the intensity can be adjusted. This changes the automatic control for the air flow and air distribution.

 Press left or right side of button: reduce or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

Automatic air recirculation control AUC

Principle

Automatic air recirculation control AUC detects pollutants in the outside air. The supply of outside air is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General

When the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

When the system is deactivated, outside air flows into the interior continuously.

Continuous recirculated-air mode deteriorates the air quality in the interior and condensation on the windows increases.

Switching on/off

AUTO Press the button.

LED illuminates if the system has been switched on using the button.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Automatic air recirculation"

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation, see page 245.

Recirculated-air mode

Principle

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

Operation



Press the button repeatedly to call up an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: ambient air is constantly entering the car.
- ▷ LED on: the outside air supply is permanently shut off.

Continuous recirculated-air mode deteriorates the air quality in the interior and condensation on the windows increases.

If there is condensation, shut down recirculated-air mode or remove the condensation, see page 245.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be set manually.

General

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO program.

Operation



Press left or right side of button: reduce or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

In order to protect the battery the air flow rate of the automatic air conditioning is reduced, if necessary.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Operation



Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▷ Windows, upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows: only on the driver's side.
- ▷ Windows and upper body.
- ▷ Upper body area.

The selected air distribution is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

If there is condensation, remove it, see page 245.

SYNC program

Principle

Depending on the equipment version, the following settings on the driver's side can be transferred to the front passenger's side and to the rear:

- ▷ Temperature.
- ▷ Air flow.
- ▷ Air distribution.
- ▷ AUTO program.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the SYNC program is switched on.

The programme is switched off automatically if settings are changed on the front passenger's side or in the rear passenger compartment.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Principle

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windscreen and the front side windows.

Switching on/off



Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

Point the side nozzles at the side windows if necessary. The air flow can be adjusted manually when the system is switched on.



If there is condensation on the window, press the button on the driver's side or switch on the cooling function to use the advantages of the condensation sensor. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreen.

Rear window heating



Press the button. The LED is illuminated.

The function is available when the engine is running.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

Microfilter/activated carbon filter

The microfilter traps dust and pollen in the incoming air.

The activated charcoal filter removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air entering the vehicle.

Have this combined filter replaced during vehicle maintenance, see page [334](#).

Ventilation

Principle

The direction of the air flows can be set individually.

Setting the ventilation

General

The direction of the air flows can be set for direct or indirect ventilation.

Direct ventilation

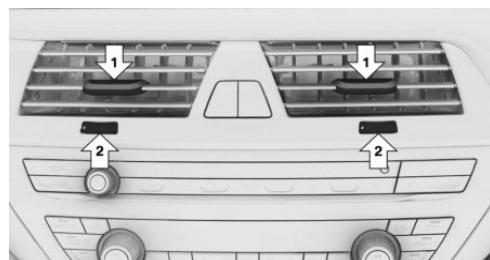
Align the air flow directly onto the vehicle occupants. The air flow provides noticeable heating or cooling depending on the set temperature.

Indirect ventilation

Do not align the air flow directly onto the vehicle occupants. The vehicle interior is cooled or heated indirectly depending on the set temperature.

Ventilation at front

Overview



- Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrows 2.

Setting the temperature

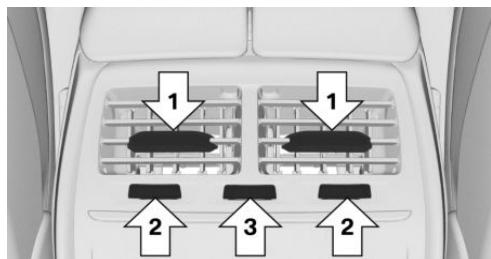
The temperature of the ventilation in the upper body area can be varied.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate comfort"
4. "Temperature adjustment, upper body"
5. Set the desired temperature.
 - ▷ Towards blue: cooler.
 - ▷ Towards red: warmer.

The set interior temperature for driver and front seat passenger is not changed by this.

Ventilation in the rear, centre

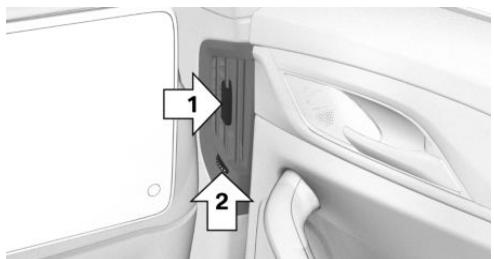


- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrows 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrows 2.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for varying the temperature, arrow 3.

Towards blue: cooler.

Towards red: warmer.

Ventilation in the rear, side



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheel for steplessly opening and closing the side nozzles, arrow 2.

Rear automatic air conditioning

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Climate functions

Button	Function
	Temperature, see page 247
	Maximum cooling, see page 247 .

Button	Function
	AUTO program, see page 247.
	Air flow, manual, see page 248.
	Air distribution, manual, see page 248.
	Seat heating, see page 96.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Rear climate"

The rear automatic air conditioning is not operational if the automatic air conditioning is switched off or the following function is active: defrost windows and remove condensation.

Using the button: switch on

Press any button, with the following exceptions:

- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.

Using the button: switch off

Press and hold left side button.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic air conditioning adjusts to the set temperature as quickly as possible, using maximum cooling or heating power if necessary. The temperature is then maintained.

Adjusting



Turn the wheel to select the desired temperature.

Avoid switching between different temperature settings in rapid succession. The automatic air conditioning may not have sufficient time to establish the temperature selected.

Maximum cooling effect

Principle

When drive-ready state is switched on, the system is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General

The function is available at an outside temperature above approximately 0 °C/32 °F and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the system is switched on.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

AUTO program

Principle

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

The LED is illuminated when the AUTO program is switched on.

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO program and external in-

fluences, the air is directed towards the upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

Intensity

When AUTO program is switched on, automatic control of the intensity can be changed:



Press left or right side of button: reduce or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

Adjusting the air flow manually

Principle

The air flow for air conditioning can be set manually.

General

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO program.

Operation



Press left or right side of button: reduce or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

Adjusting the air distribution manually

Principle

The air distribution for air conditioning can be set manually.

Operation



Press the button repeatedly to select a programme:

- ▶ Upper body area.
- ▶ Upper body area and footwell.

- ▶ Footwell.

Independent ventilation/ auxiliary heating

Principle

The system consists of independent ventilation and auxiliary heating. It allows the temperature of the interior to be adjusted before the journey starts. The interior is cooled or heated depending on the set temperature and ambient temperature. When doing so, the system uses any available residual heat from the engine or the vehicle's fuel for generating heat.

General

The system can be switched on and off directly or for a preselected departure time.

The switch-on time is calculated from the outside temperature. The system switches on in good time before the preselected departure time.

If ambient temperatures are below 0 °C/32 °F, water vapour condenses and wets the ground underneath the vehicle.

Safety notes



DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odourless. In enclosed spaces, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on the auxiliary heating in enclosed spaces.◀



WARNING

When the auxiliary heating is operating, high temperatures can be generated under the body, for example because of the exhaust sys-

tem. If flammable materials, for example leaves or grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. There is a risk of fire. Make sure that no flammable materials can come into contact with vehicle parts when the auxiliary heating is operating.◀

Operating requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is in idle state or standby state and not in drive-ready state.

- ▷ Battery is sufficiently charged.

When activated, the independent ventilation/auxiliary heating uses power from the vehicle battery. As a result, the maximum activation time is restricted to protect the battery. After the engine is started or after driving a short distance, the system will be available again.

- ▷ Auxiliary heating: sufficient fuel in the tank.
If the fuel level is low and the vehicle is parked on a slant, the function of the auxiliary heating may be restricted.
- ▷ Ensure that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.
- ▷ Open the ventilation vents to allow the air to enter the passenger compartment.

Switching on/off directly

General

The system can be switched on or off in various ways.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. It continues to run for a short time after it has been switched off.

Using the button

If the vehicle is in standby state, the independent ventilation can be switched on or off via the buttons of the automatic air conditioning.

Press any button, except:

- ▷ Rear window heating.

- ▷ Left side of air flow button.
- ▷ Seat heating.
- ▷ Seat ventilation.
- ▷ SYNC Program.
- ▷ MENU.

The system switches off after leaving and locking the vehicle.

Via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary ventilation" or "Auxiliary heating/ventilation"
5. "Activate now"

Using BMW display key

Switching on

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Activate now"
5. "Start"

Switching off

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap the symbol or the symbol.
4. "Stop"

Display

symbol on the automatic air conditioning signals that the system is switched on.

REST is shown on the air conditioning system. The residual heat of the engine is being used.

Departure time

To ensure a pleasant interior temperature in the vehicle at the start of the drive, it is possible to set different departure times.

- ▷ One-off departure time: the time can be set.
System is switched on once.
- ▷ Departure time with day of the week: time and day of the week can be set.

The system is switched on in good time before the set departure time on the required days of the week.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- ▷ Set departure times.
- ▷ Activate departure time.

Set the departure time

Via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary ventilation" or "Auxiliary heating/ventilation"
5. Select the required departure time.
6. Set the departure time.
7. Select the day of the week if necessary.

Using BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap the  symbol or the  symbol.
4. Select the required departure time.
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select the day of the week if necessary.
7. "OK"

Activating departure time

Operating requirements

If a departure time is to influence activation of the auxiliary heating/independent ventilation, the relevant departure time must be activated first.

Via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate comfort"
4. "Auxiliary ventilation" or "Auxiliary heating/ventilation"
5. "For departure time"
6. Activate the required departure time.

 ,  Symbol on the automatic air conditioning system signals when a departure time is active

Using BMW display key

1. Switch on the display of the BMW Display key.
2. "Precondit. setting"
3. Tap the  symbol or the  symbol.
4. Tap the symbol.
5. Activate the required departure time.

 ,  Symbol on the automatic air conditioning system signals that a departure time has been activated.

Ambient Air package

Principle

With the Ambient Air Package, the interior air can be cleaned and subtly perfumed with high-quality scents.

Ionisation cleans the air by removing suspended particles. Together with the selected scent, ionisation contributes to well-being and relaxation during the journey.

General

It is possible to choose between two scents in the vehicle. Additional scents are possible by exchanging the scent cartridges.

The following criteria can influence scent perception inside the vehicle:

- ▷ Settings of the automatic air conditioning.
- ▷ Temperature and humidity.
- ▷ Time of day and season.
- ▷ Physical condition of the vehicle occupants, for example fatigue.

BMW recommends using genuine BMW scent cartridges.

Genuine BMW scent cartridges are not refillable, and must be replaced by new scent cartridges after they are used up.

Safety note



WARNING

Refilled BMW scent cartridges may emit harmful substances, lead to malfunctions and cause damage to the system. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not refill scent cartridges, and once they are used up, replace them with new scent cartridges.◀

Ionisation

Principle

The ionisation cleans the interior air to remove suspended particles.

Switching on/off

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. If necessary, "Air quality"
5. "Ionisation"

The climate display shows that ionisation is switched on.

Fragrancing

General

Fragrancing is done at intervals to avoid familiarisation.

Two scent cartridges in the vehicle enables you to switch between fragrances.

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Scent cartridges are adequately filled.
- ▷ Interior temperature is between +5 °C/41 °F and +40 °C/104 °F.
- ▷ Open the ventilation vents to allow the fragrance to enter the passenger compartment.

Selecting the fragrance

It is possible to choose between two scents.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Fragrance"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Switching fragrancing on/off, setting the intensity

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Fragrance"
5. "Level"
6. Select the desired setting.

Display

Illustrations on the Control Display show the current fill level of the scent cartridges.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate comfort"
4. "Fragrance"

The filling level of the current scent is displayed.

5. Select the desired setting.

When an empty fragrance cartridge is indicated, the cartridge still contains a fluid carrying the fragrance. However, it is not sufficient for fragrancing.

A Check Control message is displayed when it is necessary to change scent cartridges

Insert scent cartridges (left-hand drive vehicle)

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

1. Open glove box, see page [263](#).
2. Press the underside of the cartridge bracket.

The cartridge holder slides downwards.



3. Remove the cover of the scent cartridge. Grip the top of the cover to slide it off the scent cartridge.



4. Attach the removed cover to the rear side of the scent cartridge.



5. Position the scent cartridge so the chip points away from the cartridge bracket.



6. Insert the scent cartridge into the cartridge bracket without forcing it. The cartridge

can be felt to engage slightly when inserted.



7. Push the cartridge holder upwards until it engages.

Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from underneath, otherwise the function of the Ambient Air Package could be impaired.

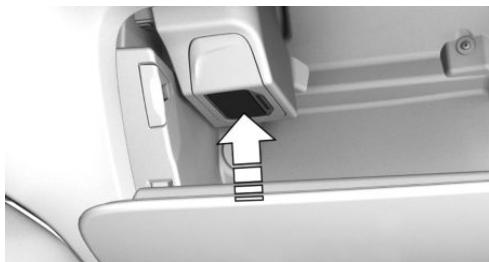
8. Close the glove box.

Removing scent cartridges (left-hand drive vehicle)

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

1. Open glove box, see page 263.
2. Press the underside of the cartridge bracket.

The cartridge holder slides downwards.



3. Pull the required scent cartridge out of the bracket.

Scent cartridge, arrow 1: first scent displayed on the Control Display.

Scent cartridge, arrow 2: second scent displayed on the Control Display.



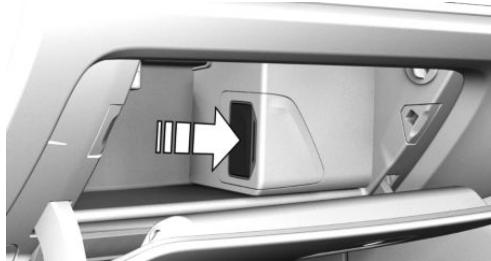
4. Pull the required scent cartridge out of the bracket.



Inserting scent cartridges (right-hand drive vehicle)

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

1. Open glove box, see page 263.
 2. Press on the cartridge holder.
- The cartridge holder slides out.



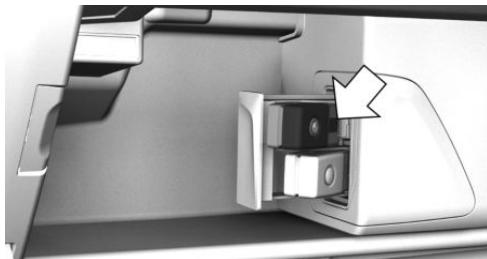
3. Remove the cover of the scent cartridge. Grip the top of the cover to slide it off the scent cartridge.



4. Then attach the removed cover to the rear side of the scent cartridge.

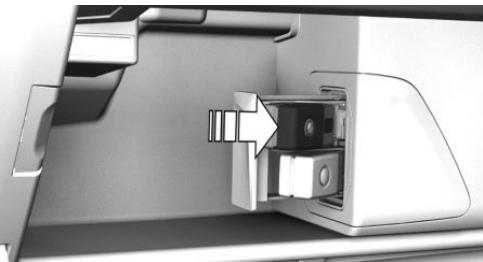


5. Position the scent cartridge so the chip points away from the cartridge bracket.



6. Insert the scent cartridge into the cartridge bracket without forcing it. The cartridge

can be felt to engage slightly when inserted.



7. To close, push in the cartridge holder until it engages.

Make sure that no objects press against the cartridge holder from the side, otherwise the function of the system could be impaired.

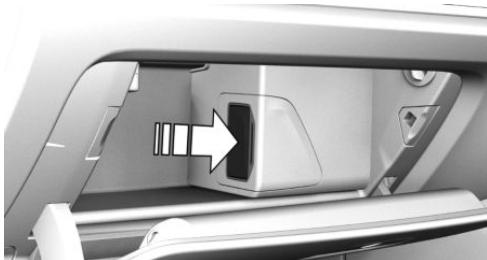
8. Close the glove box.

Removing scent cartridges (right-hand drive vehicle)

The scent cartridges are located in the glove box.

1. Open glove box, see page 263.
2. Press on the cartridge holder.

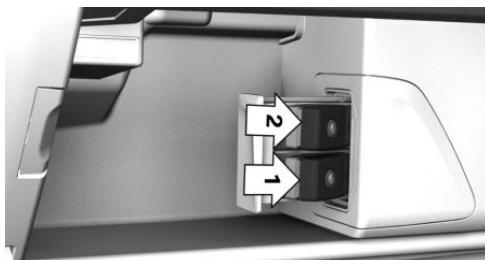
The cartridge holder slides out.



3. Pull the required scent cartridge out of the bracket.

Scent cartridge 1: first scent displayed on the Control Display.

Scent cartridge 2: second scent displayed on the Control Display.



4. Pull the scent cartridge to be removed out of the holder.



Recycling

 Empty scent cartridges can be handed over for recycling at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Interior equipment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The universal remote control integrated in the rear-view mirror can be used to operate up to 3 functions of radio controlled systems, for example garage door drives or lighting systems.

General

The integrated universal remote control replaces up to 3 different hand-held remotes. For operation, the buttons on the rear-view mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The relevant system is needed to programme the hand-held remote.

Before you sell the vehicle, delete the saved functions beforehand for your own security.

Safety note

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when operating radio-controlled systems, for example a garage door, with the integrated universal remote control. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. When programming and operating, make sure that the area of

movement of the particular system is kept clear. Also follow the safety notes supplied with the hand-held transmitter.◀

Compatibility

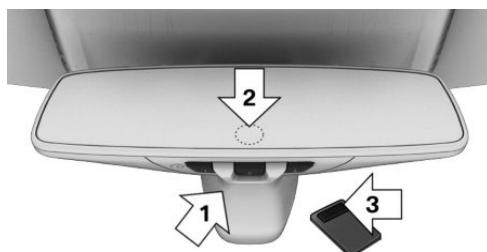


This symbol on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the system to be operated indicates that the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

A list of compatible hand-held transmitters is available on the Internet: www.homelink.com

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Controls on the rear-view mirror



- ▷ Buttons, arrow 1.
- ▷ LED, arrow 2.
- ▷ Hand-held transmitter arrow 3; required for programming.

Programming

General

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Initial operation:

Simultaneously press and hold the two outer buttons on the rear-view mirror for approximately 10 seconds until the LED on the rear-view mirror flashes rapidly

green. All programming of the buttons on the rear-view mirror is deleted.

3. Press the button on the rear-view mirror to be programmed. The LED flashes orange.
4. Keep the hand-held transmitter for the system to be operated approximately 2 to 8 cm, 1 to 3 in away from the buttons on the rearview mirror. The gap required depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button for the desired function on the hand-held transmitter. The LED on the rear-view mirror starts to flash slowly orange.
6. Release the button as soon as the LED flashes faster green or illuminates. The green light indicates that the button on the rear-view mirror has been programmed. Faster green flashing indicates that this is an alternating-code radio system.
If the LED does not start to flash faster after a maximum of 60 seconds, change the distance between the rear-view mirror and hand-held transmitter, and repeat the step. Several attempts at various distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.
7. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be operated with the buttons on the rear-view mirror.

Special instruction for alternating-code radio systems

If the system cannot be operated after repeated programming, check whether the system to be operated is equipped with an alternating-code radio system.

To do this, consult in the user manual of the system or hold down the programmed button on the rear-view mirror for longer. If the LED on the rear-view mirror first flashes rapidly and then illuminates constantly for 2 seconds, the system is equipped with an alternating-code

radio system. The flashing and illuminating of the LED repeats for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system must also be synchronised.

Please find information on the synchronisation in the user manual of the system to be set.

To make synchronisation easier, enlist the assistance of a second person.

Synchronise integrated universal remote control with system:

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the radio-remote-controlled system.
2. Program the corresponding button the rear-view mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronisation button on the system being set. The next step must be carried out within approximately 30 seconds.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the rear-view mirror for 3 seconds and then release. Repeat this step as needed up to three times to complete synchronisation. When synchronisation is completed, the programmed function is run.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on standby state.
2. Press and hold the button on the rear-view mirror to be programmed.
3. As soon as the LED on the rear-view mirror flashes slowly orange, keep the hand-held transmitter for the system to be operated approximately 2 to 8 cm, 1 to 3 in away from the buttons on the rearview mirror. The gap required depends on the hand-held transmitter.
4. Also press and hold the button for the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. As soon as the LED on the rear-view mirror flashes faster or illuminates, release both

buttons. The faster flashing or illumination shows that the button on the rear-view mirror has been programmed. The system can then be operated with the button on the rear-view mirror.

If the LED does not start to flash faster after a maximum of 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the programming from step 4 onwards. Several attempts at various distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Operation



WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when operating radio-controlled systems, for example a garage door, with the integrated universal remote control. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. When programming and operating, make sure that the area of movement of the particular system is kept clear. Also follow the safety notes supplied with the hand-held transmitter.◀

The system, for example the garage door, can be operated using the button on the rear-view mirror when the drive-ready state or standby state is switched on. To do this, press and hold the button within the reception range of the system, until the function is triggered. The LED on the rear-view mirror illuminates constantly when the radio signal is being transmitted.

Deleting saved functions

Simultaneously press and hold the two outer buttons on the rear-view mirror for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly green. All saved functions are deleted. It is not possible to clear functions individually.

Sun visor

Glare protection

Fold the sun visor downwards or upwards.

Glare protection from the side

Folding out

1. Fold the sun visor downwards.
2. Remove the sun visor from the bracket and pivot it sideways to the side window.

Folding up

To close the sun visor, follow the reverse sequence.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is situated in the sun visor behind a cover. The mirror light switches on when the cover is opened.

Ashtrays

Front centre console

Opening

1. Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



2. The ashtray is located in one of the cupholders. Fold the cover of the ashtray upwards.



Emptying



With the cover closed, pull the ashtray out of the cupholder.

socket, put the lighter or socket cover back on.◀

Front centre console



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



The lighter is located between the cupholders.

Lighter

Safety notes



WARNING

Contacting the hot heating element or the hot fitting of the lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can catch fire if the lighter falls down or is held against corresponding objects. There is a danger of fire and injury. Take hold of the lighter by its handle. Ensure that children do not use the lighter as there is a risk of burns.◀



NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a danger of damage to property. After using the

Rear centre console



The cigarette lighter is located in the attachment.

Operation



Press in the cigarette lighter. The cigarette lighter can be removed when it pops back out.

Power sockets

Principle

The cigarette lighter attachment can be used as a socket for electrical devices when standby state or drive-ready state is switched on.

General

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watt at 12 volt.

To avoid damage to the socket, do not insert an incompatible plug.

Safety notes



WARNING

Devices and cables, for example portable navigation devices, that are located in the deployment range of the airbags may impede airbag deployment or be flung around the vehicle interior when the airbag is deployed. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the deployment range of the airbags.◀



NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can operate with high voltages and high currents, which can overload or damage the 12-volt on-board network. There is a danger of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.◀



NOTE

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a danger of damage to property. After using the socket, put the lighter or socket cover back on.◀

Centre armrest front



There is a socket in the centre armrest.

Front centre console



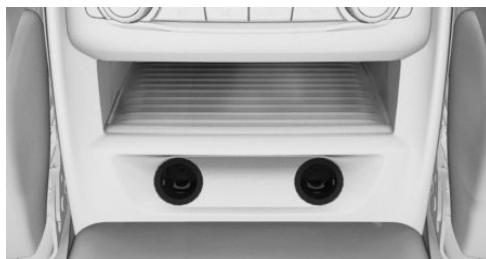
Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



The socket is located between the cupholders.

Pull off the cover.

Rear centre console



There is either one socket or there are two sockets in the centre console.

Pull off the cover in each case.

In the centre armrest



A USB interface is in the centre armrest.

Manual gearbox: in the centre console



A USB interface is in the centre console.

Inside the boot



There is a socket on the right side of the boot.
Open the cap.

USB interface

General

Comply with the notes on connecting mobile devices to the USB interface in the chapter on USB connections, see page [44](#).

Steptronic transmission: in the centre console



NOTE

Objects in the storage compartment, for example large USB connectors, can block or damage the cover on opening and closing. There is a danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the cover is free.◀



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



A USB interface is in the centre console.

Storage compartments

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Safety notes



WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, can be thrown through the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.◀



NOTE

Anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip mats.◀

Storage options

The following storage options are located in the interior:

- ▷ Glove box on the passenger side, see page 263.
- ▷ Glove box on the driver's side, see page 264.
- ▷ Pockets in the doors, see page 264.

- ▷ Manual gearbox: storage compartment above the centre console, see page 264.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: storage compartment in the centre console, see page 264.
- ▷ Centre armrest, see page 265.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the rear of the centre console, see page 265.
- ▷ Pockets on the back rests of the front seats.

Glove box

Front passenger's side

Safety note



WARNING

The glove box projects into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box can be thrown into the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.◀

Opening



Pull the handle.

The lighting in the glove box comes on.

Closing

Fold the cover up.

Locking

The glove box can be locked with an integrated key. This means it is not possible to access the glove box.

After the glove box has been locked, the remote control without the integrated key can be handed over, for example if the car is being parked by a valet service.

Driver's side

Safety note

WARNING

The glove box projects into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box can be thrown into the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.◀

Opening



Pull the handle.

Closing

Fold the cover up.

Pockets in the doors

WARNING

Fragile objects, for example glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident. Shards can spread throughout the interior. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not use any fragile objects while driving. Only stow fragile objects in closed storage compartments.◀

Manual gearbox: storage compartment above the centre console



There is a storage compartment above the centre console.

Steptronic transmission: storage compartment in the centre console

Opening



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.

Closing

Tap the cover on the handle strip. The cover closes.

Storage compartment in the rear of the centre console

There is either one storage compartment or there are two storage compartments in back of the centre console.

Centre armrest

Front

General

There is a storage compartment in the centre armrest between the seats.

Opening



Press the button.

Closing

Push cover downwards until it engages.

Cupholder

Safety note



WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cupholder and hot drinks can damage the cupholders, and increase the risk of injury in an accident. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Use lightweight, lockable containers that are shatterproof. Do not transport hot drinks. Do not force objects into the cupholder.◀

Front

Opening



Slide the cover forwards until it engages.



There are two cupholders in the centre console.

Closing

Tap the cover on the handle strip. The cover closes.

Rear

Safety note

NOTE

If the cupholder is open, the centre armrest cannot be folded back. There is a danger of damage to property. Push back the covers before folding up the centre armrest.◀

Opening and closing

General

The cupholder can be adapted to fit three sizes.

Opening



Fold the centre armrest forwards.

Press the button and fold out the cupholder fully.

Reducing

To make it smaller, the cupholder can be folded in in 2 steps.

Expanding

To make a smaller cupholder bigger, first fold it in completely. Then fold the cupholder out again fully.

Closing

Fold in the cupholder fully until it engages.

Coat hooks

Safety notes

WARNING

Items of clothing on the coat hooks can impair visibility when driving. There is a danger of accidents. Hang items of clothing from the clothes hooks so they do not obstruct visibility when driving.◀

WARNING

Incorrect use of the coat hooks can present a danger, for example if objects are flung around in the event of braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Only hang lightweight objects, for example items of clothing, on the coat hooks.◀

General

The coat hooks are located in the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

Boot

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Loads

Safety notes

WARNING

A high gross vehicle weight can cause the tyres to overheat, causing internal damage and a sudden loss of tyre inflation pressure. The driving characteristics can be negatively influenced, for example reduced directional stability, longer braking distance and modified steering characteristics. There is a danger of accidents. Comply with the permitted load index of the tyre, and do not exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.◀

WARNING

If the permitted total weight and the permitted axle loads are exceeded, the operational safety of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. There is a danger of accidents. Do not exceed the permitted total weight and permitted axle loads.◀

WARNING

Loose objects or devices connected by a cable to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, can be thrown through the interior during the journey, for example in an accident

or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Ensure that loose objects or devices connected by cable to the vehicle are secured in place in the interior.◀

WARNING

Incorrectly stowed objects can slip or be thrown into the interior, for example in an accident, during braking or evasive manoeuvres. Vehicle occupants could be hit and injured. There is a danger of injury. Stow and secure the objects and the load correctly.◀

NOTE

Liquids in the boot may cause damage. There is a danger of damage to property. Ensure that no liquids leak out into the boot.◀

Stowing and securing a transported load

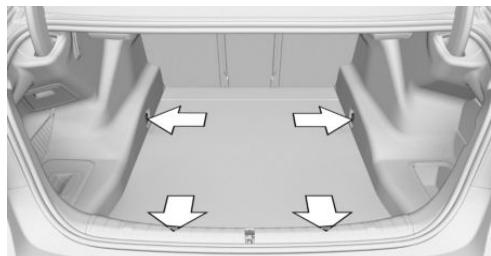
- ▷ Wrap protective material around any sharp corners and edges on the load.
- ▷ Heavy transported loads: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy transported loads: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests. If there are no passengers on the back seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.
- ▷ Fully fold down the rear backrests if the load is to be stowed accordingly.
- ▷ Do not stack load items above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Small and light transported load: can be secured with retaining straps, a boot net, or other suitable straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy transported loads: secure with lashing straps.

Lashing eyes in the boot

General

Equipment for securing the transported load, such as lashing straps, tensioning straps or luggage nets, must be secured to the lashing eyes in the boot.

Lashing eyes



Four lashing eyes are located in the boot for securing the load.

Storage compartments in the boot

Bag holders

General

In the boot there is a bag holder on the left-hand side.

Safety note

WARNING

Incorrect use of the bag holders can present a danger, for example if objects are flung around in the event of braking and evasive manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Only hang light objects, for example shopping bags, on the bag holders. Only transport heavy luggage in the boot if suitably secured.◀

Folding down



Press on the bag holder and turn it until it engages.

Net

Smaller objects can be stowed in the net on the left-hand side.

Side storage compartment, right

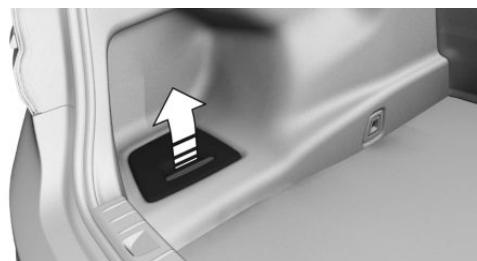
There is a storage compartment on the right side of the boot.

Side storage compartment, left

General

There is a storage compartment on the left side of the boot.

Opening



Pull the handle.

With emergency wheel: storage compartment under the boot floor

There is a storage compartment under the boot floor.



Fold up boot floor.

Through-loading system

Principle

The boot can be enlarged by folding down the rear backrest.

General

The rear backrest is split 40–20–40. The side rear seat backrests and the middle part can be folded down individually.

The rear backrests can be folded down from the boot. The rear backrests can be folded down individually from the rear.

Safety notes

! WARNING

Risk of trapping when folding down the rear backrest. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Before folding down, make sure that the movement area of the rear backrest and the head restraint is clear.◀

! WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown into the interior, for example in the event of an accident or during braking or avoidance manoeuvres. There is a danger of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after it has been folded back.◀

! WARNING

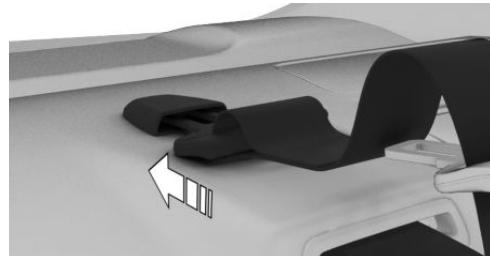
If the seat adjustment or child seat installation is incorrect, the child restraint system may have limited stability or may not be stable at all. There is a danger of injury or even death. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest. Wherever possible, adapt the backrest angle of all the relevant seat backrests and adjust the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged or locked. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.◀

! NOTE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a danger of damage to property. When folding down, make sure that the movement area of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear.◀

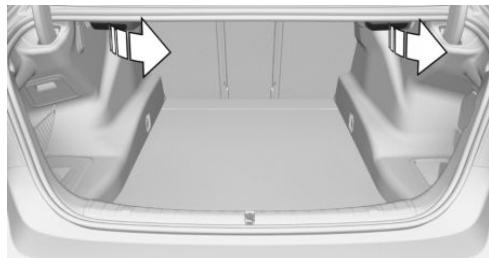
Folding rear backrest down from the boot

1. Unlock the belt lock of the centre seat belt in the rear passenger compartment with the seat belt tongue of another seat belt.
2. Insert the seat belt tongue at the end of the seat belt into the designated mounting on the storage shelf.



3. Push the respective head restraint as far down as possible.

- Pull the corresponding lever in the boot to unlock the rear backrest.



- The unlocked rear backrest moves slightly to the front.
- Fold the rear backrest forward.



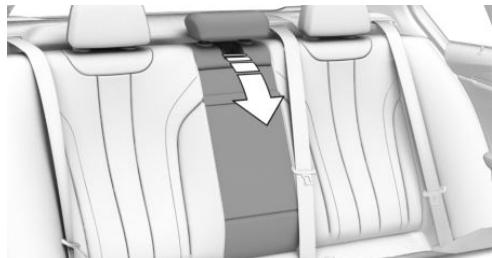
Folding back the rear backrest

- Fold the rear backrest back into seat position and engage.
- Remove seat belt tongues from the take-up on the parcel shelf.
- Put seat belt tongues into the separating lock of the centre safety belt. The seat belt tongue must be heard to engage.

Folding down middle part

- Fold down the middle head restraint.

- Press the switch and pull the middle part forwards.



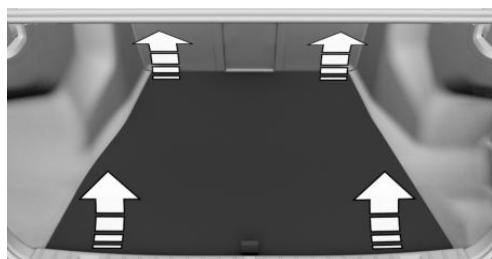
With emergency wheel: expanding the boot

Principle

The emergency wheel and associated components can be removed temporarily to increase the boot space.

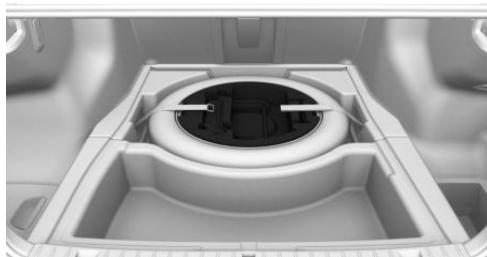
Taking out the emergency wheel and storage elements

- Remove boot floor. To do so, pull the boot floor up directly behind the rear backrests.

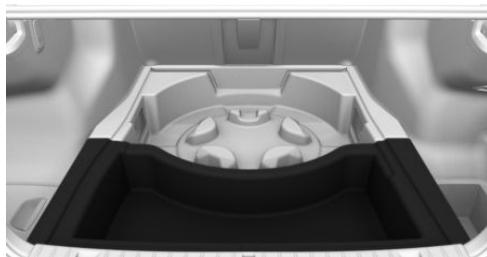


- Open lashing strap.

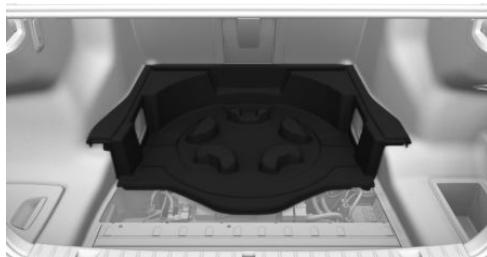
3. Remove tool holder.



4. Remove emergency wheel from the storage tray.
5. Release the lashing strap from the lashing eyes.
6. Remove the storage compartment.



7. Remove the storage tray



8. Insert the boot floor.

Inserting the emergency wheel and storage elements

Proceed in reverse order to insert the emergency wheel and storage elements.

Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is located in a protective sleeve in the boot.

Follow the installation and operating instructions enclosed in the protective sleeve.

For equipment versions with emergency wheel: remove the emergency wheel from the vehicle to install the ski and snowboard bag.



Driving hints

The chapter provides you with information that you may require in particular driving situations or operating modes.

Driving precautions

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Running in

General

Moving parts must adapt to one another. The following notes will help to maximise the vehicle's lifetime and efficiency. Do not use Launch Control, see page 125, when running in.

Safety note

WARNING

New parts and components can cause safety and Driver Assistance Systems to respond with a delay. There is a danger of accidents. After new parts have been installed, or if the vehicle is new, drive moderately and intervene at an early stage if necessary. Comply with running-in procedures for the corresponding parts and components.◀

Engine, gearbox and differential

Up to 2000 km, 1200 miles

Do not exceed the maximum engine revs and speed:

- ▶ With petrol engines, 4500 rpm and 160 km/h, approximately 100 mph.

- ▶ With diesel engines, 3500 rpm and 150 km/h, approximately 93 mph.

Generally avoid kick-down and driving under full load.

From 2000 km, 1200 miles onwards

Engine and road speeds can be gradually increased.

Tyres

New tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately, for production reasons.

During the first 300 km, approximately 200 miles, drive moderately.

Brake system

Brake discs and pads only achieve their full effectiveness after approximately 500 km, approximately 300 miles. Drive moderately during this running-in period.

Clutch

The clutch only begins to function optimally at approximately 500 km, approximately 300 miles. Engage the clutch gently during this running-in period.

After fitting new parts

Comply with the running-in procedures again if the components previously referred to are renewed.

General driving information

Closing the boot lid

Safety note

WARNING

When open, the boot lid protrudes above the vehicle, and in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvres, it can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users, or damage the vehicle. There is also the danger of exhaust fumes entering the interior of the vehicle. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Do not drive with the boot lid open.◀

Driving with the boot lid open

If there is no alternative to driving with the tailgate open:

- ▷ Close all the windows and the Glass Roof.
- ▷ Turn up the blower to a high output level.
- ▷ Maintain moderate speed.

Hot exhaust gas system

WARNING

During driving, high temperatures can be generated under the body, for example because of the exhaust system. If flammable materials, for example leaves or grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Never remove the heat shields fitted here, or apply underseal to them. Make sure that when driving, idling or parking, no flammable materials can come into contact with hot vehicle parts. Do not touch the hot exhaust gas system.◀

Exhaust gas particle filter

The exhaust gas particle filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particle filter as necessary.

The cleaning process takes a few minutes, during which the following may occur:

- ▷ Engine temporarily runs a bit roughly.
- ▷ Noise and a slight amount of smoke coming from the exhaust, even after stopping the engine.
- ▷ A slightly higher engine speed is required to achieve the usual power output development.

Radio signals

WARNING

Certain vehicle functions may be affected by interference from high-frequency radio signals. Such signals originate from various transmission systems, for example, from air traffic beacons or relay stations for mobile telecommunications.

We recommend you consult a Service Partner should you experience any difficulties in this regard.◀

Mobile communication in the vehicle

WARNING

There is a possibility of interference between the vehicle electronics and mobile radio devices. The radiation arises when mobile radio devices are transmitting. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. If possible, only use mobile radio devices, for example mobile telephones, in the interior with direct connection to an external antenna to exclude mutual interference and to dissipate the radiation from the vehicle's interior.◀

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tyres and the road.

This situation, known as aquaplaning, means that the tyre can actually lose contact completely with the road surface and the vehicle can neither be steered nor the brakes properly applied.

Wading

General

Comply with the following when driving through water:

- ▶ Only drive through calm water.
- ▶ Only drive through water up to a max. depth of 25 cm, approximately 9.8 in.
- ▶ Drive through water at no faster than 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph.

Safety note



NOTE

Driving through excessively deep water too fast can result in water entering the engine compartment, electrical system or transmission. There is a danger of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum specified water depth and maximum fording speed.◀

Safe braking

General

The vehicle is equipped with the Anti-lock Brake System ABS as standard.

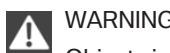
Perform full braking in situations that require it.

The vehicle can be steered. Any obstacles can be avoided by performing steering movements as smoothly as possible.

A pulsing of the brake pedal and hydraulic regulating sounds indicate that the Anti-lock Brake System ABS is regulating.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can cause functional noise. However, functional noises have no effect on the efficiency and operational safety of the brakes.

Objects in the range of movement of the pedals



WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel, or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a danger of accidents. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are appropriate for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use any loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely reattached after having been removed, for example for cleaning.◀

Wet roads

In damp weather, if road grit has been spread or there is heavy rain, apply the brakes lightly every few kilometres/miles.

In doing so, do not obstruct other road users.

The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads, and protects them against corrosion.

This way, brake power is available immediately, whenever it is needed.

Downhill gradients

General

When driving on long or steep downhill stretches, use the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise the brake system can overheat and braking effect is reduced.

Engine braking effect can be additionally increased by manually shifting down, even into first gear, if applicable.

Safety notes



WARNING

Even slight, continuous pressure on the brake pedal can cause overheating, brake pad wear or even brake system failure. There is a danger of accidents. Avoid excessive loads on the brake.◀



WARNING

When idling or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions are restricted or no longer available, for example the braking effect of the engine or power assistance for the braking force and steering. There is a danger of accidents. Do not drive at idle speed or with the engine switched off.◀

Corrosion of the brake disc

Corrosion of the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads increase in the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation when vehicle is parked

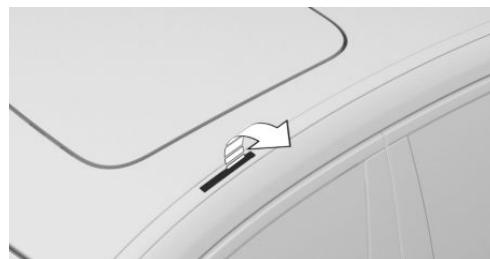
When the automatic air conditioning is in operation, condensation develops which exits underneath the vehicle.

Roof rack

General

Roof racks are available as special equipment.

Roof strip with flaps



The mounting points are located on the roof strip above the doors.

Fold the cover outwards.

Fitting

Follow the installation instructions for the roof rack.

Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the Glass Roof.

Magnetic roof luggage racks

Due to the aluminium roof, magnetic roof luggage racks cannot be used.

Loads

A loaded roof rack alters the vehicle's road behaviour and steering response by shifting its centre of gravity.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not exceed the permitted roof and axle loads or the permitted gross weight.
- ▷ Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the Glass Roof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load evenly.
- ▷ The roof load must not be spread over a large area.
- ▷ Place heavy items of luggage at the bottom.
- ▷ Securely fasten the luggage, for example with tensioning straps.

- ▶ Do not allow objects to protrude into the swing range of the boot lid.
- ▶ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration, braking or cornering.

Driving on a racing track

The higher mechanical and thermal loads involved in driving on racing tracks lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not conceived for use in motor sports competitions.

Before driving on a racing track, have the vehicle checked at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Towing a trailer

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The permitted trailer loads, axle loads, trailer nose weights and gross vehicle weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

The vehicle is equipped with reinforced springs on the rear axle and, depending on the type, with a more powerful cooling system.

For Australia/New Zealand: note

Towing

The Australian/New Zealand Standards AS 4177.1-2004 Caravan and light Towing a trailer components – trailer tow hitches and towing brackets contains the following statement, which is hereby accepted by the BMW Group Australia: FOR TOWING ONLY. The towbar supplied with your BMW vehicle should only be used for towing purposes, the towbar assembly should not be used in conjunction

with any towbar-mounted carrying device, such as, for example, a bicycle carrying rack.

As all BMW Group towbar assemblies are designed, tested and approved as a single unit, the practice of modifying or replacing the BMW supplied towball mount assembly is not approved. Use only the genuine BMW towball mount assembly.

BMW Group Australia does not recommend or support the installation and use of a Weight Distribution Hitch or Load Levelling Device on any BMW Group vehicle. The use of such devices may affect the vehicle's warranty status.

We recommend you consult your Authorised BMW Dealer for any further advice or clarification.

Before a journey

Trailer nose weight

The trailer nose weight should not be less than the minimum trailer nose weight of 25 kg, 55 lb. Utilise the maximum trailer nose weight as much as possible.

The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the nose weight reduce the maximum load of the towing vehicle. The nose weight increases the vehicle weight. Do not exceed the permitted total weight of the towing vehicle.

Loads

Distribute the load as evenly as possible over the loading area.

Stow the load as low as possible and as close as possible to the trailer axle. A low centre of trailer gravity makes the vehicle combination much more stable and safe to drive.

The permitted total weight of the trailer and the permitted trailer load of the vehicle must

not be exceeded. The smaller value is the limit which should be adhered to.

Tyre inflation pressure

Check the vehicle's and the trailer's tyre inflation pressures carefully.

On the vehicle, the tyre inflation pressure for higher loads applies.

Information about the tyre inflation pressure, see page 301.

For the trailer, the regulations of the manufacturer apply.

Runflat indicator RPA

Initialise the runflat indicator RPA, see page 318, after the tyre inflation pressure has been corrected or a trailer has been attached or detached.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM, see page 311, after the tyre inflation pressure has been corrected or a trailer has been attached or detached.

Exterior mirrors

Two exterior mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into your field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this type are available as special equipment from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Power consumption

Before beginning your journey, check the function of the trailer rear lights.

The power output of the trailer's rear lights must not exceed the following values:

- ▷ Turn indicators: 42 watts per side.
- ▷ Tail lights: 50 watt per side.
- ▷ Brake lights: 84 watt total.
- ▷ Rear fog light: 42 watt total.
- ▷ Reversing lights: 42 watt total.

- ▷ Turn indicators: 54 watts per side.
- ▷ Tail lights: 100 watts in total.
- ▷ Brake lights: 108 watt total.
- ▷ Reversing lights: 54 watt total.

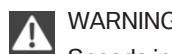
When towing a caravan, keep the activation times of power consumers short in order not to place an excessive load on the vehicle battery.

Towing a trailer

General

When the trailer socket is occupied, some Driver Assistance Systems are unavailable, or available to a limited extent. A Check Control message is shown where applicable.

Safety notes



WARNING

Speeds in excess of approximately 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph can be enough to produce a swaying or fishtailing motion, depending on the design of trailers and the loads they are carrying. There is a danger of accident or damage to property.

Keep to an appropriate speed when towing a trailer. In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◀



WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be adapted because of the increased axle load when towing a trailer. Driving with an inadequate tyre inflation pressure can damage the tyres. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 100 km/h / 60 mph. Increase the tyre inflation pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar. Note the maximum possible tyre inflation pressure stated on the tyre.◀

Upward gradients

General

In the interest of safety and to avoid holding up other traffic, do not attempt to climb upward gradients steeper than 12 % when towing a trailer.

If higher trailer loads have been retrospectively approved, the limit is 8 %.

Driving off on upward gradients

The parking brake is automatically released when the accelerator pedal is operated.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

- (P)** 1. Shortly before driving off, pull and release the switch.
The parking brake is engaged.
2. Apply the accelerator sufficiently to drive off.

Downhill gradients

On downward gradients, a vehicle combination has tendency to snake at an earlier stage.

Before the downward gradient, shift down manually to the next-lowest gear and drive downwards slowly.

High loads and high outside temperature

! NOTE

On long journeys with high trailer loads, a high outside temperature and a low fuel tank content, the fuel system can overheat leading to reduced engine power. There is a danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time. Make sure that on long journeys with high trailer loads and a high outside temperature, the fuel tank is more than 1/4 full.◀

Trailer Stability Control

Principle

The system supports you to neutralise a trailer's tendency to swing from side to side.

Trailer Stability Control detects snaking movements and promptly brakes the vehicle so that road speeds fall to below the critical range and the vehicle combination is stabilised.

General

If the power socket for the trailer is in use but no trailer is attached, for example during use of a bicycle carrier with lighting, the system may become active in extreme driving situations.

Operating requirements

The system is operational from a speed of approximately 65 km/h, approximately 40 mph, when towing a trailer and with the trailer socket in use.

System limits

The system is unable to intervene, or intervenes too late, in the following situations for example:

- ▷ If a trailer veers instantly, for example on slippery or loose road surfaces.
- ▷ If a trailer with a high centre of gravity tips over before a swinging motion is detected.
- ▷ If Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated or has malfunctioned.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Trailer tow hitch with electrically swivellable trailer hitch

General

The swivel-mounted ball linkage for the trailer tow hitch is located on the underside of the vehicle.

The LED in the button illuminates green if the system is operational.

Safety notes



NOTE

The trailer tow hitch is intended to be used with a trailer. If the ball head of the trailer tow hitch is swivelled out, it may become jammed when driving without a trailer or load carrier. There is a danger of damage to property. Swivel the ball linkage in when driving without a trailer or load carrier.◀

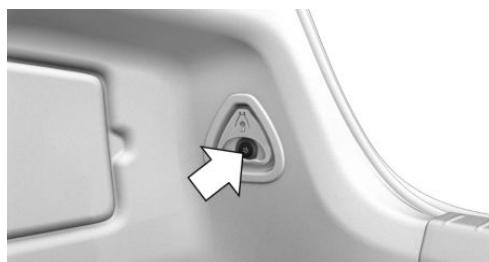


WARNING

If the ball linkage is not locked, unstable driving conditions or accidents can result. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Before a journey with a trailer or load carrier, check that the ball linkage is correctly locked.

If the ball linkage is not properly locked, the LED in the button illuminates red.◀

Overview



Button in the boot.

Swivelling out the ball linkage

1. Open the boot.
2. Step out of the swivelling area of the ball linkage behind the vehicle.
3. Press the button in the boot.

The ball linkage swivels outwards. The LED in the button flashes in green.

4. Wait until the ball linkage has reached the end position.

Swivelling in the ball linkage

1. Disconnect trailer or load carrier.
2. Remove any fittings for the track-stabilising devices.
3. Pull the power supply connector for the trailer and any adapters out of the socket.

4. Press the button in the boot.

The ball linkage swivels inwards. The LED in the button flashes in green.

5. Wait until the ball linkage has reached the end position.

Interruption or reversal of the swivel movement

General

The swivel movement is interrupted, might be reversed or is not performed if the current limit values are exceeded, for example at very low temperatures or if mechanical resistance is encountered. LED in button illuminates red.

Repeat the swivel movement with the engine running

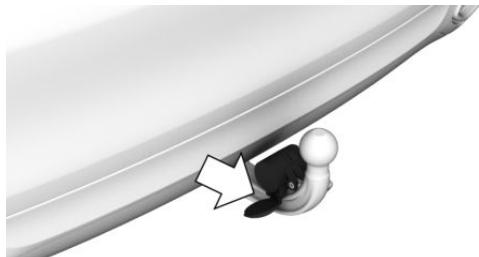
1. Switch on drive-ready state via the start/stop button.
2. Press the button in the boot and hold it until the ball linkage has moved completely in or out.

If necessary, repeat the swivel movement with the button pressed and the engine running.

The LED in the button illuminates green when the ball linkage has reached an end position.

If this reoccurs, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

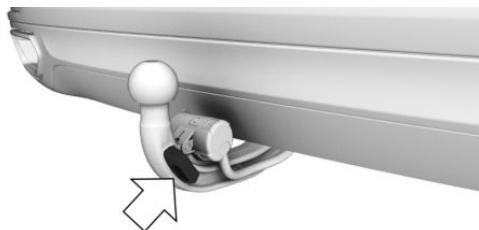
Trailer socket



The trailer socket is located on the trailer tow hitch.

Fold the cover downwards.

Eye for securing cable



There is an eye on the trailer tow hitch for fastening the trailer securing cable.

For increased safety when towing a trailer during a journey, attach the trailer securing cable to the eye.

Check that the securing cable can move freely and is not dragging on the ground.

Saving fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The vehicle possesses wide-ranging technologies for reducing consumption and emission levels.

Fuel consumption depends on various factors. A number of measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and reduce burden on environment.

Remove transported load that is not required

Extra weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove add-on parts after use

If no longer required, remove auxiliary mirrors, roof racks and rear-mounted racks after use.

Add-on parts on the vehicle interfere with its aerodynamic performance and increase fuel consumption.

Closing windows and the Glass Roof

An opened Glass Roof or opened window increases the drag and thus the fuel consumption.

Tyres

General

Tyres can have differing effects on fuel consumption. For example, fuel consumption can be affected by tyre size.

Checking tyre inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct tyre inflation pressures at least twice a month and before setting off on a longer journey.

Insufficient tyre inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and consequently fuel consumption and tyre wear.

Drive off immediately

Do not warm up the engine with the vehicle at a standstill; it is preferable to set off straight away, driving at moderate engine speeds.

This brings the cold engine to operating temperature as quickly as possible.

Drive with foresight

Anticipating the road situation and adopting a smooth driving style will reduce fuel consumption.

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily.

Keep an appropriate distance from the preceding vehicle.

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds reduces fuel consumption and wear.

Pay attention to the shift point indicator, see page 137, in the vehicle, if fitted.

Make use of overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

On downward stretches, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted in overrun mode.

Switch off the engine if stopping for a relatively long time

Stopping the engine

When you stop the vehicle for longer periods, for example at traffic lights, railway crossings or in traffic jams, switch off the engine.

Auto Start Stop function

The Auto Start Stop function of the vehicle shuts off the engine automatically during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then started again, the fuel consumption and emissions are reduced compared with a permanently running engine. Savings can be made just by stopping the engine for a few seconds.

Fuel consumption also depends on other factors, such as driving style, road condition, maintenance or environmental factors, for example.

Switch off functions which are not currently required

Functions such as seat heating or rear window heating require a great deal of energy and increase fuel consumption, especially in city traffic and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch these functions off if they are not required.

The ECO PRO drive mode supports energy-saving use of comfort functions. These functions are automatically deactivated wholly or partially.

Have the maintenance done

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve optimal economy and lifetime. BMW recommends having maintenance work carried out by a BMW Service Partner.

Please also see the BMW Maintenance System, see page 334.

ECO PRO

Principle

ECO PRO supports a fuel-efficient driving style. To do this, the engine management and comfort functions, such as for example the air conditioning power, are adjusted.

Steptronic transmission: the engine is disconnected from the gearbox in selector lever position D under certain circumstances. The vehicle rolls when idling to optimise fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

In addition, situation-dependent notes, ECO PRO tips, can be displayed which help you to drive with optimum fuel consumption.

In the instrument cluster, the extension of the range achieved as a result can be displayed as a bonus range.

General

The system comprises the following EfficientDynamics functions and EfficientDynamics displays:

- ▷ ECO PRO bonus range, see page 287.
- ▷ ECO PRO air conditioning, see page 286.
- ▷ Route-ahead assistant, see page 288.
- ▷ Coasting driving state, see page 290.
- ▷ Driving style analysis, see page 291.

Overview



 **Button**

Activating ECO PRO

 Press the button. ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL

Calling up via the drive experience switch

1. Activating ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"

Calling up via iDrive

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Driving Experience Control"
4. "Configure ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used driver profile.

Activating/deactivating ECO PRO functions

The following ECO PRO functions can be activated / deactivated:

- ▷ "ECO PRO limit"
- ▷ "Coasting"
- ▷ "ECO PRO seat climate control"
- ▷ "ECO PRO climate control"
- ▷ "ECO PRO light and sight"
- ▷ "Route-ahead assistant"

The settings are saved for the currently used driver profile.

ECO PRO Limit

- ▷ Activate ECO PRO Limit:

"ECO PRO limit"

An ECO PRO tip is shown when the speed of the set ECO PRO limit is exceeded.

- ▷ Set the ECO PRO Limit speed:

"Tip at:"

Select required speed.

Coasting

The coasting function enables the engine to be operated at idle when decelerating in order to save fuel.

Deactivate the function to use the braking effect of the engine when driving downhill.

ECO PRO seat air conditioning

The output from the seat heating and, if appropriate, the seat ventilation is reduced when ECO PRO is activated.

ECO PRO air conditioning

The air conditioning is adjusted for efficient fuel consumption.

To achieve this, the set temperature is adjusted slightly and the interior is heated or cooled more slowly to reduce consumption.

Mirror heating is available when the outside temperature is low.

ECO PRO light and sight

The power output of the exterior mirror and the rear window heating is reduced. Depending on the equipment, the dynamic ECO light function, see page 149, is activated additionally.

Route-ahead assistant

The route-ahead assistant detects upcoming route stages and alerts the driver.

Resetting settings

Reset ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL to the default setting:

"Reset to ECO PRO STANDARD"

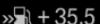
Display in the instrument cluster

General

When activating the ECO PRO drive mode, the display changes to a special display.

The displays can sometimes differ from the displays in the instrument cluster.

ECO PRO bonus range

 + 35.5 An extension of range can be achieved due to adjusted driving style.

This can be displayed as bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is contained in the display of the range.

Depending on the equipment version, blue bar segments indicate the range gained in steps.

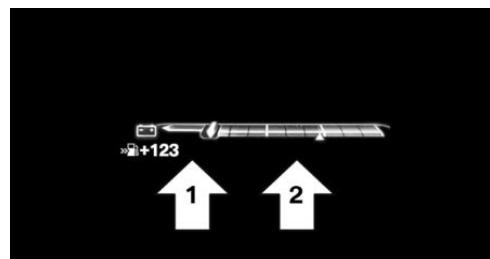
If the bonus range is shown in grey, the current driving style is inefficient.

The display turns blue as soon as all the conditions for driving with optimised fuel consumption are met.

After filling up, the bonus range is automatically reset.

Fuel consumption display

Instrument cluster without extended functionality



Instrument cluster with extended functionality



Information about the current driving style

A pointer in the fuel consumption display provides information about the current driving style:

- ▷ The current fuel consumption in relation to the average consumption is displayed.
- ▷ Pointer in the area arrow 1: display of the energy recuperation achieved when coasting or when braking.
- ▷ Pointer in area arrow 2: display when accelerating.

If the acceleration is inefficient, the area between average consumption and current fuel consumption is coloured red.

The following information is also displayed, depending on the situation:

- ▷ Depending on the equipment version: the route covered in the coasting driving state, see page 290.
- ▷ The total time with the engine switched off, see page 110, during automatic engine stops.
- ▷ A shift point indicator, see page 137, as recommendation to engage a more fuel-efficient gear.

Display on the Control Display

Displaying EfficientDynamics information

The current operating method of the ECO PRO functions can be shown on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"
4.  Select the symbol.

Following functions are displayed:

- ▷ Auto Start Stop function.
- ▷ Energy recuperation.
- ▷ Coasting.

Showing fuel consumption history

The following functions can be shown on the Control Display:

- ▷ Average consumption.
- ▷ The route covered while coasting.
- ▷ The duration for which the Auto Start Stop function has stopped the engine.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"
4.  Select the symbol.

Vertical bars show the fuel consumption for the selected route.

Selecting the route length

Via iDrive:

1.  Press the button.
2. Select the desired route length or scaling.

Resetting fuel consumption history

Via iDrive:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Reset consumption history"

Route-ahead assistant

Principle

The function helps to save fuel and supports an anticipatory driving style. Using the navigation data, certain sections of the route ahead can be detected early and information can be given.

General

The recognised sections of the route, such as built-up areas or bends ahead, for example, require a reduction in speed.

The alert is also given if the section of the route ahead cannot yet be detected when driving.

The alert is shown until the section of the route is reached.

If there is an instruction, the speed can be reduced in way that saves fuel by coming off the gas and coasting.

Depending on the situation, the system also independently used the engine brake by interrupting the coasting function, see page 290.

Operating requirements

The function is available in ECO PRO drive mode.

The function depends on how up-to-date the navigation data is and its quality.

The navigation data can be updated.

Display

Display in the instrument cluster



An alert regarding a section of the route ahead is given as a recommendation to use the coasting function.

An additional symbol shows the detected section of the route:

Symbol Section of the road in front



Speed limit or town entrance.



Junction or turn, exit from a fast road.



Corner.



Roundabout.

Display in the Head-Up Display



The advance notice alert can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

Display on the Control Display



An alert is shown in the driving style analysis display on the Control Display if there is a corresponding section of the route.

Call up the driving style analysis display via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Using route-ahead assistant

A section of the route ahead is shown:

1. Remove your foot from the accelerator.
2. Allow the vehicle to coast until you reach the section of road displayed.
3. Adjust the speed by braking as necessary.

System limits

The function is not available in the following situations:

- ▷ The speed is below 50 km/h, approximately 30 mph.
- ▷ With a temporary and variable speed limit, such as at road works.
- ▷ With inadequate quality of the navigation data.
- ▷ With Active Cruise Control.
- ▷ When towing a trailer.

Coasting

Principle

The function helps to save fuel.

To do this, the engine is automatically disconnected from the gearbox in selector lever position D under certain circumstances. The vehicle continues to roll in idle to reduce consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This vehicle condition is called coasting.

As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is pressed, the engine is automatically connected again.

General

Coasting is a component of ECO PRO drive mode.

Coasting is automatically activated by calling up the ECO PRO drive mode via the drive experience switch.

A precautionary driving style helps to use the function frequently and supports the consumption-reducing effect of coasting.

Operating requirements

The function is available in ECO PRO drive mode in the speed range of approximately 50 km/h, 30 mph to 160 km/h, 100 mph if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and gearbox are at operating temperature.

Operation via shift paddles

Principle

The coasting state can be controlled using the shift paddles.

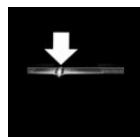
Activating, deactivating coasting using shift paddles

1. Pull the right-hand shift paddle to shift to top gear.
2. To activate coasting mode, actuate the right-hand shift paddle again.

Actuate the left-hand shift paddle to deactivate.

Display

Instrument cluster without extended functionality



The marking in the fuel consumption display underneath the revolution counter has a blue background and is at zero. The revolution counter indicates that the engine is approximately at idle speed.

Instrument cluster with extended functionality



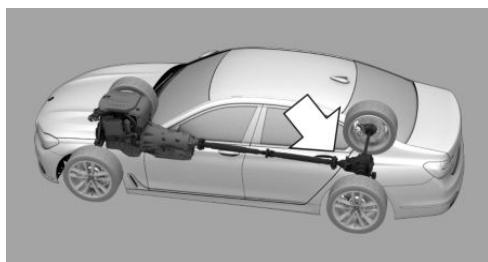
The marking in the fuel consumption display has a blue background and is at zero.

The route covered in coasting mode is displayed.

Display on the Control Display

In EfficientDynamics, the coasting drive state is shown during the journey.

The route covered in the coasting drive state is displayed in the fuel consumption history. The counter reading is reset each time you fill up.



Blue colour: coasting drive state.

Displaying EfficientDynamics information

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"

System limits

The function is not available, if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- ▷ Driving in the handling limit range or on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Battery charge state temporarily too low or too high power requirement in the on-board network.
- ▷ Towing a trailer.

Driving style analysis

Principle

The function helps you to develop a particularly efficient driving style and to save fuel.

To do this, the driving style is analysed. The evaluation is performed in various categories and is shown on the Control Display.

Using this display, the individual driving style can be adjusted to save fuel.

General

The current trip is evaluated.

To support an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are shown during the journey.

Adapting the driving style can increase the range of the vehicle.

This gain in range is shown as a bonus range on the instrument cluster and Control Display.

Operating requirements

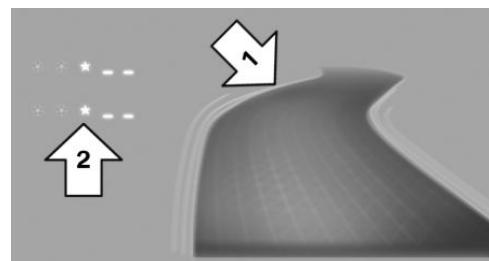
The function is available in ECO PRO drive mode.

Calling up ECO PRO driving style analysis

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Driving style analysis"

Display on the Control Display



The display of the ECO PRO driving style analyser consists of a symbolised road and a performance table.

The road symbolises the efficiency of the driving style. The more efficient the driving style, the smoother the road appears on the image, arrow 1.

The performance table contains stars. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are contained in the table, arrow 2, and the faster the bonus range increases.

On the other hand, if the driving style is inefficient, a bumpier road and a reduced number of stars is shown.



Mobility

To assist you in preserving your vehicle's mobility, this section contains important information on operating fluids, wheels and tyres, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

Refuelling

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Before refuelling, observe notes on fuel quality, see page 296.

On vehicles with diesel engines, the fuel filler neck is designed for refuelling at diesel pumps.

Safety note



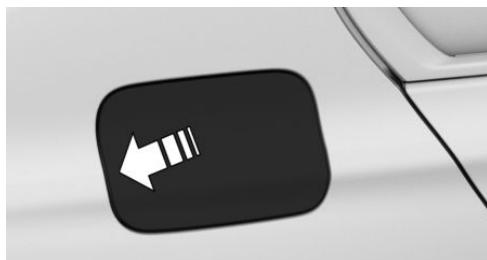
NOTE

If the range drops below 50 km, approximately 30 miles, the engine may no longer be supplied with sufficient fuel. Engine function is no longer ensured. There is a danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time.◀

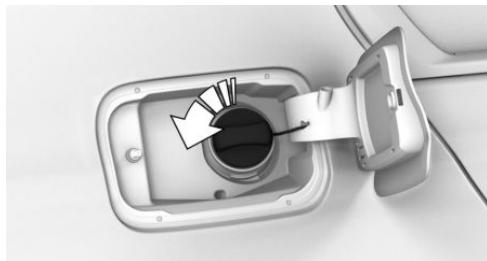
Fuel tank cap

Opening

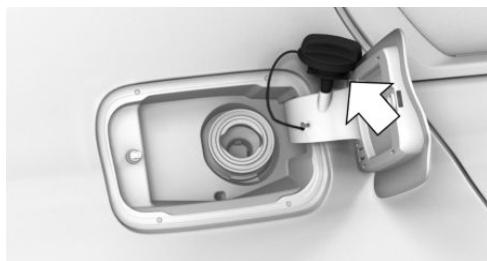
1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.



2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



Closing



WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel tank cap may become trapped and crushed when turning the cap to close it. It will then not be possible to close the cap properly. Fuel or fuel vapours can leak out. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the retaining strap does not get trapped and crushed when closing the cap.◀

1. Fit the tank cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

Unlocking the fuel filler flap manually

For example, if there is an electrical fault.

Have the fuel filler flap unlocked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Notes when refuelling

General

When refuelling, insert the filler nozzle fully into the filler neck. Lifting the filler nozzle during refuelling results in the following:

- ▷ The fuel supply being cut off prematurely.
- ▷ Fuel vapour and fumes being fed back less effectively.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

Comply with the safety regulations displayed at filling stations.

Safety note



NOTE

Fuels are poisonous and aggressive. Overfilling the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. If fuel comes into contact with painted surfaces, it can damage them. This pollutes

the environment. There is a danger of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.◀

Fuel

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Fuel quality

General

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that is adapted to the conditions in winter or summer. Fuel that is sold in winter facilitates cold starting, for example.

Petrol

General

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or low in sulphur content.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

You can fill up with fuels with a maximum proportion of ethanol of 10 %, in other words E10.

The engine has anti-knock control. This means that different petrol grades can be used.

Safety notes

NOTE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. In addition, the catalytic converter will be permanently damaged. There is a

danger of damage to property. Do not use the following fuel or additives with petrol engines:

- ▷ Leaded petrol.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for example manganese or iron.

After filling the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and engine. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not refuel with fuel with a higher proportion of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuel containing methanol, for example M5 to M100.◀

NOTE

Fuel below the specified minimum quality can impact the engine function or lead to engine damage. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not refuel with petrol below the specified minimum quality.◀

Petrol grade

Super, RON 95.

Minimum grade

Unleaded petrol, with RON 91.

Diesel

Safety note

NOTE

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. There is a danger of damage to property.

Note the following with diesel engines:

- ▷ Do not fill up with pure methyl ester.
- ▷ Only fill up with biodiesel with a maximum of B7/7 % according to EN 590.
- ▷ Do not fill up with petrol.
- ▷ The vehicle manufacturer recommends only using diesel additives that have been classified as suitable.

After filling the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

Diesel quality

The engine is designed to run on diesel fuel to DIN EN 590 and ASTM D975.

Reduction agent can be topped up at any time. AdBlue reduction agents is a registered trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e. V. (VDA).

Reduction agent is available at many service stations.

Preferably add reduction agent at a pump dispenser, see page [299](#).

AdBlue at low temperatures

Due to its physical properties, it is possible that reduction agent has to be topped up more frequently at temperatures below -5 °C/+23 °F.

At temperatures below -11 °C/+12 °F, it might only be possible to measure and display the fill level after a short journey.

At low temperatures, only top up with reduction agent directly before starting the trip.

BMW recommends Shell Quality Fuels

BMW Diesel with BluePerformance

Principle

BMW Diesel with BluePerformance reduces nitrous oxides in the diesel exhaust by injecting the reduction agent AdBlue into the exhaust stream. In the catalytic converter, this produces a chemical reaction that minimises the nitrous oxides.

General

The vehicle has a tank which has to be topped up.

To be able to establish drive-ready state in the usual way, sufficient reduction agent must be present.

Display on the Control Display

Displaying range and top-up quantity

The range up to the latest possible top-up time and the accurate top-up quantity are shown on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "AdBlue"

Displays in the instrument cluster

Tank display

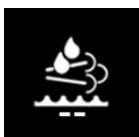
The display in the instrument cluster informs you of the remaining distance which can be travelled with the current level.

Do not use up all of the displayed distance, otherwise it might not be possible to re-establish drive-ready state after parking.



- ▷ White light: top up reduction agent at next opportunity.
- ▷ Yellow light: not enough reduction agent available. Remaining range is shown in instrument cluster. Immediately top up reduction agent, see page 298.

AdBlue on the minimum level



Remaining range is shown in instrument cluster. Replenish with at least 10 litres of reduction agent. Engine continues to run, as long as it is not stopped and all other operating conditions are met, for example, enough fuel.

System fault

If there is a system fault, a Check Control message is displayed.

Visit the nearest Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

AdBlue topping up

BMW recommends having the reduction agent replenished by a Service Partner as part of a regular maintenance schedule.

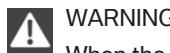
If you keep to this maintenance schedule, a single top-up is generally required between the maintenance appointments.

Under certain circumstances, for example due to particularly dynamic driving style or operating the vehicle with a trailer, topping up between maintenance appointments more than once may be necessary.

As soon as the tank display is shown in the instrument cluster, have the reduction agent topped up, to prevent drive-ready state from no longer being able to be established.

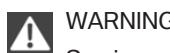
Topping up AdBlue yourself

Safety notes



WARNING

When the reduction agent container is opened, small quantities of ammonia vapours can emerge. Ammonia vapours have a pungent smell and irritate the skin, mucous membranes and eyes. There is a danger of injury. Do not inhale ammonia vapours. Do not allow reduction agent to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow it. Keep children away from reduction agents.◀



WARNING

Service products, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a danger of injury or even death. Comply with the notes on the containers. Do not allow service products to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.◀



NOTE

The constituents of reduction agent are highly aggressive. There is a danger of damage to property. Avoid contact of reduction agent with surfaces of the vehicle.◀

Suitable AdBlue

AdBlue of standard ISO 22241-1

At many service stations, reduction agent is available at a special pump dispenser. Preferably add reduction agent at a pump dispenser.

If no pump dispenser is available, reduction agent can be replenished from a container. Reduction agent is available in various containers. Preferably use the special bottle recommended by BMW. With this bottle and its special adapter, reduction agent can be topped up conveniently.

Top up quantity

When the reserve indicator starts, top up at least 5 litres, approx. 1.3 gal.

The tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

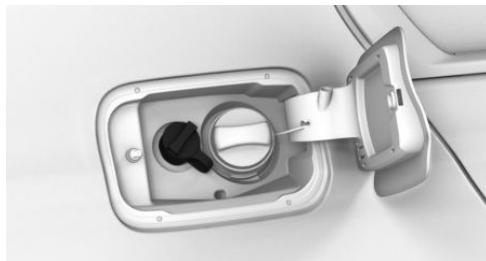
Indicating top-up quantity

Precise top-up quantity is shown on Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "AdBlue"

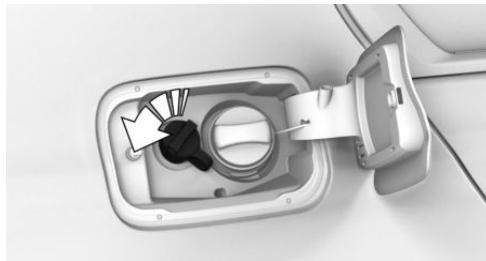
Reduction agent tank



The fuel tank cap for the reduction agent is located next to the fuel tank cap for the fuel tank.

Replenishing reduction agent at the pump dispenser

1. Open fuel filler flap, see page 294.
2. Turn the reduction agent tank cap anti-clockwise and remove.



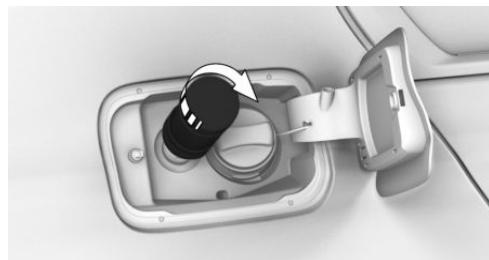
3. Use the pump nozzle to replenish at least the recommended top-up quantity, see page 299.



4. Put fuel tank cap back on and turn clockwise.
5. Close the fuel filler flap.

Replenishing reduction agent with a bottle

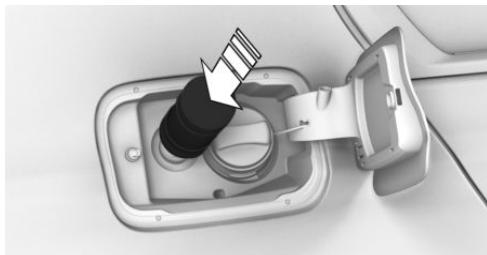
1. Open fuel filler flap, see page 294.
2. Turn the reduction agent tank cap anti-clockwise and remove.
3. Attach the bottle and turn clockwise until it stops.



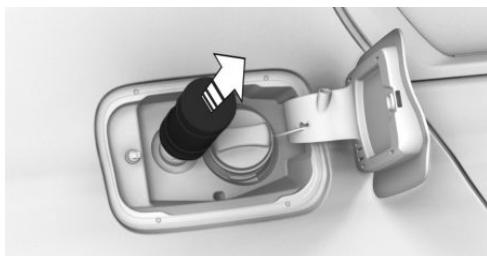
4. Push the bottle down.

The tank in the vehicle is filled.

The tank in the vehicle is filled when the level in the bottle does not change any more. It is not possible to overfill.



5. Pull back bottle and unscrew.



6. Put fuel tank cap back on and turn clockwise.
7. Close the fuel filler flap.

Filling with an incorrect fluid

General

A Check Control message is displayed if the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid.

If the wrong type of liquid has been added, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety note



WARNING

After filling with an incorrect liquid, the system may heat up and catch fire. There is a danger of fire and injury. Only fill with liquids that are intended for the tank. Do not start the engine after filling with an incorrect liquid.◀

After filling reduction agent

Tank display



After topping up, the tank display continues to be shown with remaining range.

Drive-ready state can be established.

After a journey of several minutes, the reserve range display goes out.

AdBlue on the minimum level



After filling up, the display continues to be shown.

Drive-ready state can only be established when the display is no longer illuminated.

1. Press the start/stop button three times.
Display is no longer illuminated after approximately 1 minute.
2. Press the start/stop button and establish drive-ready state.

Disposing of bottles



Dispose of bottles for AdBlue at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Only dispose of bottles with normal waste if the local regulations permit this.

Wheels and tyres

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Tyre inflation pressure

General

A tyre's condition and inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ Lifetime of the tyre.
- ▷ Driving safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety note



WARNING

A tyre with too little or no tyre inflation pressure can heat up significantly and sustain damage. Driving properties, for example steering and braking, will be impaired as a result. There is a danger of accidents. Check the tyre inflation pressure regularly and adjust as necessary, for example twice a month or before any long journey.◀

Tyre inflation pressure information

On the door pillar



The tyre inflation pressures are shown on the door pillar of the driver door.

The tyre inflation pressure data applies to the tyre sizes categorised by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable and the tyre makes recommended for the respective vehicle type.

If the tyre's speed code cannot be found, then the tyre inflation pressure for the corresponding tyre size applies.

More information regarding wheels and tyres can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For Australia/New Zealand



WARNING

The inflation pressures on the tyre label are applicable only for tyres explicitly mentioned on the label. Since tyre inflation pressures for tyres that may be covered by the label – by size, speed category and load rating/ load index – but not explicitly mentioned on the label may be different. Please obtain adequate inflation pressures in accordance with the tyre manufacturer's specifications at your tyre dealer.◀

On the Control Display

The current tyre inflation pressure values and the intended tyre inflation pressure values for the mounted tyres can be displayed on the Control Display.

To ensure that they are displayed correctly, the tyre sizes must be stored in the system and must have been set, see page 311, for the mounted tyres.

The current tyre inflation pressure value is located on each tyre.

The intended tyre inflation pressure value is located towards the bottom of the Control Display.

Checking the tyre inflation pressure

General

Tyres heat up while driving. The tyre inflation pressure increases with the temperature of the tyre.

Tyres have a natural, uniform loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Inflating devices can display a pressure as much as 0.1 bar too low.

Checking using tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the door pillar

The tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the tyre inflation pressure sign on the door pillar only relate to cold tyres or tyres at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tyre inflation pressures when the tyres are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ A driving distance of max. 2 km, 1.25 miles has not been exceeded.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a journey.

Regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the boot and correct the pressure if necessary.

1. Determine the intended tyre inflation pressures for the tyres when fitted to the vehicle, see page 301.
2. Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, using a pressure gauge, for example.
3. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure value deviates from the specified value.
4. Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tyre valves.

Checking using the tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the Control Display

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⓘ "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. Check if the current tyre inflation pressures match the intended tyre pressure value.
5. Correct the tyre inflation pressure if the current tyre inflation pressure value deviates from the intended value.

After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

For the runflat indicator RPA: reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA.

For the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM: for tyres that cannot be found in the tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the Control Display, reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM.

Speed code letter

Q = up to 160 km/h/100 mph

R = up to 170 km/h/106 mph

S = up to 180 km/h/112 mph

T = up to 190 km/h/118 mph

H = up to 210 km/h/131 mph

V = up to 240 km/h/150 mph

W = up to 270 km/h/167 mph

Y = up to 300 km/h/186 mph

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.

- ▷ Unusual tyre or running noises.

- ▷ Unusual vehicle response, such as pronounced pulling to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Driving over kerbs.
- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tyre inflation pressure too low.
- ▷ Vehicle overloading.
- ▷ Incorrect tyre storage.

Tyre tread

Summer tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 3 mm, 0.12 in, otherwise there is a high risk of aquaplaning.

Winter tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 4 mm, 0.16 in, otherwise the vehicle's suitability for winter use is restricted.

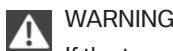
Minimum tread depth



Wear displays are distributed across the tyre circumference and have the legally prescribed minimum height of 1.6 mm, approximately 0.06 in.

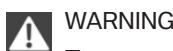
The positions of the wear displays are identified on the tyre's side wall by TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Safety notes



WARNING

If the tyres are damaged, the tyre inflation pressure may be reduced which in turn could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. There is a danger of accidents. If you receive a message indicating tyre damage while you are driving, immediately reduce speed and bring the vehicle to a stop. Have the wheels and tyres checked. To do so, carefully drive to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there. Do not repair damaged tyres, have them renewed instead.◀



WARNING

Tyres can become damaged by running over obstacles, for example kerbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tyre cross-section. The smaller the tyre cross-section, the higher the risk of tyre damage. There is a danger of accidents and damage to property. If possible, drive around obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.◀

Tyre damage

General

Inspect tyres regularly for damage, the presence of foreign bodies and wear.

Vehicle behaviour that may indicate tyre damage or other faults:

Age of tyres

Recommendation

Irrespective of the tyre tread depth, change the tyres after 6 years at the latest.

Date of manufacture

The date of manufacture of the tyre is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

Designation	Date of manufacture
DOT ... 3817	38th week of 2017

Replacement of wheels and tyres

Fitting and balancing

Have the wheel fitted and balanced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Wheel/tyre combination

General

Information on the correct wheel/tyre combination and rim designs for the vehicle can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes

WARNING

Wheels and tyres that are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. For example they could come into contact with the bodywork on account of their tolerances, despite having the same nominal size. There is a danger of accidents. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been categorised as suitable for the respective vehicle type.◀



WARNING

Mounted steel wheels can lead to technical problems, for example wheel studs may work loose or brake discs may be damaged. There is a danger of accidents. Do not install steel wheels.◀



WARNING

Incorrect wheel/tyre combinations impair the vehicle's driving properties and interfere with the proper functioning of various systems, such as ABS or DSC. There is a danger of accidents. To maintain good vehicle handling, always fit tyres of the same make and tread pattern to all wheels. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using wheels and tyres that have been categorised as suitable for the respective vehicle type. After a tyre has been damaged, ensure that the original wheel/tyre combination is re-created.◀

Recommended makes of tyre



Certain makes of tyre are recommended by the manufacturer of the vehicle for each tyre size. The tyre brands can be identified by a star on the side wall of the tyre.

New tyres

New tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately, for production reasons. During the first 300 km, approximately 200 miles, drive moderately.

Retreaded tyres



WARNING

Retreaded tyres may have different tyre carcasses. Their durability may be reduced with increasing age. There is a danger of accidents. Do not use retreaded tyres.◀

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against the use of retreaded tyres.

Winter tyres

General

For operation on wintry carriageways, winter tyres are recommended.

Although so-called all-season tyres with an M+S label have better winter characteristics than summer tyres, they do not normally match the performance of winter tyres.

Maximum speed of winter tyres

If the vehicle is capable of maximum speeds higher than the speed permitted for the winter tyres, display an indicating label stating the maximum permitted speed in the driver's field of view. The indicating label is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If winter tyres are fitted, observe and do not exceed the respectively permitted maximum speed.

Run-flat tyres

For your own safety, when changing run-flat tyres, only use run-flat tyres as replacements. There is no spare wheel available in the event of a breakdown. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Interchanging front and rear wheels

Different tread wear patterns arise on the wheels of the front and rear axles, depending on the individual operating conditions. To achieve even wear, it is possible to swap the wheels over in pairs from one axle to the other. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. After changing, check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust if necessary.

Such a change is not permitted in vehicles with different tyre or rim dimensions on the front and rear axles.

Storing tyres

Air pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tyre inflation pressure indicated on the tyre's side wall.

Tyre storage

Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and dark place when not in use.

Protect the tyres against contamination from oil, grease and solvents.

Do not leave the tyres in plastic bags.

Remove dirt from the wheels or tyres.

Run-flat tyres

Principle

In the event of a complete loss of tyre inflation pressure, run-flat tyres enable you to continue driving, with certain restrictions.

General

These wheels consist of tyres that are self-supporting within certain limitations, and special rims.

The reinforced side wall means that the tyre keeps the vehicle mobile to a degree even if tyre inflation pressure has been lost.

Observe the notes on continuing to drive with a flat tyre.

Safety notes

WARNING

A run-flat tyre which has low tyre inflation pressure or no tyre inflation pressure at all will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering characteristics. There is a danger of accidents.

Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.◀

WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in heavy trailers starting to slalom. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph. In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◀

Label



The tyres are identified on the tyre's side wall by RSC Runflat System Component.

Remedying flat tyres

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle on a solid surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Protect the vehicle against rolling, by applying the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ Set up the warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Mobility System

Principle

With the Mobility System, minor tyre damage can be quickly sealed, to allow you to drive on. For this purpose, liquid sealant is pumped into the tyres which encloses the damage from the inside when it hardens.

General

- ▷ Please observe the notes on the application of the Mobility System which are on the compressor and the sealant container.
- ▷ Applying the Mobility System can be ineffective for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm.
- ▷ Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if you are unable to put the tyre back in operation.
- ▷ If possible, foreign matter that has penetrated the tyre should remain inside the tyre. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tyre.

- ▷ Remove the speed limit sticker from the sealant container and attach to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Using sealants can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.
- ▷ The compressor can be used to check the tyre inflation pressure.

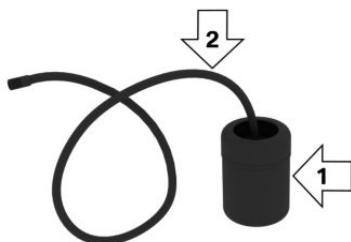
Overview

Storage



The Mobility System is located in the left storage compartment of the boot.

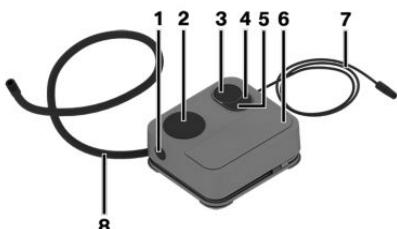
Sealant container



- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filler hose, arrow 2.

Note the use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



- 1 Unlocking sealant container
- 2 Sealant container holder
- 3 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 4 Reduce tyre inflation pressure button
- 5 On/Off button
- 6 Compressor
- 7 Plug/cable for socket
- 8 Connecting hose

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle on a solid surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Protect the vehicle against rolling, by applying the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage the steering wheel lock with the wheels in the straight-ahead position.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ Set up the warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

Filling with sealing compound

Safety notes



DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust fumes contain pollutants which are colourless and odour-

less. In enclosed spaces, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. There is a danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀



NOTE

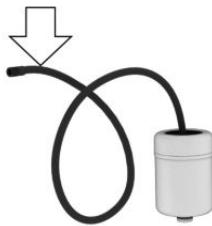
The compressor can overheat if operated for too long. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not let the compressor run for longer than 10 minutes.◀

Filling

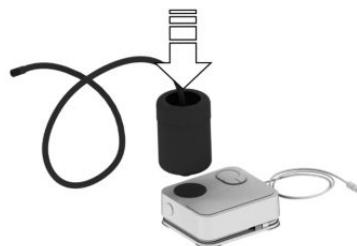
1. Shake the sealant container.



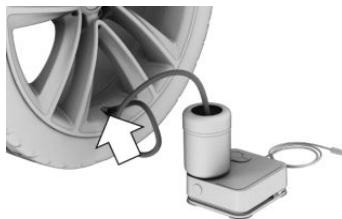
2. Pull filler hose completely from the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



3. Push the sealant container into the bracket on the compressor housing, until it audibly engages.



4. Screw the filler hose of the sealant container onto the tyre valve of the faulty wheel.



5. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior while the compressor is switched off.



6. Switch on the compressor with standby state switched on or the engine running.



Let the compressor run for approximately 10 minutes to fill the sealing compound and achieve a tyre inflation pressure of approximately 2.5 bar.

The tyre inflation pressure may rise to approximately 5 bar during the filling process of the sealing compound. Do not switch off the compressor during this step.

Checking and adjusting the tyre inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Read off the tyre inflation pressure as shown on the tyre pressure indicator.

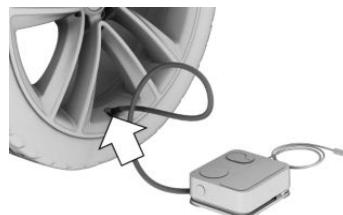
To be able to continue the journey, a tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and storing the sealant container

1. Unscrew the filler hose of the sealant container from the tyre valve.
2. Press the red unlocking device.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Pack and store the sealant container to avoid soiling the boot.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is not reached

1. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Drive forwards and backwards by 10 m, approximately 400 inches, to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
3. Screw the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



4. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior.



5. Switch on the compressor with standby state switched on or the engine running.
- If the tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is not reached, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or a qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- If the tyre inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum inflation pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
 7. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
 8. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tyre inflation pressure is reached

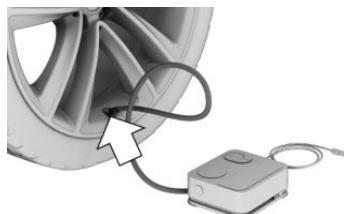
1. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
2. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.
4. Immediately drive for approximately 10 km/5 mi to evenly distribute the sealing compound in the tyre.

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h/50 mph.

If possible, do not drive slower than 20 km/h/12 mph.

Adjusting

1. Stop in a suitable area.
2. Screw the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



3. Insert the plug into the socket in the vehicle interior.



4. Correct tyre inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.
 - ▷ To increase tyre inflation pressure: switch on the compressor with standby

state switched on or the engine running.

- ▷ To reduce tyre inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.
- 5. Unscrew the connecting hose of the compressor from the tyre valve.
- 6. Unplug the connector from the socket in the vehicle interior.
- 7. Store Mobility System in the vehicle.

Resuming with journey

Do not exceed maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph.

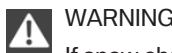
Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA, see page 318.

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM, see page 311.

Have the punctured tyre and the sealant container of the Mobility System replaced as soon as possible.

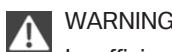
Snow chains

Safety notes



WARNING

If snow chains are installed on unsuitable tyres, the snow chains can come in contact with vehicle parts. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Only fit the snow chains on tyres that the manufacturer has authorised as suitable for snow chains.◀



WARNING

Insufficiently tight snow chains can damage tyres and vehicle components. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Ensure that the snow chains are always adequately taut. Re-tighten them if necessary in accordance with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.◀

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using fine-link snow chains. Certain fine-link snow chains have been tested, found safe for use in traffic, and categorised as suitable by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Using

Snow chains may only be used in pairs on the rear wheels with tyres of the following sizes:

- ▷ 225/55 R 17.
- ▷ 245/45 R 18.
- ▷ 245/40 R 19.

Observe the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialise the runflat indicator RPA with snow chains fitted, as it may give incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM with snow chains fitted, as it may give incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains fitted, activate Dynamic Traction Control DTC briefly as required in order to optimise traction.

Maximum speed with snow chains

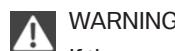
When snow chains are fitted, do not exceed 50 km/h, 30 mph.

Rear-wheel steering in snow chain operation

General

To ensure that the wheels can move as required when using snow chains, the rear-wheel steering of the Integral Active Steering must be switched off when snow chains are installed.

Safety note



WARNING

If the rear-wheel steering is activated while snow chains are installed, contact between the snow chains and body can occur. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Switch the rear-wheel steering off when snow chains are installed.◀

Switching off the rear-wheel steering

The rear-wheel steering is switched off by selecting the 'snow chains fitted' setting.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Snow chains"
4. "Snow chains fitted"

The rear-wheel steering is switched on again automatically when the permitted maximum speed for snow chains of 50 km/h, 30 mph, is reached.

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

Principle

The system monitors the tyre inflation pressure in the four fitted tyres. The system warns if the tyre inflation pressure in one or more tyres has fallen.

General

Sensors in the tyre valves measure the tyre inflation pressure and tyre temperature.

With the tyre settings in iDrive, the system can display the specified pressures automatically and compare them with the current tyre inflation pressures.

In the case of tyres that are not on the tyre inflation pressure inscriptions on the vehicle, see page 301, for example tyres with special approval, the system must be actively reset. The

current tyre inflation pressures are then accepted as target values.

To operate the system, also comply with the other information and notes in the chapter Tyre inflation pressure, see page 301.

Safety note



WARNING

The specified tyre pressures display does not replace the tyre inflation pressure information on the vehicle. Incorrect specifications in the tyre settings will result in incorrect specified tyre inflation pressure. Reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is then not ensured. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Make sure that the tyre sizes of the fitted tyres are entered correctly and that they match the specifications on the tyres and the tyre inflation pressure information.◀

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is not ensured:

- ▷ After every tyre or wheel change, the correct specifications for the fitted tyres must be entered in the tyre settings, see page 312.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval:
 - ▷ After every tyre or wheel change, a reset must be carried out with the correct tyre inflation pressure.
 - ▷ A reset must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.
- ▷ Wheels with TPM wheel electronics.

Tyre settings

General

The tyre sizes of the fitted tyres can be found in the tyre inflation pressure information, see page 301, or directly on the tyres.

The tyre specifications do not have to be re-entered if the tyre inflation pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tyres, the last tyre specifications entered in each case are saved. This means that the settings of the sets of tyres last used can be selected after a tyre or wheel change.

Calling up the menu

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

Adjusting the settings

Via iDrive:

1. "Tyre settings"
2. Select tyres:
 - ▷ "Summer tyres"
 - ▷ "Winter tyres/all-season tyres"
3. "Current:"
4. Select the type of tyre fitted on the rear axle:
 - ▷ Tyre size, for example 245/45 R18 96 Y.
 - ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: "Other tyre"
5. Select the load status of the vehicle if a tyre size has been selected.
6. "Confirm settings"

The measurement of the current tyre inflation pressure is started. The progress of the measurement is shown.

Status display

Current status

The status of the system for example whether the system is active, can be shown on the Control Display.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (↓) "Tyre Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tyre inflation pressure

The current tyre inflation pressure is displayed for each tyre.

The current tyre inflation pressures can change as a result of vehicle operation or the outside temperature.

Current tyre temperature

The current tyre temperatures are displayed, depending on the model.

The current tyre temperatures can change as a result of vehicle operation or the outside temperature.

Specified pressure

The specified pressure for the tyres on the front and rear axle is displayed.

The specified pressures are values stored in the vehicle.

The temperature effects of vehicle operation and ambient conditions are included in the calculation for the specified pressure. Independently of the weather conditions, tyre temperatures and driving times, the appropriate specified pressure is always displayed.

The displayed specified pressure may change and differ from that stated in the tyre inflation pressure information on the door pillar of the driver door. The tyre inflation pressure can

thus be corrected to the value of the displayed specified pressures.

The specified pressure is adapted immediately if the load status is changed in the tyre settings.

Tyre statuses

General

The tyre and system status is denoted by the wheel colour and text on the Control Display.

If applicable, existing messages are not deleted if the displayed specified pressure is not reached on correction of the tyre inflation pressure.

All wheels green

- ▷ The system is active and is using the displayed specified pressures for the warning.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: the system is active and is using the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

One to four wheels yellow

There is a flat tyre or major loss of tyre inflation pressure in the tyres shown.

Wheels grey

Tyre pressure losses might not be detected.

Possible causes:

- ▷ Malfunction.
- ▷ During measurement of the tyre inflation pressure, after confirmation of the tyre settings.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: a system reset is performed.

In the case of tyres with special approval: perform a reset

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tyre Pressure Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
5. Reset the tyre inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
6. Drive off.

The wheels are shown grey and the following appears on the display: "Resetting Tyre Pressure Monitor...".

After driving for a short time over 30 km/h, 19 mph, the set tyre pressures are accepted as target values. The reset is completed automatically during the journey.

If the reset was successful, the wheels are shown in green on the Control Display and the following is shown: "Tyre Pressure Monitor active. See label for recommended pressures.".

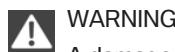
You can interrupt your journey at any time. Reset resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages: for tyres without special approval

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be activated if necessary as soon as a message for low tyre inflation pressure appears.

Safety note



WARNING

A damaged normal tyre with too low tyre inflation pressure, or no pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There

is a danger of accidents. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with normal tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.◀

If a tyre inflation pressure test is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air added.
	The tyre settings have not been updated.

Measure

1. Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.
2. Update the tyre settings.

If the tyre inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There has been a loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph any longer.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant loss of tyre inflation pressure

Message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyre is shown in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 305, is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.

Messages: for tyres with special approval

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC will be activated if necessary as soon as a message for low tyre inflation pressure appears.

Safety note



WARNING

A damaged normal tyre with too low tyre inflation pressure, or no pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a danger of accidents. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with normal tyres.

Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.◀

If a tyre inflation pressure test is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



The tyre was not inflated properly, for example insufficient air added.

The System has detected a wheel change, but no reset has been run.

The tyre inflation pressure has dropped compared to the last reset.

No reset has been performed on to the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

1. Check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust as necessary.
2. Perform a reset of the system.

If the tyre inflation pressure is too low

Message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



There has been a loss of tyre inflation pressure.

No reset has been performed on to the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

1. Reduce speed. Do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h, 80 mph any longer.
2. At the next opportunity, for example at a filling station, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a reset of the system.

If there is a significant loss of tyre inflation pressure

Message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tyre is shown in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

No reset has been performed on to the system. The system uses the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset for the warning.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 305, is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

Check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

In the case of tyres with special approval: if all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the TPM might not have been reset. Perform a reset.

If no tyre damage can be identified, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

The use of sealant, for example a flat tyre kit, can damage the TPM wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tyres

Safety notes



WARNING

A run-flat tyre which has low tyre inflation pressure or no tyre inflation pressure at all will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering characteristics. There is a danger of accidents.

Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.◀



WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in heavy trailers starting to slalom. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph. In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◀

Maximum speed

If a tyre is damaged you can continue your journey, driving at speeds up to a maximum of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

Note the following if you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.
3. As soon as there is an opportunity, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres.

In the case of tyres with special approval: if all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been reset. Perform a reset.

Possible driving distance with a deflated tyre

The possible driving distance varies depending on the load and stresses the vehicle is subjected to, for example speed, road properties, outside temperature. The driving distance can be shorter or, if the driving style is more careful, longer.

If the vehicle is moderately loaded and used under favourable conditions, it is possible to travel up to 80 km, 50 miles.

Driving properties with damaged tyres

On a journey with damaged tyres, handling characteristics change and may result in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ The vehicle losing traction more quickly.
- ▷ Longer braking distances.
- ▷ Changed self-steering characteristics.

Adapt your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or potholes.

Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre could detach, which could lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

Temperature

The tyre inflation pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre.

The tyre inflation pressure increases as the tyre temperature increases, for example during driving or due to exposure to sunlight.

Tyre inflation pressure decreases if the tyre temperature drops.

Through this behaviour, a warning may be triggered if there are major temperature drops, due to the given warning limits.

After a temperature-related warning, the specified pressures are displayed again on the Control Display after a short journey.

Sudden loss of tyre inflation pressure

No warning can be given by the system of extreme, sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.

Reset not carried out

Tyres with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset has not been carried out, for example, a flat tyre is reported in spite of the correct tyre pressure.

Malfunction

Message



The yellow warning lamp flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is shown. Tyre pressure losses cannot be detected.

Measure

- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is fitted, for example emergency wheel: have the wheels checked if necessary.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked.
- ▷ Fault due to systems or devices with the same frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- ▷ In the case of tyres with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.

Runflat indicator RPA

Principle

The system identifies a loss of tyre inflation pressure by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels during the journey.

If a tyre loses inflation pressure, its diameter changes. This in turn alters the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tyre.

The system does not measure the tyre inflation pressure as such.

Operating requirements

The following requirements must be met for the system, otherwise reliable signalling of a loss of tyre inflation pressure is not ensured:

- ▷ After every tyre or wheel change, an initialisation must be carried out with the correct tyre inflation pressure.

- ▷ An initialisation must be carried out after the tyre inflation pressure has been adjusted to a new value.

Status display

The current status of the runflat indicator can be shown, for example whether the RPA is active.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tyre Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialisation required

An initialisation must be performed in the following situations:

- ▷ After adjusting the tyre inflation pressure.
- ▷ After a tyre or wheel change.

Performing initialisation

On initialisation, the current tyre pressures are saved as a reference for detection of a flat tyre. The initialisation is started by confirming the correct tyre inflation pressures.

When driving with snow chains fitted, do not initialise the system.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tyre Monitor"
4. Switch on drive-ready state but do not drive off.
5. Start the initialisation: "Perform reset"
6. Drive off.

Initialising is completed during the journey; this process can be interrupted at any time.

Initialising resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

Messages

General

Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated if necessary as soon as the message for a flat tyre appears.

Safety note



WARNING

A damaged normal tyre with too low tyre inflation pressure, or no pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. There is a danger of accidents. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is fitted with normal tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.◀

Flat tyre message



A yellow warning lamp is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message is shown on the Control Display.

Symbol Possible cause



There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 305, is a circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.

What to do in the event of a flat tyre

Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

To do this, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres, for example using the tyre pressure indicator of a flat tyre kit.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

If it is not possible to identify tyre damage, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Repair the flat tyre, for example using a flat tyre kit or by changing the wheel.

Run-flat tyres

Safety notes



WARNING

A run-flat tyre which has low tyre inflation pressure or no tyre inflation pressure at all will change the vehicle's handling characteristics, for example there may be reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distances and different self-steering characteristics. There is a danger of accidents.

Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.◀



WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in heavy trailers starting to slalom. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph. In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◀

Maximum speed

If a tyre is damaged you can continue your journey, driving at speeds up to a maximum of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

Note the following if you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph any longer.
3. As soon as there is an opportunity, check the tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

Possible driving distance with a deflated tyre

The possible driving distance varies depending on the load and stresses the vehicle is subjected to, for example speed, road properties, outside temperature. The driving distance can be shorter or, if the driving style is more careful, longer.

If the vehicle is moderately loaded and used under favourable conditions, it is possible to travel up to 80 km, 50 miles.

Driving properties with damaged tyres

On a journey with damaged tyres, handling characteristics change and may result in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ The vehicle losing traction more quickly.
- ▷ Longer braking distances.
- ▷ Changed self-steering characteristics.

Adapt your driving style. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example kerbs or potholes.

Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre could detach, which could lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

System limits

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or operate incorrectly:

- ▷ A natural, even loss of tyre inflation pressure in all four tyres that occurs over time is not detected. Consequently, check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- ▷ No warning can be given in the event of sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.
- ▷ If the system has not been initialised.
- ▷ When driving on snow-covered or slippery surfaces.
- ▷ Dynamic driving style: drive wheels slipping, high lateral acceleration.
- ▷ Driving with snow chains.

Wheel change

General

For run-flat tyres or when using a flat tyre kit, it is not always necessary to change a wheel immediately if tyre inflation pressure is lost due to a flat tyre.

If required, the tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes



DANGER

The jack is only intended for raising the vehicle briefly during a wheel change. Even if the safety measures are complied with, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling over due to the jack slipping. There is a danger of injury or even death. If the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie underneath the vehicle and do not start the engine.◀



DANGER

Supports such as wooden blocks under the vehicle jack can prevent it from achieving its load capacity due to the restricted height. The load capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded, causing the vehicle to tip over. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not place supports under the vehicle jack.◀



WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tyres. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Only use the jack to change an emergency wheel or a spare wheel in the event of a flat tyre.◀



WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example, snow, ice, tiles or similar, the jack may slip. There is a danger of injury. Perform the wheel change on a level, firm and non-slip surface if at all possible.◀



WARNING

The jack is only optimised for raising the vehicle and for use with the jacking points on the vehicle. There is a danger of injury. Do not lift another vehicle or other items with the jack.◀



WARNING

If the jack has not been guided into the jacking point provided, the vehicle might be damaged when the jack is extended, or the jack could slip. There is a danger of injury or damage to property. When extending, make sure that the jack is guided into the jacking point adjacent to the wheelhouse.◀



WARNING

A vehicle raised with a jack can fall from the jack if lateral forces are applied. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. If the vehicle is raised, do not apply any lateral forces to the vehicle or pull the vehicle with sudden movements. Have any wheel that is jammed removed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀



Vehicle jack: Australian/New Zealand standard AS/NZS 2693

2007 – "Vehicle jacks" contains the following warning note which BMW hereby adopts: "... no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack"

The jack supplied with your vehicle should not be used for any purpose other than wheel changing and should never be used in conjunction with a vehicle support stand. Raising the vehicle for the purpose of inspection should only be performed in a controlled workshop environment on a hoist by trained personnel.

The following warning instructions from standard AS/NZS 2693:2007 are repeated here: the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible. It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

The jack of your BMW is maintenance-free. Please observe the information marked on the jack.◀

Protecting the vehicle against rolling

General

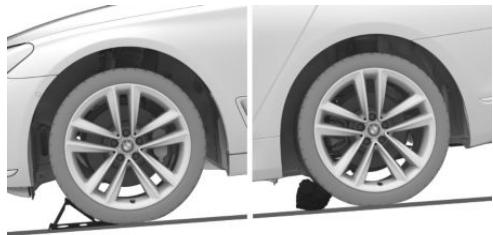
The vehicle manufacturer recommends that the vehicle should additionally be protected against rolling away during a wheel change.

On a level surface



Place chocks or other suitable objects in front of and behind the wheel directly opposite to the one being changed.

On a slight downhill slope



If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill slope, place chocks and other suitable objects, for example stones, under the wheels of the front and rear axles in the opposite direction to the direction of roll.

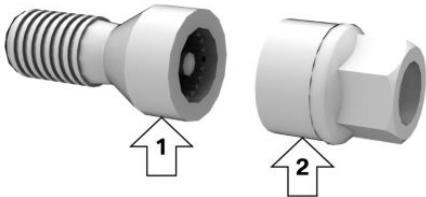
Thiefproof wheel studs

Principle

The wheel locking bolts have a special coding. The bolts can only be released with the adapter that matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the thiefproof wheel studs can be found in the on-board tool kit or in an oddments tray in the on-board tool kit.



- ▷ Wheel stud, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Place the adapter on the wheel stud.
2. Unscrew the wheel stud.
3. After unscrewing the wheel stud, remove the adapter again.

Screwing on

1. Place the adapter on the wheel stud. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the wheel stud.
2. Screw on the wheel stud. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. After screwing on the wheel stud, remove the adapter again and stow it.

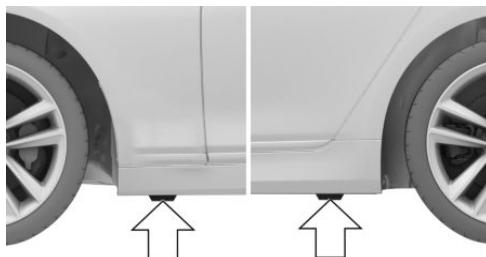
Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle on firm and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or select selector lever position P.
- ▷ As soon as the traffic permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and

guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.

- ▷ Depending on the equipment, take the wheel change tools and, if necessary, the emergency wheel out of the vehicle.
- ▷ If applicable, set up warning triangle or flashing light at the correct distance.
- ▷ Additionally protect the vehicle against rolling away.
- ▷ Undo the wheel studs by half a turn.

Jack mounting points



The jacking points are located in the marked positions.

Raising vehicle

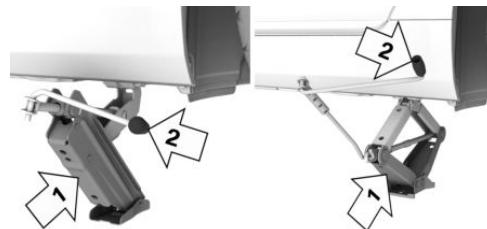


WARNING

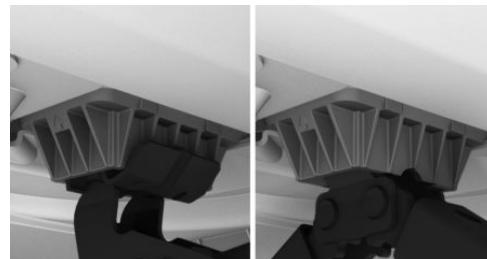
Your hands or fingers could get trapped when using the jack. There is a danger of injury. Keep your hands in the described position

when using the jack, and do not change this position.◀

1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



2. Guide the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

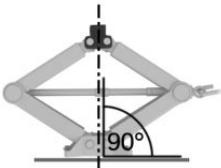
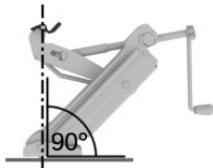


3. Turn the jack crank or lever clockwise to extend the jack.



4. Remove your hand from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue to turn the jack crank or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the base of the vehicle jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles underneath the jacking point.



6. Make sure that the base of the jack is extended perpendicular to and at right angles below the jacking point.



7. Raise by cranking until the jack is supported on the ground with its entire surface and the wheel in question is at most 3 cm, 1.2 inches off the ground.

Fitting a wheel

Only fit one emergency wheel at most, as required.

1. Unscrew the wheel studs.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put on the new wheel or emergency wheel and tighten at least two wheel studs crosswise until finger-tight.

If non-original light alloy wheels not from the vehicle manufacturer are fitted, the wheel studs belonging to the wheels may also have to be used.

4. Tighten the remaining wheel studs until finger-tight and then tighten all the wheel studs crosswise.
5. Turn the jack crank anticlockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After changing the wheel

1. Tighten the wheel studs crosswise. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, approximately 101 lb ft.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the boot, if necessary.
Due to its size, the faulty wheel cannot be accommodated under the boot floor.
3. Check tyre inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
4. Reinitialise the runflat indicator RPA. Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM.
5. Check the tight fit of the wheel studs using a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to have the damaged tyre replaced.

Not for Australia/New Zealand: Emergency wheel

Principle

In case of a flat tyre, the emergency wheel can be used as a replacement for the defective tyre. The emergency wheel is intended for short-term use until the defective wheel has been replaced.

General

Only fit one emergency wheel at most.

Additionally, regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the boot and correct the pressure if necessary.

Safety note



WARNING

The emergency wheel has special dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, the driving properties may change, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour in the limit range. There is a danger of accidents. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.◀

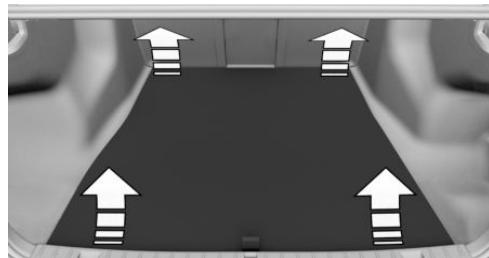
Overview



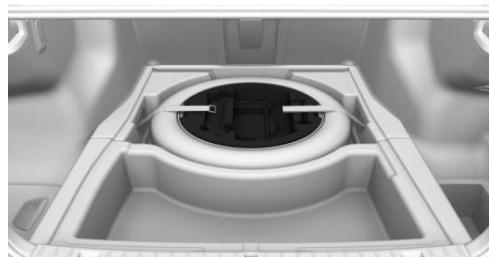
The emergency wheel and the wheel change tools are located in the boot under the floor.

Removing emergency wheel

1. Remove boot floor. To do so, pull the boot floor up directly behind the rear backrests.



2. Open lashing strap.



3. Remove tool holder.
4. Remove emergency wheel from the storage tray. Do not remove any covers when doing this.

Inserting the emergency wheel

1. Place the emergency wheel in the storage tray.
2. Insert the tool holder.
3. Tie the lashing strap. Make sure that it is seated correctly and firmly.
4. Insert the boot floor.

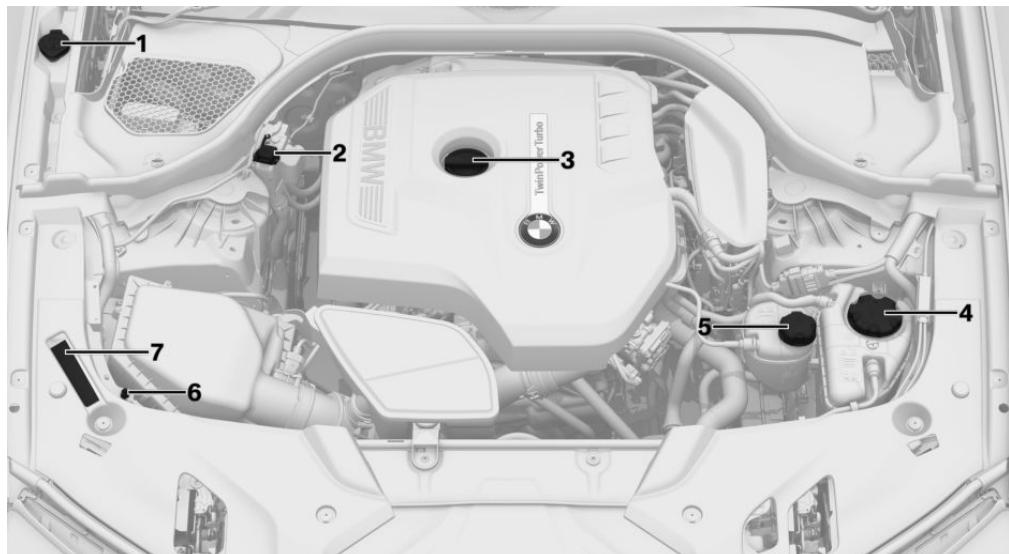
Engine compartment

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on

account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Engine compartment quick reference guide



- 1 Filler neck for washing fluid
- 2 Starting assistance, positive battery terminal
- 3 Oil filler neck
- 4 Engine coolant tank
- 5 Petrol engine only: additional cooling coolant tank
- 6 Starting assistance, negative battery terminal
- 7 Vehicle identification number

Bonnet

Safety notes

WARNING

Incorrectly performed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety risk. There is a danger of accident or damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment undertaken by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

WARNING

The engine compartment contains moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move when the vehicle is switched off, for example the radiator fan. There is a danger of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◀

WARNING

The bonnet has projecting parts on the inside, for example locking hooks. There is a danger of injury. When the bonnet is open, watch out for projecting parts and keep these areas clear.◀

WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly locked, it can come open during the journey and impair visibility. There is a danger of accidents. Stop immediately and close the bonnet correctly.◀

WARNING

Parts of the body can become trapped when opening and closing the bonnet. There is a danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the bonnet is free.◀

NOTE

When wipers are folded away from the windscreens, they can be trapped when the bonnet is opened. There is a danger of dam-

age to property. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers with wiper blades fitted are in contact with the windscreens.◀

Opening

1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.

The bonnet is released.



2. After releasing the lever, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

The bonnet is opened.

3. Watch out for any protruding parts of the bonnet.

Closing



Allow bonnet to drop from a height of approximately 40 cm, 16 in, and then push down to fully lock the bonnet.

The bonnet must engage into place on both sides.

Engine oil

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The engine oil consumption depends on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore check the engine oil level regularly each time you fill up with fuel by taking a detailed measurement.

Engine oil consumption can be increased, for example, in the following situations:

- ▷ Dynamic driving style.
- ▷ Running in the engine.
- ▷ Engine idling.
- ▷ Use of engine oil grades categorised as unsuitable.

Different Check Control messages are shown on the Control Display, depending on the engine oil level.

Safety notes



NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a danger of damage to property. Immediately replenish engine oil.◀



NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not top up with too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

Electronic oil measurement

General

Electronic oil measurement has two measurement principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When frequently making short trips or using a dynamic driving style, for example taking corners at high speed, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is electronically monitored during the journey and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

Operating requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When frequently making short trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measurement. In this case, the measurement for the last, sufficiently long journey is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and is shown on a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is shown.

General

During the measurement, the idle speed is slightly raised.

Operating requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is standing horizontally.
- ▷ Manual gearbox: gear lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedal not pressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not pressed.
- ▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Carrying out a detailed measurement

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"
4. "Measure engine oil level"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and shown on a scale.

Adding engine oil

General

Do not top up engine oil unless a message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up amount is specified in the message on the Control Display.

Only replenish with suitable types of engine oil, see page 330.

Safely stop the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before topping up with engine oil.

Ensure not to top up with too much engine oil.

Safety notes



WARNING

Service products, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. There is a danger of injury or even death. Comply with the notes on the containers. Do not allow service products to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.◀



NOTE

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. There is a danger of damage to property. Immediately replenish engine oil.◀

**NOTE**

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not top up with too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

Overview

The oil filler neck is in the engine compartment, see page 326.

Adding engine oil

1. Open the bonnet, see page 327.
2. Turn the cap anticlockwise.



3. Add engine oil.
4. Tighten cap.

Engine oil grades for topping up

General

The engine oil quality is decisive for the lifetime of the engine.

Several engine oil grades are not available in all countries.

Safety notes

**NOTE**

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.◀

**NOTE**

Incorrect engine oil can lead to engine malfunctions and damage. There is a danger of damage to property. When selecting the engine oil, make sure that the oil specification of the engine oil is correct.◀

Suitable engine oil grades

Engine oils with the following oil specifications can be used for topping up:

Petrol engine

BMW Longlife-01.

BMW Longlife-01 FE.

BMW Longlife-04.

BMW Longlife-12 FE.

BMW Longlife-14 FE+.

The oil specification BMW Longlife-14 FE+ is only suitable for certain petrol engines.

Diesel engine

BMW Longlife-04.

BMW Longlife-12 FE.

The oil specification BMW Longlife-12 FE+ is only suitable for certain diesel engines.

Information on suitable oil specifications and viscosities of engine oils can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Alternative engine oil types

If suitable engine oils are not available, up to 1 litre, approximately 2 pints, of an engine oil with the following oil specification can be used for topping up:

Petrol engine

ACEA A3/B4.

Diesel engine

ACEA C3.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Viscosity classes

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil has one of the viscosity classes SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-30, SAE 0W-20 or SAE 5W-20.

Information on suitable oil specifications and viscosities of engine oils can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Oil change



NOTE

Engine oil not replaced in time can lead to increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not exceed the service date indicated in the vehicle.◀

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the engine oil changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Coolant

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

Coolant is a mixture of water and an additive.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information regarding suitable additives is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety notes



WARNING

If the cooling system is opened when the engine is hot, coolant can escape and cause scalds. There is a danger of injury. Only open the cooling system when the engine has cooled down.◀



WARNING

Additives are harmful to health and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a danger of injury and damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow them. Only use suitable additives.◀

Coolant level

General

Vehicles with a petrol engine have two cooling circuits. Always check the coolant levels of both coolant tanks and top up if necessary.

The coolant level is shown by Min and Max marks. The Min and Max marks are located in different positions depending on the coolant tank.

Depending on the engine version, the coolant tank is located on the right or left of the engine compartment, see page [326](#).

Checking coolant level at the side marks

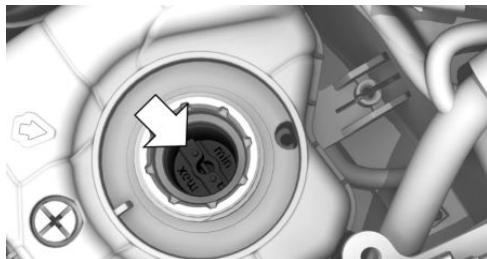
1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. The coolant level is correct if it is between the Min. and Max. marks on the coolant tank.

Symbol	Meaning
▽	Maximum.
△	Minimum.

Checking coolant level in the filler neck

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anticlockwise, then allow the pressure to escape.

3. Open cap on coolant tank.
4. The coolant level is correct if it is between the Min. and Max. marks in the filler neck.



Topping up

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anticlockwise, then allow the pressure to escape.
3. Open cap on coolant tank.
4. If necessary, slowly top up to the correct level; do not overfill.
5. Tighten cap.
6. Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

Disposal



When disposing of coolant and coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations.

Maintenance

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

BMW Maintenance System

The Maintenance System indicates what maintenance measures are required, thus providing support in maintaining the road and operational safety of the vehicle.

Scopes and intervals may vary depending on the national specifications. Replacement work, spare parts, operating materials and wear materials are calculated separately. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Condition Based Service, CBS

Principle

Sensors and special algorithms monitor the conditions in which the vehicle is used. CBS uses this information to determine the maintenance requirement.

The system thus enables the scope of the maintenance work to be adapted to the individual usage profile.

General

Information on service requirements, see page 136, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information about the maintenance requirement is continuously stored in the remote control. The Service Partner can read out this data and suggest a maintenance scope for your vehicle.

Therefore hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Periods out of use

Periods when the vehicle is out of use with its battery disconnected are not taken into account.

In such cases, time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if applicable, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated charcoal filter, should be updated by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Service history

Maintenance and repairs

Have maintenance and repairs carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Entries

The maintenance work carried out is entered in the maintenance records and the vehicle data. As with a service booklet, the entries provide evidence of regular maintenance.

If an entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle, service-relevant data is saved both in the vehicle and on the central IT systems of BMW AG, Munich.

The data entered in the electronic service history can also be viewed by the new vehicle owner after a change of vehicle owner. A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can view the data entered in the electronic service history.

Objection

The vehicle owner can contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to object to any entries being made in the electronic service history, and to any associated data relating to his/her time as the vehicle owner being stored in the vehicle or transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. In that case, no entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle.

Displays

Maintenance entered is shown on the Control Display, see page 137.

For Australia/New Zealand: maintenance

No maintenance work other than normal maintenance is required to keep the emission levels of your vehicle within the design limits.

Socket for on-board diagnosis, OBD

Safety note



NOTE

Incorrect use of the socket for on-board diagnosis, OBD can result in malfunctions in the vehicle. There is a danger of damage to

property. Only have service and maintenance work involving the socket for on-board diagnosis, OBD carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, or other authorised persons. Only connect devices that have been tested and found to be safe for use with the socket for on-board diagnosis, OBD.◀

Position



The OBD socket for checking components which are relevant for exhaust gas composition is located on the driver's side.

Emissions



- ▷ The warning lamp flashes:
There is an engine malfunction could damage the catalytic converter. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning lamp is illuminated:
Deterioration of exhaust emissions. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Recycling

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends handing the vehicle in at a take-back point nominated by the manufacturer at the end of its life cycle. The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manu-

facturer or another qualified Service Partner or
a specialist workshop.

Replacing parts

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

On-board tool kit



The on-board tool kit is located in the left storage compartment of the boot.

Replacing the wiper blades

Safety notes



NOTE The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a danger of damage to property. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.◀



NOTE

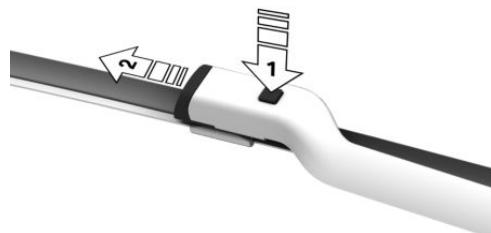
When wipers are folded away from the windscreen, they can be trapped when the bonnet is opened. There is a danger of damage to property. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers with wiper blades fitted are in contact with the windscreen.◀

Replacing the front wiper blades

1. To replace the wiper blades, place the wipers in the fold-out position, see page 118.
2. Lift wipers completely away from the windscreen.



3. Press button, arrow 1, and pull out wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Insert the new wiper blade and press into the holder until it clicks.
5. Fold in the wipers.

Bulbs and lights

General

Bulbs and lights

Lights and bulbs are an important aspect of driving safety.

Some equipment versions have light-emitting diodes behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes are similar to conventional lasers and are classified by legislation as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

In the case of a defect, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having respective work carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

A spare lamp box is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Comply with the safety notes, see page 338.

Headlight glass

During cool or humid weather, the exterior lights can mist over on the inside. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight glass.

If moisture increasingly forms, for example if there are water droplets in the lamp, despite the headlights being switched on, have the headlights checked.

Safety notes

WARNING

Bulbs can become hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can lead to burns. There is a danger of injury. Only replace bulbs when they have cooled down.◀

WARNING

Short circuits can occur when working on lighting systems that are switched on. There is a danger of injury or damage to property.

Switch the respective lights off when working on the lighting system. Where applicable, observe the enclosed instructions from the bulb manufacturer.◀

WARNING

Excessively intense brightness can irritate or harm the retina of the eye. There is a danger of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove covers from LEDs.◀

NOTE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced lifetime. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean tissue or similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

Front lights

Adaptive LED headlights

Comply with the safety notes, see page 338.

All lights use LED technology.

Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

LED headlights

General

Comply with the safety notes, see page 338.

All front lights except the two side turn indicators are in LED technology.

Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

Turn indicators, replacing the lamps

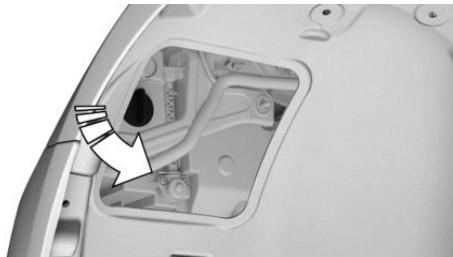
Comply with the safety notes, see page 338.

Bulb type PY21W, 21 watt.

- In the wheel arch, press the two brackets and fold down the cover.



- Unscrew the bulb holder.



- Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn anticlockwise and remove.
- Install new bulb.
- Fit the bulb holder.
- Attach cover.

LED fog lights

Comply with the safety notes, see page 338.

The fog lights use LED technology.

Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

Rear lights

General

Comply with the safety notes, see page 338.

All rear lights except the two reversing lights in the boot lid are in LED technology.

Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

Reversing light, replacing the lamps

General

Comply with the safety notes, see page 338.
21 watt bulb, H21W.

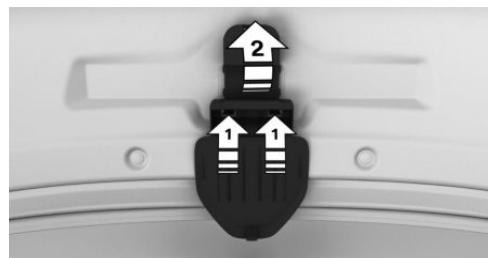
Without warning triangle: remove panel

- Open the boot lid.
- Press the unlocking mechanism, arrow 1, and take off the panel, arrow 2.



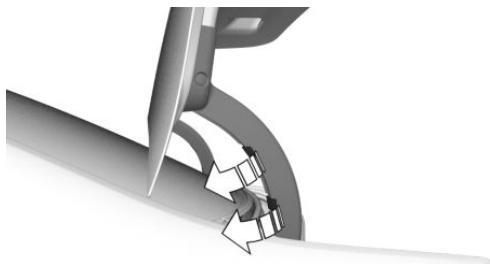
With warning triangle: remove bracket

- Open the boot lid.
- Take out, see page 344, warning triangle.
- Press in both catches with the screwdriver from the on-board tool kit in the direction of the arrow, arrow 1, and remove the warning triangle holder, arrow 2.

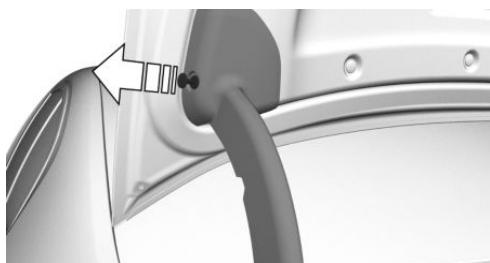


Removing the hinge cover

1. Open the two clips on the hinge cover.



2. At the expander rivet, use the screwdriver to carefully lever out the inner pin by a small amount. Then use the screwdriver to carefully lever out the expander rivet completely.



3. Carefully lift the hinge cover from the hinge arm, arrow 1, until the retainer, arrow 2, comes loose behind the lining.



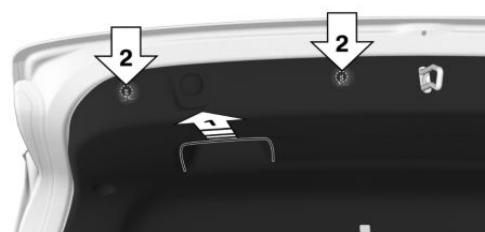
4. Pull off the hinge cover downwards.
5. Remove the second hinge cover accordingly.

Removing the boot lid lining

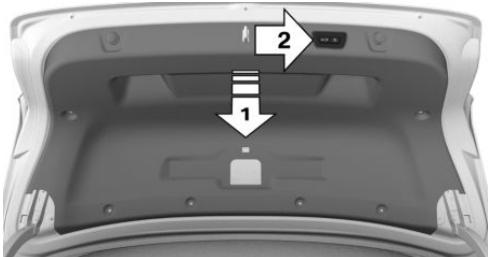
1. Use the screwdriver to carefully lever out the eight expander rivets. Operate the expander rivets as described above.



2. On one side, reach into the handle recess and carefully pull the boot lid lining towards the back, arrow 1, until the two retainers, arrows 2, come loose behind the boot lid lining.



3. Follow the corresponding procedure on the left side.
4. Carefully detach the boot lid lining from the boot lid, arrow 1, and, if applicable, pull the cable with connector off the switch unit, arrow 2.



5. Take off the boot lid lining.

Replacing the reversing light

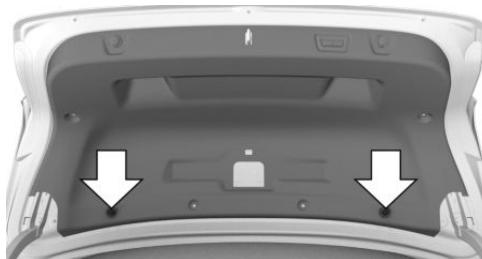
- Turn the bulb holder in the direction indicated on the reflector and pull it out.



- Press the bulb gently into the bulb holder, turn anticlockwise and remove.
- Fit the bulb holder.

Fitting the boot lid lining

- If applicable, connect the cable to the switch unit. Ensure that the connector engages.
- Place the boot lid lining at the boot lid and attach with two expander rivets.



- Press against the boot lid lining, arrows, so that the four retainers snap into place in the boot lid.

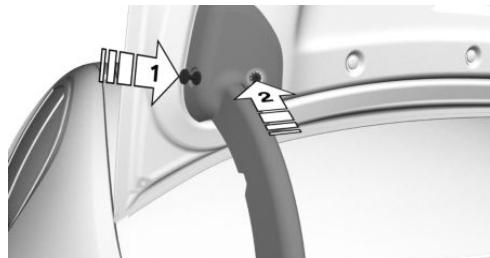


- Attach the boot lid lining with the remaining expander rivets and press the expander rivets into the pins.

- On one side, engage the hinge cover on the boot lid lining, arrow 1, fold the hinge cover onto the hinge arm, arrow 2.



- Secure the hinge cover with the expander rivet, arrow 1, and press onto the hinge cover so that the retainer snaps into place in the boot lid, arrow 2.



- Close the clips on the hinge cover.
- Fit the other second hinge cover accordingly.
- Secure the bracket for the warning triangle and the warning triangle or fit the panel.

Car battery

General

The battery is maintenance-free.

The contained quantity of acid is sufficient for the lifetime of the battery.

More information regarding the battery can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manu-

facturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort functions will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages relating to the comfort functions will no longer be displayed.

Safety note



NOTE

Vehicle batteries that are classified as unsuitable may damage systems or result in functions no longer being carried out. There is a danger of damage to property. Only use vehicle batteries that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer.◀

Charging the battery

General

Ensure the battery is sufficiently charged to guarantee the entire lifetime of the battery.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▶ When making frequent short journeys.
- ▶ If the vehicle is not used for periods of longer than one month.

Safety note



NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can operate with high voltages and high currents, which can overload or damage the 12-volt on-board network. There is a danger of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.◀

Jump-starting connections

Only charge the battery via the jump-starting connections, see page 347, in the engine compartment and with the engine switched off.

Battery charger

Battery chargers developed especially for the vehicle and suitable for the on-board network can be obtained from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Power failure

Following an electrical power outage, some equipment will have to be reinitialised or individual settings will need to be updated, for example:

- ▶ Memory function: save positions again.
- ▶ Time: update.
- ▶ Date: update.
- ▶ Glass Roof: initialise system.

Disposing of the old battery



Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Batteries filled with acid should be transported and stored upright. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit.

Fuses

Safety note



WARNING

Incorrect or repaired fuses can overload electrical cables and components. There is a risk of fire. Do not repair blown fuses or renew them with fuses of a different colour or amp rating.◀

Accessing the fuses



Remove the cover from the right-hand trim panel.

Details of the fuse assignment are on a separate leaflet.

Replacing fuses

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having fuses changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Breakdown Assist

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Hazard warning lights



The button is located in the centre console.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located inside the boot lid.

Press the release catch, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

First-aid kit

General

Some items in the kit have a limited shelf life. Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time.

Storage

The first-aid kit is located in the net on the left side of the boot.

Mobile Service

General

In many countries, the Mobile Service is available by phone 24 hours a day, seven days a week, and provides assistance in the event of a breakdown or an accident.

The content and scope of the services that are available can vary by country.

For more information, see the integrated Owner's Handbook, online Owner's Handbook, BMW Driver's Guide app or, the Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Breakdown assistance

Principle

The Mobile Service offered by the BMW Group can be contacted if you require help in the event of a breakdown.

General

In the case of a breakdown, data on the vehicle condition can be transferred to the Mobile Service. It is possible that malfunctions can be remedied directly.

Contact with the Mobile Service can also be done with a Check Control message, see page 133.

Requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting breakdown assistance

When equipped with Teleservice, support is provided first through the Teleservice Diagnosis and then by the Teleservice Assistance.

Via iDrive:

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Assistance"
3. "BMW Roadside Assistance"

A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the transfer of detailed vehicle data that is necessary for diagnosis of the vehicle via mobile telephony. This data is transferred automatically.

A voice connection to Mobile Service is established.

Starting Teleservice Assistance

Teleservice Assistance enables a more in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Mobile Service via mobile telephony.

You can launch Teleservice Assistance by requesting it through Mobile Service.

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Control Display is switched on.
4. "Teleservice Help"

Certain functions within the vehicle may be restored to a drivable condition.

If this is not possible, further measures will be initiated, for example Mobile Service will be informed.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

BMW Group Accident Assistance can be contacted if help is required in the event of an accident.

General

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not trigger any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. A corresponding text message also appears on the Control Display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is activated, data on the vehicle condition is transferred to BMW.

Requirements

- ▷ Activated ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- ▷ Mobile reception.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message prompting the driver to call BMW Accident Assistance is shown on the Control Display.

The connection can be established directly:

"BMW Accident Assist."

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the saved Check Control messages, see page 133, for a certain length of time.

Starting manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

Via iDrive:

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Assistance"
3. "BMW Accident Assistance"

Follow the displays on the Control Display.
A voice connection is established.

4. "End call"

The voice connection can be terminated.

Intelligent emergency call

Principle

The system can be used for sending an emergency call in emergency situations.

General

Press the SOS button in an emergency only.

Even if no emergency call through BMW is possible, in some cases an emergency call may still be established to a public emergency call number. This depends on factors such as the specific mobile telephone network and the national regulations.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

Overview



SOS button in the roof lining.

Operating requirements

- ▷ SIM card integrated into the vehicle is activated.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.
- ▷ Emergency call system is functional.

Automatically activating emergency calls

In certain circumstances, for example deployment of the air bags, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. An automatic emergency call is not influenced by pressing the SOS button.

Triggering an emergency call manually

1. Tap on cover flap.
 2. Press and hold SOS button until the LED on the microphone illuminates green.
- ▷ LED is illuminated green when the emergency call has been activated.
- If a cancellation request is displayed on the Control Display, the emergency call can be cancelled.
- If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.

- ▷ LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency number has been established.

When an emergency call is sent via BMW, data is sent to the emergency call centre in order to decide what rescue measures are required. The data may include, for example, the current position of the vehicle, if this can be determined. If questions posed by the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are automatically initiated.

Even if you can no longer hear the emergency call centre through the loudspeakers, the emergency call centre may still be able to hear you speak.

The emergency call centre ends the emergency call.

Starting assistance

General

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the engine can be started using two jump leads from another vehicle's battery. Use only jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.

Safety notes



DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. There is a danger of injury or even death. Do not touch any components that could be live.◀



WARNING

Connecting the jump leads in the wrong sequence can cause sparks. There is a danger of injury. Comply with the correct sequence when connecting up.◀



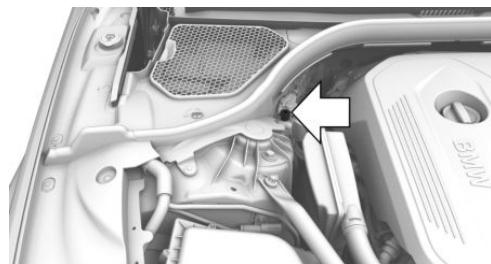
NOTE

Contact between the bodies of the two vehicles can result in a short circuit during starting assistance. There is a danger of damage to property. Make sure there is no contact between the bodies.◀

Preparations

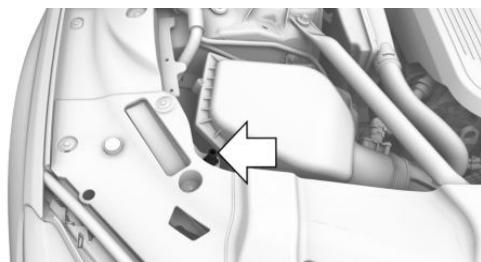
1. Check whether the battery in the other vehicle shows 12 volts. Information about the voltage is provided on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the donor vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems in both vehicles.

Jump-starting connections



The jump-starting connection in the engine compartment serves as the positive battery terminal.

Open the cover of the jump-starting connection.



A special nut is used as battery negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

Before starting, switch off all unnecessary loads, such as radio, on the supplying and receiving vehicle.

1. Open the cover of the jump-starting connection.
2. Connect a terminal clamp on the positive/+ jump lead to the positive terminal of the battery or the corresponding jump-starting connection on the donor vehicle.
3. Connect the other terminal clamp to the battery's positive terminal or to the corresponding jump-starting connection on the vehicle to be started.
4. Connect a terminal clamp on the negative/- jump lead to the negative terminal of the battery or the corresponding engine or body earth connection on the donor vehicle.
5. Connect the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery or to a corresponding engine or body earth connection on the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Do not use the spray products sold as starting aids.

1. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly increased idle speed.
If starting a diesel vehicle: allow the engine of the donor vehicle to run for approximately 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle to be started as normal.

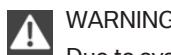
If an initial attempt to start the engine fails, wait several minutes until the discharged battery has been recharged to a slightly greater degree.

3. Allow both engines to run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jump leads in the opposite order from that in which they were originally attached.

Check the battery if necessary and have it recharged.

Tow-starting and towing away

Safety note



WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems. There is a danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◀

Manual gearbox

Safety notes



NOTE

The vehicle can become damaged when raising and securing it.

There is a danger of damage to property.

- ▷ Raise the vehicle with suitable equipment.
- ▷ Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing eye, body parts or suspension parts.◀

Towing or pushing the vehicle

A broken-down vehicle can be towed or pushed.

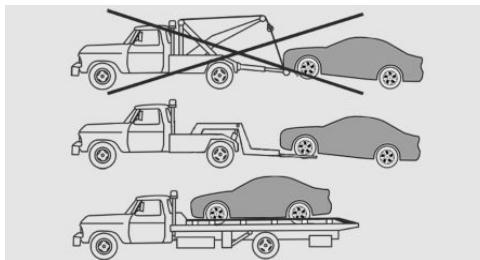
Roll or push, see page 120, the vehicle.

Observe the following notes:

- ▷ Make sure that the standby state is switched on, otherwise low-beam headlights, rear lights, turn indicators and wipers would not be available.

- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, otherwise the steering can turn.
- ▷ When the engine is not running, there is no power assistance. The steering and brakes will require extra effort to operate.
- ▷ Greater steering wheel movements are necessary.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle, otherwise it may be unable to keep the towed vehicle reliably under control.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 50 km/h, 30 mph.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km, 30 miles.

Towing truck



Have your vehicle transported by a towing truck with a hoisting frame, or hoisted onto a loading platform.

Steptronic transmission: transporting the vehicle

General

Do not attempt to have the vehicle towed.

Safety notes



NOTE

The vehicle can become damaged when raising and securing it.

There is a danger of damage to property.

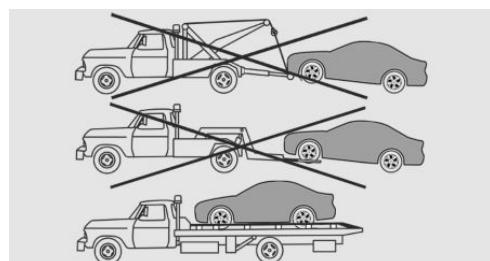
- ▷ Raise the vehicle with suitable equipment.
- ▷ Do not raise or secure the vehicle by its towing eye, body parts or suspension parts.◀

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from a dangerous area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Roll or push, see page [122](#), the vehicle.

Towing truck



Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.

Towing other vehicles

General

Switch on the hazard warning lights, depending on local regulations.

If the vehicle's electrical system has failed, the vehicle being towed must be made identifiable to following vehicles, for instance by placing an indicating label or the warning triangle in the rear window.

- ⚠ If the vehicle is towed with one axle raised, the vehicle can be damaged. There is a danger of damage to property. Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.◀

Safety notes



WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is less than that of the vehicle to be towed, the towing eye can be pulled off, or the vehicle may no longer be controllable. There is a danger of accidents! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is more than the weight of the vehicle to be towed.◀



NOTE

If the tow bar or the towing rope is not attached correctly, other vehicle parts can be damaged. There is a danger of damage to property. Attach the tow bar or towing rope to the towing eye correctly.◀

Tow bar

The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

If it is impossible to avoid attaching the tow bar at an angle, note the following:

- ▷ Tow bar clearance may be restricted when cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

Towing rope

Ensure that the towing rope is taut when the towing vehicle drives off.

Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.

Towing eye

General



Always have the screw-on towing eye on board the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed into the front or rear end of the vehicle.

The towing eye is located in the on-board tool kit, see page 337.

- ▷ Use only the towing eye supplied with the vehicle, and make sure that it is screwed in fully and is tight.
- ▷ Only use the towing eye for towing on normal roads (in other words not off-road).
- ▷ Avoid lateral loads on the towing eye, for example do not raise the vehicle at the towing eye.

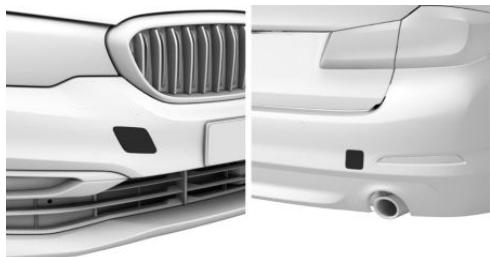
Safety note



NOTE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, the vehicle or towing eye may be damaged. There is a danger of damage to property. Observe the notes on using the towing eye.◀

Thread for towing eye



Press the marking on the edge of the cover to press it out.

Tow-starting

Do not attempt to tow-start the vehicle.

If necessary, start the engine using starting assistance, see page [347](#).

Have the cause, of the starting difficulties rectified by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

General care

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

Washing the vehicle

General

Regularly remove foreign bodies, for example, leaves, in the area below the windscreen when the bonnet is raised.

Wash the vehicle frequently especially in winter. Very high levels of dirt and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.

Steam-jet cleaners and high-pressure cleaners

Safety note



NOTE When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, excessive pressure or excessive temperatures can damage various components. There is a danger of damage to property. Ensure a sufficient distance and do not spray for an extended period of time. Comply with the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner.◀

Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 60 °C/140 °F.
- ▷ Minimum distance to sensors, cameras, seals: 30 cm, approximately 12 in.

- ▷ Minimum distance to the Glass Roof: 80 cm, approximately 31.5 in.

Automatic car washes

Safety note



NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged if automatic washing bays or car washes are used incorrectly. There is a danger of damage to property. Observe the following notes:

- ▷ Textile car washes or systems using soft brushes are preferable, to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- ▷ Avoid washing bays or car washes with guide rails higher than 10 cm, approx. 4 in, to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Note the maximum tyre width of the guide rail so as to avoid damage to tyres and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Deactivate wipers and the rain sensor (if fitted) to avoid damage to the wiper system.◀

Entering a car wash with a manual transmission

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Roll or push the vehicle, see page [120](#).

Entering a car wash with a Steptronic transmission

Safety note



NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. There is a danger of damage to property. Do not switch off standby state in car washes.◀

General

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Roll or push the vehicle, see page 122.

Some car washes require you to get out of the vehicle. It is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside in selector lever position N. If an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, a signal sounds.

Exiting from a car wash

Ensure that the remote control is located in the vehicle.

Switch on drive-ready state, see page 108.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.

Soak impurities such as insects with shampoo and wash off with water.

Remove ice with a de-icer spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After the vehicle has been washed, briefly apply the brakes to dry them otherwise the braking effectiveness may be temporarily reduced. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads, and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove residues on the wind-screens to avoid affecting visibility due to

smearing, and to reduce wiping noise and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Care products

General

BMW recommends using care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Safety note



WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or constitute a health risk. There is a danger of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Use only products that are intended for cleaning the vehicle's interior. Observe the notes on the pack.◀

Vehicle paintwork

General

Regular care promotes driving safety and preserves your vehicle's value. Environmental effects in areas with higher air pollution or natural contaminants, for example tree resin or leaf dust, may have an effect on the vehicle paintwork. Base the frequency and extent of vehicle care on such factors.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, for example spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings so as to prevent alterations and discolourations of the paintwork.

Matt paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with matt paintwork.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather at regular intervals with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, causing considerable abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

In order to protect against discolouration, for example from clothing, clean and care for the leather approximately every two months.

Clean light-coloured leather more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster.

Use leather cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the leather.

Care of upholstery fabrics

General

Regularly clean the upholstery with a vacuum cleaner.

In the event of heavy soiling, for example stains caused by drinks, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfibre cloth with suitable interior cleaning agents.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using wide wiping actions. Avoid rubbing vigorously.

Safety note



NOTE

Open Velcro fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a danger of damage to property. Make sure that any Velcro fasteners on your clothing are closed.◀

Care of special parts

Light alloy wheels

When cleaning on the vehicle, only use neutral rim cleaner with a pH value of between 5 and 9. Do not use any abrasive cleaners or steam cleaners above 60 °C/140 °F. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Corrosive, acidic or alkaline cleaners may destroy the protective layer of neighbouring parts, such as brake discs, for example.

After cleaning, briefly apply the brakes to dry them. The heat generated by braking dries the brake discs and brake pads, and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean parts such as the radiator grille and door handles with plenty of water to which a shampoo may be added, particularly if exposed to road salt.

Rubber parts

The surfaces of rubber parts can be contaminated or lose their shine due to environmental influences. Only use water and suitable care products for cleaning.

Treat particularly worn rubber parts at regular intervals with rubber care products. Do not use any silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, otherwise these could be damaged and become a source of noise.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trims and fine wood parts with a damp cloth only. Then dry them with a soft cloth.

Kenaf

Treat parts made from kenaf fibres with a suitable care product only.

Plastic parts



NOTE

Cleaning agents containing alcohol or solvents, such as nitro thinners, cold cleaners, fuel or similar can damage plastic parts. There is a danger of damage to property. Clean with a microfibre cloth. Lightly moisten the cloth with water.◀

Plastic parts include, for example:

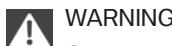
- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roof lining.
- ▷ Lamp lenses.
- ▷ Parts sprayed matt black.
- ▷ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfibre cloth.

Lightly moisten the cloth with water.

Do not soak the roof lining.

Seat belts



WARNING

Chemical cleaners can cause irreparable damage to the fabric of the seat belts. The protective effect of the seat belts will be lost.

There is a danger of injury or even death. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.◀

Dirt on the seat belt straps can interfere with the action of the reel and represents a safety hazard.

Only clean the belt straps with a mild soap solution while still fitted to the vehicle.

Never allow seat belts to retract unless they are dry.

Carpets and foot mats



WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel, or block a pedal that has been pressed. There is a danger of accidents. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are appropriate for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use any loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely reattached after having been removed, for example for cleaning.◀

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly.

In the event of heavy soiling, clean floor carpets using a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. Rub back and forth in the direction of travel to prevent matting.

Sensors/camera lenses

Clean sensors or camera lenses using a cloth moistened with a small amount of a glass cleaner.

Displays, screens and protective sleeve of the Head-Up Display



NOTE

Chemical cleaners, moisture or fluids of all kinds can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a danger of damage to property. Clean with a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth.◀



NOTE

The surfaces of displays can be damaged due to improper cleaning. There is a danger of damage to property. Avoid applying excessive pressure and do not use abrasive materials.◀

Clean with a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth.

Clean the protective sleeve of the Head-Up Display, see page 145, with a microfibre cloth and commercially available dishwashing liquid.

Laying up the vehicle

Special measures need to be taken if putting the vehicle out of use for longer than three months. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.



Reference

The section contains the technical data and the alphabetical index that will enable you to find the information you need as quickly as possible.

Technical data

Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and special equipment available for the model series. Therefore equipment which is not installed in your vehicle, for example on

account of the optional equipment selected or the country specification, may also be described here. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant laws and regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

General

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Handbook are indications. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to selected special equipment, country variant or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the permit documents, on information plates

on the vehicle or can be requested from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The information in the vehicle papers always takes precedence over the information in this Owner's Handbook.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The heights specified do not take into account add-on parts such as a roof aerial, roof railing

or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to selected special equipment, tyres, loads and suspension design.

BMW 5 Series Saloon

Width with mirrors	mm	2126
Width without mirrors	mm	1868
Height	mm	1467-1479
Length	mm	4936-4962
Wheelbase	mm	2975
Smallest turning circle dia.	m (ft)	12.1-12.2 (39.6-40.2)

Weights

520i

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb)
90 % full, no optional extras 1605 (3538)

Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2200 (4850)
Load	kg (lb)	660 (1455)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1045 (2304)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1250 (2756)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

530i

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb)
90 % full, no optional extras 1615 (3560)

Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2200 (4850)
Load	kg (lb)	660 (1455)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1045 (2304)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1250 (2756)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

540i

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb)
90 % full, no optional extras 1670 (3682)

Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2270 (5004)
Load	kg (lb)	675 (1488)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1110 (2447)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1260 (2778)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

530i xDrive

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb)
90 % full, no optional extras 1670 (3682)

Permitted gross weight kg (lb) 2270 (5004)

Load kg (lb) 675 (1488)

Front axle load limit kg (lb) 1100 (2425)

Rear axle load limit kg (lb) 1265 (2789)

Roof load kg (lb) 100 (220)

540i xDrive

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb)
90 % full, no optional extras 1735 (3825)

Permitted gross weight kg (lb) 2340 (5159)

Load kg (lb) 675 (1488)

Front axle load limit kg (lb) 1160 (2557)

Rear axle load limit kg (lb) 1270 (2800)

Roof load kg (lb) 100 (220)

M550i xDrive powered by BMW M

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb)
90 % full, no optional extras 1885 (4156)

Permitted gross weight kg (lb) 2460 (5423)

Load kg (lb) 650 (1433)

Front axle load limit kg (lb) 1230 (2712)

Rear axle load limit kg (lb) 1300 (2866)

Roof load kg (lb) 100 (220)

520d

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank
90 % full, no optional extras

Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1615 (3560)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1635 (3605)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2230 (4916)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2245 (4949)
Load	kg (lb)	685 (1510)
Front axle load limit		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1045 (2304)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1055 (2326)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1280 (2822)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

520ed

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb) 1615 (3560)
90 % full, no optional extras

Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2245 (4949)
Load	kg (lb)	685 (1510)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1055 (2326)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1280 (2822)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

525d

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb) 1685 (3715)
90 % full, no optional extras

Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2295 (5060)
Load	kg (lb)	685 (1510)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1080 (2381)

525d

Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1290 (2844)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

530d

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1715 (3781)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2345 (5170)
Load	kg (lb)	705 (1554)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1125 (2480)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1310 (2888)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

520d xDrive

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1695 (3737)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2325 (5126)
Load	kg (lb)	705 (1554)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1100 (2425)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1310 (2888)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

530d xDrive

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1770 (3902)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2385 (5258)
Load	kg (lb)	690 (1521)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1175 (2590)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1310 (2888)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

540d xDrive

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb) 1825 (4023)
90 % full, no optional extras

Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2440 (5379)
Load	kg (lb)	690 (1521)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1200 (2646)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1325 (2921)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

M550d xDrive powered by BMW M

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb) 1920 (4233)
90 % full, no optional extras

Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2470 (5445)
Load	kg (lb)	625 (1378)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1230 (2712)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1325 (2921)
Roof load	kg (lb)	100 (220)

Towing a trailer

520i

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)

520i

Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1380 (3042)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2290 (5049)

530i

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1390 (3064)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2290 (5049)

540i

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1395 (3075)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2360 (5203)

530i xDrive

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1400 (3086)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2360 (5203)

540i xDrive

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1405 (3097)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2430 (5357)

M550i xDrive powered by BMW M

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)

M550i xDrive powered by BMW M

Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1435 (3164)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2550 (5622)

520d

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1800 (3968)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1415 (3120)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2320 (5115)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2335 (5148)

520ed

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)

520ed

With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1415 (3120)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2335 (5148)

525d

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1435 (3164)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2385 (5258)

530d

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1450 (3197)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2435 (5368)

520d xDrive

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1450 (3197)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2415 (5324)

530d xDrive

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1540 (3395)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2475 (5456)

540d xDrive

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)

540d xDrive

Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1465 (3230)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2530 (5578)

M550d xDrive powered by BMW M

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Consult a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop about options for increasing the loads.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	2000 (4409)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	90 (198)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1465 (3230)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2560 (5644)

Filling capacities

BMW 5 Series Saloon	Litres/imp. gal	Note
Fuel tank, approximately.		Fuel quality, see page 296 .
Petrol	68.0/14.9	
Diesel	66.0/14.5	

Appendix

Here is where any updates to the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle are listed.

Updates following the copy deadline.

Updates have been made to these chapters of the printed Owner's Handbook following the copy deadline:

- ▷ Notes: Vehicle identification number, see page [11](#).
- ▷ ISOFIX child seat mountings: i-Size child restraint system, see page [105](#).

License Texts and Certifications

The following applies in addition to the radio transmission license texts of the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Side Radar Sensor

Moldova



CP 24

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

- ABS, anti-lock braking system [191](#)
Acceleration assistant, see Launch Control [125](#)
Accessories and parts [9](#)
Accident Assistance [345](#)
Accident prevention, see Active Protection [188](#)
ACC, see Active Cruise Control [199](#)
Acknowledgement signals of the vehicle [75](#)
Activated carbon filter [245](#)
Activation, air bags [157](#)
Active bonnet, see Active pedestrian protection [158](#)
Active comfort suspension, see Adaptive Drive [239](#)
Active Cruise Control with Stop&Go function ACC [199](#)
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety [159](#)
Active pedestrian protection [158](#)
Active Protection [188](#)
Active Roll Stabilisation [239](#)
Active seat ventilation [97](#)
Active shock absorber adjustment, see Dynamic Damper Control [239](#)
Active sport suspension, see M Dynamic Professional [240](#)
Active steering, integral [193](#)
Adaptive brake assist [191](#)
Adaptive brake light, see Dynamic brake lights [188](#)
Adaptive Drive [239](#)
Adaptive Headlights [149](#)
Adaptive M suspension [240](#)
ADAPTIVE, see Drive experience switch [125](#)
AdBlue at low temperatures [297](#)
AdBlue on the minimum level [298](#)
AdBlue, see BMW diesel with BluePerformance [297](#)
AdBlue, topping up [298](#)
Additives, engine oil grades [330](#)
Adjustable speed limit, see Manual Speed Limiter [195](#)
Adjusting headlights [152](#)
Age of tyres [304](#)
Air bags [155](#)
Air bags, indicator/warning lamp [156](#)
Airbag switch, see Key switch for front passenger air bags [157](#)
Air conditioning [241](#)
Air distribution, manual [244](#)
Air flow, automatic air conditioning [244](#)
Air outlets, see Ventilation [245](#)
Air pressure, tyres [301](#)
Alarm, false [77](#)
Alarm system [75](#)
All-season tyres, see Winter tyres [305](#)
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter [257](#)
Ambient Air Package [250](#)
Ambient lighting [153](#)
Angle, backrest [85](#)
Animal recognition, see Night Vision [170](#)
Anti-freeze protection, see Washer fluid [119](#)
Anti-freeze, see Washer fluid [119](#)
Anti-lock braking system, ABS [191](#)
Anti-theft alarm system, see Alarm system [75](#)
Anti-theft system, locking [57](#)
Anti-theft system, see Thief-proof wheel studs [322](#)
Anti-theft, wheel studs [322](#)
Anti-trap mechanism, Glass Roof [81](#)
Anti-trap mechanism, windows [78](#)
Apple CarPlay, connection to the vehicle [46](#)
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
Aquaplaning [275](#)
Arrival time [142](#)
Ashtray [258](#)
Ashtray, front [258](#)
Attentiveness assistant [189](#)
AUC automatic air recirculation control AUC [243](#)
Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
AUTO H button, see Parking brake [112](#)
Automatic activation, see Individual activation [97](#)
Automatic air conditioning [241](#)
Automatic air recirculation control AUC [243](#)

- Automatic anti-glare control, see High-beam assistance 150
- Automatic Cruise Control, see Active Cruise Control 199
- Automatic driving lights control 148
- Automatic gearbox, see Steptronic transmission 120
- Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 112
- Automatic locking 75
- Automatic parking function, exterior mirror 93
- Automatic start-stop function 109
- Automatic unlocking 75
- AUTO program, automatic air conditioning 243
- AUTO program, intensity 243
- Auto Start Stop function 109
- AUX-IN port, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- Average speed and average fuel consumption 142
- Avoidance assistant 165
- Avoiding false alarms 77
- Axle load limit 359
- Axle loads, weight 359
- B**
- Backrest angle 85
- Backrest contour, see Lumbar support 86
- Backrest, seats 83
- Backrest width 86
- Bag holders 268
- Ball linkage 281
- Bar for tow-starting/towing 350
- Battery, vehicle 341
- Belts, see Seat belts 86
- Black ice, see Outside temperature warning 135
- Blower, see Air flow 244
- Bluetooth connection 42
- Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- BMW diesel with BluePerformance 297
- BMW display key 60
- BMW display key, malfunction 63
- BMW Driver's Guide App 51
- BMW Gesture Control 31
- BMW Maintenance System 334
- BMW Services, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- Bonnet 327
- Bonus range, ECO PRO 287
- Boot 267
- Boot, expanding with an emergency wheel 270
- Boot lid 69
- Boot lid contactless opening and closing 67
- Boot lid, emergency release 71
- Boot lid via remote control 58
- Boot, storage compartments 268
- Bottle holder, see Cupholder 265
- Brake assist 191
- Brake assist, adaptive 191
- Brake lights, adaptive, see Dynamic brake lights 188
- Brake lights, dynamic 188
- Brake lights, see Bulbs and lights 338
- Brake system 274
- Braking, notes 276
- Braking safely 276
- Breakdown Assist 344
- Breakdown assistance 344
- Breakdown, help 344
- Breakdown service, Mobile Service 344
- Brightness, Control Display 39
- Bulbs and lights 338
- Button AUTO H, see Parking brake 112
- Buttons on the steering wheel 14
- Button SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 346
- Button, start/stop 108

C

- Calendar, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
- Calling up steering wheel adjustment 74
- Call up mirror adjustment 74
- Call up seat adjustment 74
- Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 159
- Camera-based Cruise Control, see Active Cruise Control 199
- Camera lenses, care 355
- Camera, rear-view camera, without Surround View 216
- Camera, see Surround View 219
- Can holder, see Cupholder 265
- Car battery 341
- Care, Head-Up Display 355
- Care of displays, screens 355
- Care of upholstery fabrics 354
- Care products 353
- Care, see Vehicle wash 352

- Care, vehicle 353
Car key, see Remote control 56
Carpet, care 355
CarPlay, connection to the vehicle 46
Carrying children 99
Carrying children safely 99
Cartridge change, see Ambient Air Package 250
Car wash 352
Car washes 352
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 275
CBS Condition Based Service 334
CD, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Central key, see Remote control 56
Central locking system 65
Central screen, see Control Display 22
Centre armrest 265
Centre armrest front 265
Centre console 16
Changes, technical, see Your own safety 8
Changing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 338
Changing gear, Steptronic transmission 120
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 11
Check Control 130
Checking the oil level electronically 328
Child locks 107
Child restraint systems, i-Size 105
Child restraint systems, see Carrying children safely 99
Child seat classes, ISOFIX, see Suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems 104
Child seat mounting 100
Child seat mountings, ISO-FIX 102
Child seats, see Carrying children safely 99
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 354
Chrome surfaces, care 354
Cigarette lighter 259
Cleaning, Head-Up Display 355
Cleaning of displays, screens 355
Closing the Glass Roof automatically 75
Coasting 290
Coasting in idle 290
Coat hooks 266
Cold start, see Engine start 108
Comfort Access 66
Comfort closing with the remote control 57
Comfort opening with the remote control 57
COMFORT, see Drive experience switch 125
Communication, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 324
Compartments in the doors 264
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 42
Compressor 307
Computer, see On-board computer 141
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation on windows 245
Condensation when vehicle is parked 277
Condition Based Service, CBS 334
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Connecting a device 41
Connecting a mobile telephone 41
Connecting a smartphone 41
Connecting a telephone 41
Connecting, mobile devices 41
Connection point, starting assistance 347
Connections, Screen Mirroring 46
Consumption display, on-board computer 142
Contactless opening and closing of the boot lid 67
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continuing a journey with a flat tyre 317, 320
Control Display 22
Control Display, settings 37
Controller 23
Control systems, driving stability 191
Coolant 332
Coolant level 332
Coolant temperature 135
Cooling effect, maximum 242
Cooling function 242
Cooling system 332
Cornering light 150
Corrosion of brake discs 277
Crossing traffic warning 236
Cruise Control, active with Stop&Go function 199

Cruise control, see Active Cruise Control [199](#)
 Cruise Control, see Cruise Control [196](#)
 Cruise Control with distance control, see Active Cruise Control [199](#)
 Cruise Control without distance control, see Cruise Control [196](#)
 Cupholder [265](#)
 Cupholder, front [265](#)
 Cupholder, rear [266](#)
 Current fuel consumption, on-board computer [142](#)

D

Damage, tyres [303](#)
 Damper Control, dynamic [239](#)
 Data memory [9](#)
 Data protection, settings [40](#)
 Data, see Deleting personal data [40](#)
 Data, technical [358](#)
 Date [38](#)
 Daytime driving lights [149](#)
 DCC, see Cruise Control [196](#)
 Deactivation, air bags [157](#)
 Defrosting, see Defrosting windows [245](#)
 Defrosting the windows [245](#)
 Defrosting windows and removing condensation [245](#)
 Defrost, see Defrosting windows [245](#)
 Deleting personal data [40](#)
 Deletion of personal data [40](#)
 Departure time, auxiliary heating [250](#)
 Departure time, independent ventilation [250](#)
 Desired speed, see Active Cruise Control [199](#)

Destination input, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Devices, managing [47](#)
 Diagnosis connection [335](#)
 Diesel fuel [296](#)
 Diesel particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter [275](#)
 Digital clock [135](#)
 Dimensions [358](#)
 Dimmable exterior mirrors [92](#)
 Dimming rear-view mirror [93](#)
 Dipping headlights, see High-beam assistance [150](#)
 Direction indicators, see Turn indicators [115](#)
 Direct selection buttons, see Favourites buttons [29](#)
 Displaying device list [47](#)
 Display in windscreen, see Head-Up Display [145](#)
 Display key, malfunction [63](#)
 Display key, see BMW display key [60](#)
 Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [152](#)
 Displays [129](#)
 Displays and symbols [7](#)
 Displays, ECO PRO [287](#)
 Displays, screens [355](#)
 Disposal, coolant [333](#)
 Disposal, vehicle battery [342](#)
 Disposing of the battery [342](#)
 Disposing of the old battery [342](#)
 Distance to destination [142](#)
 Distance warning, see PDC [212](#)
 Door key, see Remote control [56](#)
 Downhill gradients [276](#)
 Drive experience switch [125](#)
 Drive mode, see Drive experience switch [125](#)
 Drive-off assistant [191](#)

Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety [159](#)
 Drive-ready state, engine start [108](#)
 Drive-ready state, idle state and standby state [19](#)
 Driver profiles [71](#)
 Driver profiles, welcome screen [72](#)
 Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety [159](#)
 Driving comfort [239](#)
 Driving hints [275](#)
 Driving information, general [275](#)
 Driving information, running in [274](#)
 Driving info, see On-board computer on the Control Display [143](#)
 Driving lights control, automatic [148](#)
 Driving on racing tracks [278](#)
 Driving path lines, rear-view camera [218, 222](#)
 Driving Stability Control Systems [191](#)
 Driving style analysis, ECO PRO [291](#)
 Drying air, see Cooling function [242](#)
 DSC Dynamic Stability Control [191](#)
 DTC, Dynamic Traction Control [192](#)
 DVD, Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication [6](#)
 Dynamic brake lights [188](#)
 Dynamic Damper Control [239](#)
 Dynamic ECO lighting function [149](#)
 Dynamic Marker Light, see Night Vision [170](#)

Dynamic Stability Control
DSC 191
Dynamic Traction Control
DTC 192

E

ECO lighting function, dynamic 149
ECO PRO 285
ECO PRO bonus range 287
ECO PRO displays 287
ECO PRO drive mode 285
ECO PRO driving style analysis 291
ECO PRO INDIVIDUAL, see Drive experience switch 125
ECO PRO mode 285
ECO PRO, route-ahead assistant 288
ECO PRO, see Drive experience switch 125
Electrical power windows 77
Electric Glass Roof 79
Electric steering wheel lock 93
Electronic oil measurement 328
Electronic Stability Programme, ESP, see DSC 191
E-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency assistance, see Accident Assistance 345
Emergency assistance, see Breakdown assistance 344
Emergency boot release 71
Emergency call 346
Emergency release, boot lid 71
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 295
Emergency running properties, tyres 305

Emergency service, see Accident Assistance 345
Emergency service, see Mobile Service 344
Emergency services, see Breakdown assistance 344
Emergency unlocking, transmission lockout 124
Emergency wheel 324
Energy recuperation, onboard computer 142
Engine, Automatic start-stop function 109
Engine compartment 326
Engine coolant 332
Engine idling when driving, see Coasting 290
Engine oil 328
Engine oil change 331
Engine oil filler neck 329
Engine oil grades for topping up 330
Engine oil grades, suitable 330
Engine oil level, checking electronically 328
Engine oil temperature 135
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 108
Engine start, starting assistance 347
Engine stop, see Drive-ready state 108
Engine temperature 135
Entering an address, Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering letters and numbers 25
Entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entry comparison, navigation 25

Equipment, interior 256
ESP, Electronic Stability Programme, see DSC 191
Exhaust gas particle filter 275
Exhaust gas system 275
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 275
Expanding the boot 269
Exterior lights when unlocking 57
Exterior lights with the vehicle locked 58
Exterior mirror, automatically dimming 92
Exterior mirror, automatic parking function 93
Exterior mirrors 92
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 92
External start, see Starting assistance 347
Eye for securing cable, towing a trailer 283
Eye for towing 350
Eyes, see Lashing eye in the boot 268

F

Failure notification, see Check Control 130
False alarm, see Avoiding false alarms 77
Fan run-on, see Exhaust gas particle filter 275
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 86
Fatigue alerter 189
Fault display, see Check Control 130
Favourites buttons, iDrive 29
Filler neck for engine oil 329
Finding charging stations, see Charging stations and points of interest, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation,

Entertainment, Communication **6**
 Fine wood parts, care **354**
 First-aid kit **344**
 First-aid set, see First-aid kit **344**
 Flank protection without Surround View **215**
 Flank protection with Surround View **223**
 Flat tyre, continuing a journey **317, 320**
 Flat tyre message, RPA **319**
 Flat tyre message, TPM **315**
 Flat tyre, runflat indicator RPA **318**
 Flat tyre, see Tyre Pressure Monitor **311**
 Flat tyre warning lamp, RPA **319**
 Flat tyre warning lamp, TPM **315**
 Flat tyre, wheel change **320**
Flooding 276
 Floor carpet, care **355**
 Fog lights, see Bulbs and lights **338**
 Fold-out position of windscreen wipers **118**
 Foot brake **276**
 Foot mats, care **355**
 Four-wheel drive, see xDrive **193**
 Front air bags **155**
 Front-end collision warning with City braking function **161**
 Front-end collision warning with light braking function **161**
 Front fog lights **151**
 Front head restraints **89**
 Front lights, see Bulbs and lights **338**
 Front neck supports, see Head restraints **89**

Front passenger's mirror, tilting down, see Automatic parking function **93**
 Front passenger air bags, deactivating/activating **157**
 Front passenger air bags, indicator lamp **158**
 Front seats **83**
 Fuel **296**
 Fuel consumption display, ECO PRO **287**
 Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption **142**
 Fuel filler flap **294**
 Fuel gauge **134**
 Fuel quality **296**
 Fuel recommendation **296**
 Fuel tank cap **294**
 Fuel, tank capacity **369**
 Fuses **342**

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated universal remote control **256**
 Gearbox, manual gearbox **120**
 Gearbox, see Steptronic transmission **120**
 Gearshift, manual gearbox **120**
 General driving information **275**
 General settings **37**
 Gesture Control **31**
 Gestures, see BMW Gesture Control **31**
 Give way warning **185**
 Glare protection, see Sun visor **258**
 Glass Roof, closing during rain, see Closing the Glass Roof automatically **75**
 Glass Roof, electric **79**

Glass Roof, initialising system **81**
 Glove box **263**
 GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**
 GPS positioning, vehicle position **38**
 Green diesel **296**

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake **112**
 Hand-held transmitter, alternating-code **257**
 Hands-free kit, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**
 Hazard warning lights **344**
 Head air bags **155**
 Head Light, adaptive **149**
 Headlight cleaning system, see Wiper system **116**
 Headlight courtesy delay feature **148**
 Headlight flasher **116**
 Headlight glass **338**
 Headlights, care **353**
 Headlights, see Bulbs and lights **338**
 Head-Up Display **145**
 Head-Up Display, care **355**
 Head-Up Display, see Memory function **94**
 Head-Up Display, standard view **145**
 Heating, see Auxiliary heating **248**
 Height, vehicle **358**
 Help in driving off, see Drive-off assistant **191**
 High-beam assistance **150**
 High-beam headlights **116**

Hill Start Assist, see Drive-off assistant 191
Holder for beverages 265
Home page 6
Horn 14
Hot exhaust gas system 275
Hotline, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

i

iBrake – PostCrash 189
Ice warning, see Outside temperature warning 135
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 11
Idle state, standby state and drive-ready state 19
iDrive 22
iDrive operating principle 22
Ignition key, see Remote control 56
Important considerations 99
Important information regarding the engine compartment 326
Indicator and warning lamps, see Check Control 130
Indicator lamp, front passenger air bags 158
Individual activation 97
Individual air distribution 244
Individual settings, see Driver profiles 71
Inductive charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Inflation pressure check, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 311
Inflation pressure, tyres 301

Inflation pressure warning RPA, tyres 318
Information on no passing 138
Initialising, runflat indicator RPA 318
Initialising, Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM 314
Instrument cluster 129
Instrument cluster switch, see Turn indicators 115
Instrument cluster switch, see Wiper system 116
Instrument lighting 152
Integral Active Steering 193
Integrated key 64
Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle 50
Integrated universal remote control 256
Intelligent Auto Start Stop function 111
Intelligent emergency call 346
Intelligent Safety 159
Intended use 8
Intensity, AUTO program 243
Interior equipment 256
Interior light 152
Interior light when unlocking 57
Interior light with the vehicle locked 58
Interior movement detector 76
Internet connection 45
Internet hotspot 45
Internet site 6
Interval Display, see Service requirements 136
Ionisation, see Ambient Air Package 250
i-Size child restraint systems 105

ISOFIX, child seat mountings 102

J

Jack mounting points 323
Journey computer 143
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 120
Jump-starting connections 347
Jump starting, see Starting assistance 347
Junction warning, see Front-end collision warning with light braking function 161

K

Kenaf, care 354
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 66
Key, mechanical 64
Key, see BMW display key 60
Key switch for front passenger air bags 157
Kick-down, Steptronic transmission 120
Knee airbag 156

L

Labelling of recommended tyres 304
Labelling of run-flat tyres 305
Lane boundary, warning 174
Lane Change Warning 177
Lane control assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant 208
Lane control assistant with active side collision protection, see Side collision warning 181
Lane Departure Warning 174

- Language, setting on the Control Display 37
 Lashing eyes in the boot 268
 Lashing straps, see Lashing eyes in the boot 268
 Launch Control 125
 Laying up the vehicle 355
 Laying up, vehicle 355
 Leather care 354
 Left-hand traffic, light setting 152
 Light alloy wheels, care 354
 Lighter 259
 Lighter, front 259
 Lighter, rear 259
 Light in exterior mirror, see Crossing traffic warning 236
 Lighting 147
 Lighting, loudspeaker 153
 Light in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning 177
 Lights 147
 Light switch 147
 LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter 195
 List of all messages 39
 Loading 267
 Loading the boot, see Stowing and securing a transported load 267
 Locking, automatic 75
 Locking settings 74
 Locking with the remote control 57
 Lock, power windows, see Safety switch 78
 Logging on, mobile devices, see Connections 41
 Loudspeaker lighting 153
 Low-beam headlights 148
 Luggage compartment lid, see Boot lid 69
 Luggage rack, see Roof rack 277
 Lumbar support 86
- M**
- Maintenance 334
 Maintenance requirement, see CBS Condition Based Service 334
 Maintenance, see Service requirements 136
 Maintenance System, BMW 334
 Make-up mirror 258
 Malfunction, BMW display key 63
 Malfunction indications, see Check Control 130
 Malfunction, remote control 59
 Manual air distribution 244
 Manual air flow 244
 Manual gearbox 120
 Manual operation, fuel filler flap 295
 Manual operation, Steptronic transmission 120
 Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 Marker light, see Night Vision 170
 Massage seat, front 95
 Matt paintwork 353
 Maximum cooling effect 242
 Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info 138
 Maximum speed of winter tyres 305
 M Dynamic Professional 240
 Memory function 94
 Menu, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 140
 Messages 39
 Messages, see Check Control 130
 Microfilter 245
- Minimum tread depth, tyres 303
 Mirrors 92
 Mirror, see Memory function 94
 Mirror, vanity 258
 Mobile communication in the vehicle 275
 Mobile devices, managing 47
 Mobile phone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 Mobile Service 344
 Mobile Service, see Accident Assistance 345
 Mobile Service, see Breakdown assistance 344
 Mobile telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 Mobility System 306
 Moisture in the headlights, see Headlight glass 338
 Monitor, see Control Display 22
 Mounting child restraints 100
 MP3 player, see Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 M suspension, adaptive 240
 Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 14
 Multimedia, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
 Music hard disc, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

N

Navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Net, boot 268
Neutral cleaner, light alloy wheels 354
New wheels and tyres 304
Night-vision device, see Night Vision 170
Night Vision with person and animal recognition 170
No Passing Information 138
Nose weight 363
Nose weight, see Trailer nose weight 363
Notes 6
Notes, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Number plate light, see Bulbs and lights 338
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 350

O

OBD on-board diagnosis 335
Object recognition, see Night Vision 170
Obstacle marking, rear-view camera 218, 222
Octane number, see Petrol grade 296
Odometer and trip distance recorder 141
Oil 328
Oil change 331
Oil change interval, see Service requirements 136
Oil filler neck 329
Oil grades for topping up, engine 330

Oil grades, suitable 330
On-board computer in the instrument cluster 141
On-board computer on the Control Display 143
On-board diagnosis OBD 335
On-board literature, printed 50
On-board monitor, see Control Display 22
On-board tool kit 337
Online entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Online Owner's Handbook 52
Opening and closing 56
Operating menus, see iDrive 22
Operation by touchscreen 26
Operation via Controller 24
Outlets, see Ventilation 245
Outside air, see AUC 243
Outside temperature 135
Overheating of the engine, see Coolant temperature 135
Owner's Handbook media 50
Owner's Handbook, printed 50

P

Paintwork, vehicle 353
Panorama View, see Surround View 219
Park Assistant 226
Park Assistant Plus, see Surround View 219
Park Distance Control PDC 212
Parking aid, see PDC 212
Parking Assistant Plus, see Surround View 219
Parking Assistant, see Park Assistant 226
Parking brake 112
Parking lights 148
Parking with Automatic Hold, see Parking brake 112
Particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter 275
Part replacement 337
Parts and accessories 9
PDC Park Distance Control 212
Pedestrian protection, active 158
Permitted gross weight while towing a trailer 363
Personal profile, see Driver profiles 71
Person recognition, see Night Vision 170
Person warning with City light braking function 167
Petrol 296
Petrol grade 296
Petrol particle filter, see Exhaust gas particle filter 275
Place for children 99
Plasters, see First-aid kit 344
Plastic parts, care 354
Positioning, vehicle position 38
PostCrash – iBrake 189
Power display, see Sport displays 143
Power failure 342
Power windows 77
Prescribed engine oil grades 330
Pressure Monitor, see Tyre Pressure Monitor 311
Pressure, tyres 301
Pressure warning RPA, tyres 318
Prevention of rear collision 183

Printed on-board literature 50

Profiles, see Driver profiles 71

Protection function, Glass Roof, see Anti-trap mechanism 81

Protection function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism 78

R

Racing track driving 278

Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particle filter 275

Radio key, see Remote control 56

Radio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Radio signals 275

Rain sensor 117

Range 135

Rape seed methyl ester, RME 296

Readiness service, see Mobile Service 344

Rear automatic air conditioning 246

Rear backrests, folding down 269

Rear collision warning, see Prevention of rear collision 183

Rear fog light 151

Rear fog light, see Bulbs and lights 338

Rear head restraints 90

Rear light, see Bulbs and lights 338

Rear neck supports, see Head restraints 90

Rear-view camera, see Surround View 219

Rear-view camera, without Surround View 216

Rear-view mirror, automatic-dim 93

Rear-wheel steering, see Integral Active Steering 193

Rear window heating 245

Recirculated-air mode 243

Recirculating air filter, see Microfilter / Activated carbon filter 245

Recirculation, see Recirculated-air mode 243

Recommended makes of tyre 304

Recycling 335

Reduction agent, see BMW diesel with BluePerformance 297

Refuelling 294

Remedying flat tyres 306

Remote 3D View 226

Remote control 56

Remote control, additional 59

Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Remote control, integrated key 64

Remote control, loss 59

Remote control, malfunction 59

Remote control of the vehicle, replacing the battery 58

Remote Control Parking 231

Remote control, universal 256

Remote control with display, malfunction 63

Remote control with display, see BMW display key 60

Remote services, app, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Replacement of parts 337

Replacement of wheels/tyres 304

Replacement wheel, see Emergency wheel 324

Replacing bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 338

Replacing LEDs, see Bulbs and lights 338

Replacing light-emitting diodes, see Bulbs and lights 338

Replacing lights, see Bulbs and lights 338

Replacing parts 337

Replacing the battery, remote control of the vehicle 58

Replacing the wiper blades 337

RES CNCL button, see Active Cruise Control 199

RES CNCL button, see Cruise Control 196

Reserve warning, see Range 135

Reservoir for washer fluid 119

Reset, Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM 314

Restraint systems for children, see Carrying children safely 99

Retreaded tyres 305

Reuse, recycling 335

Reversing light, replacing Bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 338

Revolution counter 134

Right-hand traffic, light setting 152

Rim cleaner, light alloy wheels 354

RME, rape seed methyl ester 296

Road priority warning 185

- Roller sunblinds, rear side window **79**
Roller sunblinds, rear side windows **79**
Rolling away in idle, see Coasting **290**
RON, petrol grade **296**
Roof lining **18**
Roof load **359**
Roof rack **277**
Rope for tow-starting/towing **350**
Roundabout light **150**
Route-ahead assistant **288**
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**
RPA runflat indicator **318**
RSC Runflat System Component, see Run-flat tyres **305**
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**
Rubber parts, care **354**
Runflat indicator RPA **318**
Run-flat tyres **305**
Run Flat tyres, see Run-flat tyres **305**
Running in **274**
Running in brake discs, see Brake system **274**
Running in brake pads, see Brake system **274**
Run-on of fan, see Exhaust gas particle filter **275**
- S**
- Safe seating position **83**
Safety package, see Active Protection **188**
Safety switch, windows **78**
Safety systems, see Air bags **155**
- Safety systems, see Intelligent Safety **159**
Saving energy, see Shift point indicator **137**
Saving fuel **284**
Scent cartridge, see Ambient Air Package **250**
Scenting, see Ambient Air Package **250**
Scent, see Ambient Air Package **250**
Screen Mirroring, connection **46**
Screen, see Control Display **22**
Screwdriver, see On-board tool kit **337**
Sealant, see Mobility System **306**
Seat belt reminder for driver and front passenger seat **88**
Seat belt reminder for rear seats **88**
Seat belts **86**
Seat belts, care **355**
Seat heating **96**
Seat heating, individual activation **97**
Seat, see Memory function **94**
Seats, front **83**
Seat ventilation, active **97**
Seat ventilation, individual activation **97**
Securing a transported load **267**
Securing doors and windows **107**
Selection list in the instrument cluster **140**
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission **120**
Sensors, care **355**
Service history **137**
Service, mobile **344**
Service requirements **136**
- Service requirement, see CBS Condition Based Service **334**
Services, ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**
Service, see Accident Assistance **345**
Service, see Breakdown assistance **344**
Settings, locking/unlocking **74**
Settings on the Control Display **37**
Shift Lights, revolution counter **134**
Shift paddles on the steering wheel **120**
Shift point indicator **137**
Shock absorber adjustment, active, see Dynamic Damper Control **239**
Shoulder support, front **86**
Side airbag **155**
Side collision warning **181**
Side lights **147**
Side nozzles, see Ventilation **245**
Signal horn, horn **14**
Signals on unlocking, see Acknowledgement signals **75**
Sizes, see Dimensions **358**
Ski and snowboard bag **271**
Sliding/tilting roof, see Glass Roof **79**
Smallest turning circle **358**
Smartphone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**
Smokers package **258**
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication **6**

- Snow chains 310
Socket for on-board diagnosis, OBD 335
Sockets, connecting electrical appliances, see Sockets 260
Soft Close Automatic 71
Software update 48
Soot particle filter 275
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 346
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sound, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Spanner, see On-board tool kit 337
Spare wheel, see Emergency wheel 324
Special equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Speed Limit Assist 206
Speed Limit Device, see Manual Speed Limiter 195
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info 138
Speed Limiter, manual 195
Speed Limit Info 138
Speed, see Average speed 142
Speed warning 144
Split screen 28
Split screen view, see Split screen 28
Sport displays 143
SPORT INDIVIDUAL, see Drive experience switch 125
SPORT PLUS, see Drive experience switch 125
Sport programme, Steptronic transmission 120
SPORT, see Drive experience switch 125
Sport suspension, active, see M Dynamic Professional 240
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension 240
Stability control systems 191
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 7
Standard view, Head-Up Display 145
Standby state, idle state and drive-ready state 19
Start/stop button 108
Starting assistance 347
Starting assistance, see DSC 191
Starting, see Drive-ready state 108
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 108
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status Control Display, tyres 313
Status information, iDrive 28
Status of the Owner's Handbook 7
Status, vehicle 144
Steering and lane control assistant including traffic-queue assistant 208
Steering, see Integral Active Steering 193
Steering wheel, adjusting 93
Steering wheel, buttons 14
Steering wheel heating 94
Steering wheel heating, individual activation 97
Steering wheel, see Memory function 94
Steptronic sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 120
Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state 108
Storage compartment above the centre console 264
Storage compartment in the centre console 264
Storage compartments in the boot 268
Storage options 263
Storage, see Laying up the vehicle 355
Storage, tyres 305
Stowing and securing a transported load 267
Stowing heavy transported loads 267
Suitable devices 42
Suitable mobile telephones 42
Summer tyres, tread 303
Sun visor 258
Supplementary handbook 50
Supplementary text message 133
Surround View 219
Suspension settings, see Drive experience switch 125
Swinging of the trailer, see Trailer Stability Control 281
Switches, see Driving area 14
Switch for driving dynamics, see Drive experience switch 125
Switching on the headlight courtesy delay feature 58
Symbols and displays 7
Symbols in the status field 29
SYNC program, automatic air conditioning 244

T

Tailgate, see Boot lid 69
Tail lights, see Bulbs and lights 338
Tank display 134
Technical changes, see Your own safety 8
Technical data 358
Telephone, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Television, TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic air conditioning 242
Temperature display, see Outside temperature 135
Temperature, engine oil 135
Tension belt, see Lashing eyes in the boot 268
Text message, supplementary 133
Thermal camera, see Night Vision 170
Thiefproof wheel studs 322
Thigh support 85
Through-loading system 269
Tilt alarm sensor 76
Tilting down front passenger's mirror, see Automatic parking function 93
Time 37
Tool 337
Topping up engine oil 329
Torque display, see Sport displays 143
Total weight, permitted 359
Touchpad 27

Touchscreen 26
Touchscreen, see Operation by touchscreen 26
Tourist function, see Left-hand/right-hand traffic 152
Tow bar 350
Tow fitting, see Towing eye 350
Towing a trailer 279
Towing a trailer, technical data 363
Towing away 348
Towing eye 350
Towing rope 350
Towing, see Tow-starting and towing 348
Tow-starting 348
TPM Tyre Pressure Monitor 311
Traction control 192
TRACTION, driving dynamics 192
Traffic information, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Traffic jam assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant 208
Traffic-queue assistant, see Steering and lane control assistant 208
Trailer loads 363
Trailer Stability Control 281
Trailer tow hitch 281
Transmission lockout, unlocking electronically 124
Tread, tyres 303
Trip distance recorder 141
Triple turn signal 115
Turn indicators, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher 115
Turn indicators, replacing
Bulbs, see Bulbs and lights 338

Turning circle 358
Turning circle lines, rear-view camera 218, 222
TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Tyre damage 303
Tyre inflation pressure 301
Tyre makes, recommendation 304
Tyre pressure 301
Tyre pressure monitor, see RPA 318
Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM 311
Tyre repair kit, see Mobility System 306
Tyre replacement 304
Tyres and wheels 301
Tyre sealant, see Mobility System 306
Tyre settings 312
Tyres with emergency running properties 305
Tyre tread 303

U

Units of measure 38
Universal remote control 256
Unloaded weight 359
Unlock-button, Steptronic transmission 120
Unlocking, automatic 75
Unlocking, settings 74
Unlocking the fuel filler flap manually 295
Unlocking with the remote control 57
Updates after going to press 7
Update, software 48
Updating software 48
USB connection 44
USB interface, position in the vehicle 261

Use, intended 8

V

Vanity mirror 258

Variable steering, see Integral Active Steering 193

Vehicle battery 341

Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown Assist 344

Vehicle care 353

Vehicle equipment 7

Vehicle identification number 11

Vehicle paintwork 353

Vehicle position, vehicle positioning 38

Vehicle, running in 274

Vehicle status 144

Vehicle wash 352

Ventilation 245

Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

VIN, see Vehicle identification number 11

Voice control, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Voice control system 34

W

Wading 276

Warning and indicator lamps, see Check Control 130

Warning lamp in exterior mirror, see Crossing traffic warning 236

Warning lamp in the exterior mirror, see Lane Change Warning 177

Warning messages, see Check Control 130

Warning of crossing traffic 236

Warning triangle 344

Warranty 8

Washer fluid 119

Washer jets, windows 118

Washing fluid, see Washer fluid 119

Washing, vehicle 352

Wash system 352

Water on roads 276

Water, see Condensation when vehicle is parked 277

Website 6

Weights 359

Welcome lights 148

Welcome light when unlocking 57

Welcome screen, driver profiles 72

Wheelbase, vehicle 358

Wheel change 320

Wheel replacement 304

Wheels and tyres 301

Wheels, see Runflat indicator RPA 318

Width, vehicle 358

WiFi connection 45

Windscreen washer jets 118

Windscreen washing system, see Wiper system 116

Windscreen wipers, see Wiper system 116

Winter storage, see Laying up the vehicle 355

Winter tyres 305

Winter tyres, tread 303

Wipers, fold-out position 118

Wipers, see Wiper system 116

Wiper system 116

Wiping fluid, see Washer fluid 119

Wireless charging dock, see Owner's Handbook for Navi-

gation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Wireless charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Wood parts, care 354

Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 25

Working in the engine compartment 327

Wrong-way driving warning 140

X

xDrive 193

Y

Your own safety 8

More about BMW

www.bmw.com



The Ultimate
Driving Machine

